

THE PAMPHLET

(Printed in Urdu)

"If you desire to have your father's patrimony, you must have to learn the father's discipline/system of education and knowledge."

Loving Brethren,

Here is a sketchy account of the way of life of the Revered Master Shri Mahatma Ramchandraj Saheb, resident of the Fatehgarh Camp, being brought to the knowledge of all of you, hoping that devotees/lovers and followers of the Revered Master shall act with the special attention and care, so that they derive benefit themselves, and through their actions become a source of benefit for others.

The foremost principle of Revered Master was complete oneness of what he said and what he did, i. e. similarity of inner and outer aspects of his Being. Sincerity and good conduct are part of the essentials of Saintliness. If you view Revered Master's life-history with a penetrating vision, you will find a perfect practice of the principle under reference. To refresh the memory, it may briefly be mentioned : most simple and clean dress and food free from the essentials of sensuality were used by him.

Self-respect: he never required (asked for) anything from any friend, intimate acquaintance or devotee; put his own self to hardship, without asking for (looking to) anybody's help, and remained true of the enunciation of Hazrat Boo Ali Shah Qalander - "Even if life goes out of the body due to fasting, never hit the palm like a gadfly on the lunch of somebody else." The state of unconcern was to the extent - "Hit the throne of king Kaikous (of Persia) with the sole of the foot; Let go the head but not the good conduct (and name) out of the palm of the hand." Just see the words of his will: "I do not have a single penny, but I am leaving as patrimony such wealth as did not come to the lot of emperors." What a glory of (contentment and) unconcern! Brethren, just pay attention and act accordingly to the best possible extent:

“If Father’s patrimony be desired (aspired for), Father’s qualities must be learnt.”

The Sacred Words: “God is Love concrete.” Practice: Such was the munificence of Master’s Love, that every dear brother claimed that Revered Lalaji Saheb loved him most. This is the argument (most convincing) for perfect (concrete) Love.

The Sacred Words: “God is impartial (equally beneficent) to all.” Practice: The Revered Master was available with the same courtesy and affection to the poorest of the poor devotee (lover) as to the richest of the rich ones.

The Sacred Words: “God prefers to remain veiled.” Practice: Revered Master, even though a revealer of Secrets, never brought anybody’s defects to light; but only attempted to wean the defects away.

The Sacred Words: “Miracles and Powers are the cause of degeneration.” Practice: The Revered Master, even though a master of miracles, never brought these to light, nor considered occurrence of miracles as an argument (symptom) of spiritual height, but relieved ailments of devotees at the time of need, through ordinary worldly means, so that there was not even suspicion (doubt), what to say of knowledge (of a miracle having occurred).

The Sacred Saying: “There is no worship except service to creatures.”

Practice: Revered Master was fully prepared to serve every friend, devotee, dear or fare one. I have personal knowledge that he took loan to help others and meet their needs.

The Sacred Saying: “Austerity does not consist in wearing rags.” Practice: The Revered Master wore whatever garment was available and took a seat wherever available. He never selected any seat (position) for himself, nor any kind of dress.

The Sacred Saying: “Whoever served became worthy of being served.”

Practice: The Revered Master in accordance with the instruction of his own Revered Grand Master (Glory of God unto him) propagated the sacred 'name of Ram (God), and brought up the garden by offering his blood as water throughout his life; and remained irrigating till the very last moment of life. Is it not our duty that, if we are unable to give it greater brightness through our unworthiness, we keep it at least as it is and through such practice (action) render happiness and service to our Master?

The Sacred Saying: "God conceals defects" Practice: Revered Master never was angry with, nor ever rebuked, nor taught courtesies to any disciple for mistakes; but considering it his own mistake prayed to the Supreme Divinity and got the blunders, forgiven. Immense divine praise on such concealment of defects that one word of complaint was not uttered to anyone even privately; he only described everyone's good qualities.

The Sacred Saying: "Full of regard, full of fortune (good luck)." Practice: Revered Master never derided any great personality or any religion or creed, but always referred to them with respect and regard. When a respectable person arrived, he gave him his own seat or better than own seat and sat respectfully before him for service.

The Sacred Saying: "Do whatever you like (wish or desire), but do not cause pain to hearts." Practice:

Revered Master never uttered any harsh words, so as to cause unhappiness to another's heart; if there was a need for advice, it was delivered with love and affection.

Since, after Revered Master's physical veiling, mutual temporary (apparent) ill will and ill apprehensions have cropped up among brethren, I seek to draw attention briefly to the life-history of Revered Master Lalaji Saheb. All of you may think over it and try to be practicants to the best possible extent. By the Grace of Grand and True Divinity, let us hope that the garden laid out by Revered Master will be as full and fresh (as in his life- time) and yield ample crops of fruit.

"One who fulfils our actions is taking care of our action."

Be it so! Again, Be it so!!

THE DIARY

(In Urdu manuscript)

The Treatise to be named as 'Master's Instructions' (memoirs and revelations and occurrences and instructions for being followed, that came from Revered Master, benefactor and sustainer Mahatma Ram Chandraji Saheb of Fategarh to Shri Ram Chandraji Saheb of Shahjahanpur)

11th May 1944:

Revered Lalaji's instruction descended:

“You have unconsciously imitated my inner condition. Nobody else has this ability.” A thought arose: “Singing at the Samadhi at Fatehgarh is prohibited. Should this instruction be followed?” The instruction descended: “Whenever one goes to some place, one should follow the rules and regulations laid down by the owner or manager of that institution, whether right or wrong. This is not prohibited in the Satsang (coming together of aspirants for spiritual practice) at your place. On revelation or expression of your high capacities and positions, people will have to accept you. Your condition will itself force them to recognize you.

Whatever thought you will put into them, the associates (Satsanghis) will act accordingly.” I was forbidden by Revered Lalaji Saheb to go to K.. Earlier it was not so. “If per chance you happen to go there (K..) you shall not go to the place of... Whenever you consider it proper, you can snatch away the power from anybody, whosoever. Since you have become desireless, your utterances must be guarded. Do not say something either for good or for bad about others. Since all bondages ie. physical limitations have broken off, you should be very cautious while transmitting to others. Never transmit with full force anywhere, the mistake you have committed once already. Develop the practice of feeling neither pleased by something good nor displeased by something bad.”

18th May 1944 (Daytime about 10.00 am, to 12.00 noon)

Revered Master's dictation:

“Your reputation and fame will bring reputation and fame to Ml also. He will not have to lament that I could not prepare somebody. Never give up obedience to him in externals. About the internal aspects, you may feel free. You will have to develop the organization. Your thoughts and intentions will be mine; and these will be correct. You must adopt my habit of feeling humble; and never give up my quality of being a beggar (at His door), and yet maintain a kinglike demeanour.

“You are responsible for lack of courage in Ml. You will have to be strict. Leave the habit of softness. You will be doing exactly as I shall like you to do. Since I consider Ml as my son, he shall have enough courage, if he would work with this thought in his mind. A lion's cub is a lion. (When I am a lion) he, whom I consider as my son, is also a lion. And I considered him as my elder child. All the rest are just my children. Now Ml is totally free of the effects of K... Bad times are gone. Good time is here now. I am responsible for his protection. Now he shall regain his health. He is not aware of his condition. Nobody can face him now.”

Revered Lalaji's instruction descended:

“When you have given your heart to someone, you have to receive that person's benedictory or accursed gifts to you. You see that now! However, you don't have to worry. Now there is no effect left at all. You suffered no harm, even though the trouble was certainly increased.” Question from Ml: “How can a disciple develop infinite love for his Master?”

Revered Master's instruction:

“About you, he (Rl) had the hint that there was possibility of your clash with him sometime. He did not like you're coming to me. When all other means were unsuccessful, prayers were offered to your Revered Grand Master (glory unto Him) that you may be kept devoid of spiritual progress. This was very much disliked by Him and this became the cause of His displeasure. An attempt was made for cancellation of your initiation; and stories (aimed at self-induced downfall) were narrated to you. Action against him (Rl)

had to be taken in accordance with the permission of the Grand Master. Do go to His Samadhi, when convenient. About MI he (RI) was satisfied that, having fallen a victim to his (RI's) arrow, he (MI) was incapable of doing anything. He (RI) was all the time worried and anxious about pulling you down; and I was throughout taking care of you. You were induced through thought to sexual indulgence. When there was no success by any means, images of naked women were thrust into your heart. You were saved from the images of naked women, thrust into your heart, because you had left everything to me. Since you had grown up to become the blue of your Grand Master's eye, no technique applied against you could succeed. A woman and you were taken in thought, as copulating, so that you commit such act. This was his (RI's) last attempt to degrade you. The meditation on form was prescribed to the woman from B., to induce her attachment to him (RI). That home (RI's) is no longer fit as residence for daughters and daughters-in-law. Attempts were made and prayers were offered for your degradation and BI's advancement.

He tried so much to pull you down, and it never occurred to his mind that God's will alone triumphs ultimately. These matters have been brought to your knowledge, so that you may not be moved to feel mercy. I have given him tidings (of your fortune) thrice."

19th May 1944:

Revered Master's dictation:

"Please finish the whole affair concerning that place today. I had given respite for three days. Take up other work after finishing this. Have special consideration of SI after completion of the present work in hand. His love for women is increasing. I have brought him (SI) up with great fondness. I am responsible for all those, who are initiated on my hand. I shall feel relief when you shall take over the responsibility (in your hand). "What you have given to K2, try to have it digested by him. Do not commit such a mistake in future. If a little more attention had been given, his mind would have got upset. You have been a little hasty in telling him the particular method yesterday. That method should have been given after making him digest the earlier training.

“When your diary was put forth for publication, your name was excluded from it. This was due to the mischief of PI and the master-mind of Rl. They were apprehensive that people may not become inclined to you, and they may lose their source of livelihood. The blind one (Rl) could not comprehend that: ‘What, if opponents bear a hundred thousand ill intentions; only that occurs, which is in accordance with God’s Will.’

“You tore off your breast (which condition still persists) to find my figure present there; and there is countless power behind it”.

“I kept you concealed in my breast, and did not let anybody suspect it. Only Rl got and has the idea, because he was connected to my state, and hence could suspect about it.

I had consideration for his poverty, and hence structured a status for him. So, he started living like a man of status. Greed was increased and God was totally forgotten. It was only your capacity that you never forgot me in spite of your wealth. There are few persons of such capacity. At Rl’s place money was wasted for pleasure and luxury. Deserving people were kept deprived. There was no consideration for the poor. Rich people were given consideration. Very often, poor people who were deserving but without money, had to go away unbenefited. You must have consideration of such matters.”

“I had given you perfection in fifteen days, when you had taken leave from your work and stayed at my place. (I had done so probably in July 1931-Ram Chandra). I had called you only for that purpose. If that (calling you) had been done through a letter, it would have become known all over. You made a mistake in sending your diaries to Rl. When you come across such a person (as yourself), keep him connected directly to yourself.”

“You have done good work for SI today. I have been relieved of anxiety. B1 has got spoilt through pure egoism. M3 has proved just useless, but that remains the responsibility of his own guide. B1 remains in remembrance of me quite a lot. Learn from me whatever is to be learnt. I will then be free from this work. Have consideration for my old age. I will certainly remain giving help to you.”

Answer to a question:

“The (spiritual) power earned through self-effort is not as forceful as that obtained through Divine Grace. Full power is given only as a gift.”

“Ravan’s evil actions bear no comparison to those of Rl. Ravan attacked after warning and challenging his enemies. Rl harmed you all, posing as a friend. If there is attack after an open challenge, the harm is far less. I shall (however), undo all the harm caused by him.”

“I give control to you on the inanimate matter. This is the preparation for today. Do finish the work. I am trying to find what remains to be given to you. Whoever wishes to learn about ‘faith’ should learn from you. This is my prayer, that the seeker, who lives in your company, shall develop firmness of faith.”

INSTRUCTIONS

(1) “You should mould your life after the example of a water-fowl, who has its feathers dry, when it emerges from a dip in water.”

(2) “Love the brethren, who belong to your noble company (Satsangh).” Use sweetness of style in every day conversation.”

(3) “Treat friend and foe as equal, wishing both of them well.”

“You have got a nice companion in life (wife). A saint must have a sharp-natured wife just like this.

You have got the position of fixed pole star (Qutub) only on account of her.”

Question: “Should flattery be adopted?”

Answer: “That will be against culture. You learn this lesson from my example (as I used to do, When I was in physical form).”

Question: “How can it be possible to follow you, so long as you do not bestow the power to follow you?”

Answer: “I have bestowed all these powers already, which will come to surface in their own time.”

20th May, 1944:

Revered Master's instruction:

“You need not extend your leave now beyond September, or else you might suffer loss. If the doctor advices, or if your health is not alright, you may extend leave by four months. In that case I shall be responsible for your loss. You are our Beloved. Every demeanour of the modes of your behaviour is to our liking. I can never by-pass what you say and decide. Nor can I be a mere spectator of your suffering. I suffer when I find you suffering.” (Hereafter the condition of Belovedness was all over me, ie. there was a revelation of that state - Ram Chandra.)

Instruction continued:

“You should always maintain your living after the model of my way of life. At the time of being angry with somebody, never allow your heart to be involved, or else I will be bound to bring destruction to that person.”

On my request that my acting up to this instruction also depended on Him alone, Revered Lalaji Saheb dictated: “Do not feel perturbed. Somebody may shower thousands of abuses on you, but you have to tolerate that. This means that if someone abuses you, you can also abuse in return, and even hit back and strike; but never wish anything ill for that person from your heart. In matters concerning land- ownership, you may have your own way. There, this principle need not necessarily be applied; but do have control to some extent. Cases may be filed in law-courts and decrees obtained. If occasion demands, there is no harm even in having an armed conflict. Under all circumstances, I am with you. To give protection to an innocent victim of tyranny is duty. If you have to take out the sword at the hour of need, even then there is nothing wrong.”

“Prayer had been offered, to pull you down and to take B1 ahead. The viewpoint was just that you may not go ahead of B1, but the words of the prayer were these: ‘Spiritual wealth be always in my (R1) home; and B1 become perfectly full in spirituality.’ ”

22nd May 1944:

Revered Master's instructions: (at the time of attempts to cause harm through spiritual methods):

“The world is coming to such a bad pass that it is very difficult to keep yourself untouched. Revered A1 will also have to be taken to account. You should continue throwing away heat and temperature that you may feel in your body. There is no need to apply your will just now. Undergo a little suffering, alright. Remain still defensive only, without applying your will. The need to take care of you arose quite strongly. The confrontation has become quite hard. Be linked up to my Revered Master; and stop giving training and education to anybody during this period. Be praying help from my Revered Master. Stop sleeping during daytime.”

The Revered Grand Master arrived and said:

“You need not be perturbed. If you like, that whole region and the set-up there can be destroyed.”

I replied: “It is all to be upto your liking, our Lord.”

The Grand Master said: “It shall be looked into”; and then bestowed some inner strength.

Then Revered Lalaji Saheb's dictation continued:

“They are trying to upset your mind. You have already transcended the mind, which could be upset. Yesterday I had told you to be alert and to be no more oblivious. I meant just to warn you against all that is happening today. The work that has been completed, is not possible to be upset by anybody in the world. I shall not be away from you for a single moment. Be careful and attentive to dictation. Take somewhat less food at night; neither you should remain hungry. M3 is just there at this time. All this is for your benefit and betterment. The benefit, that you earned through this tug of war, was difficult to gain otherwise. My expectations have attained fulfilment. You are very lucky. I will now be doing all work, sitting by your side. You have rendered such service to me as nobody else could do. You remained just ready for any and every work. You considered even theft and robbery for me as right. He (M1) is also attached to me very much; and I too have

love for him. He will have to give up a few things, which shall be indicated at the proper time. His flight has gone beyond egoistic pride. The point of humility has opened up. Beyond that, you will open up.”

I asked: “To arouse faith, should it 'be done that the particular point be brought up in the particular person's thought; and when faith has developed in him, the thought of the point is taken back?”

The reply was: “Do not do like that.”

Further dictation continued:

“The course of events has changed its direction. Possibly M3 may come to you, even though there is little hope for this. Do not pardon him; only avoid doing anything, in such eventuality. He (R1) cannot now be reformed. These matters have already been considered earlier.”

“It will be better if you just be aside of Swamiji (B3) at the time of talks between you and me. There is no harm in reclining at night.

The point of humility (Ibd in Sufi terminology) is quite a high position. How nice of M1 to have acquainted B3 with this particular meditation! If he practices it, he is bound to make much progress. This person will come up fine, he is able to improve himself. He will be useful to you. His spiritual guide has great love for you. His grace is coming to help in your growth. He has already given you a great deal, and intends to give even more in future. Whatever he gives you, should give him in return. Meet him as well. The proper occasion will be in August. Just now you have a lot of work pending; and at that time (in August) your condition will also be very much different.”

“R2 certainly caused suffering to me. He can have pardon only when you grant it to him. Little can be expected from B2; and work on him is likely to go waste. Leave him only to J1. You will never have shortage of money. Send Rs. 25 to J1. The expenses on account of meals are too high. Your income from the grove will be so high that you will feel surprised. The trees will also be sold. Start the work of the grove in my name. Your last resting place will be just there; and I will also remain present there. Your end also

will be just like mine. You will have to give place there to him (M1) as well. It will be marvellous when two lunatics will be sitting together (according to a famous Urdu couplet). Shahjahanpur will be the Centre. Light will be reaching everybody from here. Lay down the foundation of a well with your own hands. Go tomorrow and select the site. I will be guarding your grove. Only one well in the grove will be sufficient. If you feel the need, that well on the other side may be got renovated. It is in good condition. It will be serving the requirements to some extent. Have arrangement for a stone, and get carved on it what I shall tell you. Distribute some mangoes among the poor people, and also among children especially. Dinesh will be very happy. I have a special eye on him. I intend to totally uproot J2. You have both kinds of power. I have to deal with that also. Do not invite M4 If he comes on his own, that will be another matter. Prakash will also come out nice. The matter is now set right and now my worry is over. It is possible that some more may suffer harm because they had intended to cause trouble to you. I cannot remain an indifferent spectator of your troubles. You exercised very great restraint and tolerance.”

“People will see the wonders that are being worked out. You are still so young. You have achieved at such a young age what could not be the lot of so many great and high personalities. I shall bring you to light more than myself.”

“Treat the company of M1 as valuable. He has been much deceived by R1, who has reaped the fruits of his own actions.”

“The guide of B3 is feeling inspired to take him ahead. He has no idea of your condition. It will be a very great mistake to stimulate you in any wrong way. That was the reason for your desire to turn your attention to him. You were beyond control to check that desire. I stopped it. For the time being, stop group-satsang.”

“Today my Master has made you something beyond imagination. (The condition is developing). I will have to guard this also. The powers of enemies are weakened. Now they can do no harm to you.”

“This condition will not continue for long. It will be followed by consolidation. First of all permission was granted to you by my

Master (your Grand Master). Go on a long walk in the evening. Here much gossip goes on.”

Revelation concerning the dream of Ml on November 1, 1934:

“This matter is perfectly clear. This home (world) appeared as reflection; and that home (Hereafter) came in the real form.”

Ml requested: “Kindly do the needful.”

Answer: “It is done. All these troubles shall come to an end. Now the time is changed. I have said.

That’s all.”

The dictation continued:

“You (Ram Chandra) have also gone upto the position of pole star. Ml may stay here with you at noon for one or two days. I had demonstrated to you the chart concerning regard and respect for Master, which you will be required to advance further. The final spiritual status of your father has come to be good.

Your transmission on that particular day has done the job. I am telling you, whatever is coming to my view.”

“My Revered Master was the best example of courage. Now I am getting aside; and He Himself will instruct you. I have obtained this promise from Him. Now treat Him as all in all. He alone shall help you. I am merged in you; and hence remain dependent on Him alone in every matter. He loves you. The recommendation for your training came first of all from Him; and this had come during my life-time itself. Your movements are controlled from further still i.e. my Grand Master, who is also arriving. Sit most alert and respectful. Nothing will be left lacking in you today. The permission for you has been confirmed from far and far beyond. Nothing is now lacking in you. Tell Ml to remain noting everything most carefully and continuously.”

The Great Grand Master arrived, and said: “I have spoken to Al. I have made you fully perfect. Your Master’s name will shine through you. People will be wondering.” He then went away.

Revered Master's instruction:

“Write to D1 that he need not go to K. anymore. This upsetting has been caused in him by M3. As he was weak-hearted, M3 shook out his heart. You should always give respect to ascetics, as was my want. The power bestowed by A1 on M3 has come to you.”

“The programme for going on an evening walk to avoid gossiping be cancelled.”

“The world is without beginning and end; and when the world is like that, there is no limit to the world hereafter.”

Question: “How transmission is to be made to a new entrant?”

Answer: “Make your current thin, and mark out the point on the heart, so that the whole wave of the ocean may not rush in. Make the current thicker in proportion to the need.”

Question by M1: “So long as sensitivity (experience) does not ripen, how is one to be exact?”

Answer: “Experience teaches everything. To you, I have given my experience fully. It's revelation alone is required. For you, I have nothing more than prayer; and that is always with you. I have not kept anything away from you. Now my Master will deliver His experience.”

Grand Master's dictation:

“His (M1) connection is with me. He is being deceived by his own nature. (The condition was made explicit to show the extent of the connection). What A1 said was wrong. The deeper connection is only mine.”

Revered Master's dictation continued:

“The connection of N1 has not descended in case of anybody. B1 got deceived by your (Ram Chandra's) condition. He had no inkling that the ocean has filled up in a small earthen cup. M3 had considered you as a mere fool. But you should never use this word for yourself. When there is efficacy in tongue, this arrow can pierce you also. There is no harm in considering oneself humble. N1 had

a suspicion about you, which became a thorn in his side. Now always be attentive to my Master, as I have directed you earlier.”

“S1 is now to become something. The condition of C1 gives hope now. You have put life in him. Work on S2 is to go waste. He is a slave of N1. To make him comprehend what is right seems very difficult. However, you may go on trying. There is no harm in that. About B1, do not be influenced by the recommendations of your sister-in-law. I understand there is much affection between you two. There is no harm in giving benefit to him. But do not commit mistakes like me in bestowing powers. Power shall remain only in one; benefit will go to everybody.”

“At K., you were being served with dry bread, and M3 was enjoying savoury meals; and I was full of regrets. Your tolerance caused much pain to me.”

“Now you can give permission to M5 of L...”

Request by M1: “Kindly convey my salutations to Great-Grand Master.” Answer:

“Convey my blessings. I have not gone away anywhere.”

“By giving permission to M5 just now, you will become revealed. So, wait for a suitable time.”

In reply to a question from myself (Ram Chandra), the dictation started: “It is mere deception on the part of N1. Permission is just permission - only one. That is known to be perfect. Conditional permission is something different. This is N1’s mental fabrication. I had given perfect permission to M1 at the time of permission.”

“This jugglery of initiation was put forth only to enable advancement of B1’s claim. Don’t you know that I myself got him (M1) initiated through C1. When M1 addressed me to say that he would go for initiation only when permitted by me, I did not reply, desiring that the confusion may clear up by itself. Today, get all matters cleared up. I will not go away from you even for one second. I am so happy today that my heart does not desire to be away from you even for a moment. The eyes of all elders of yore have now got turned to you. All connections from that side have

been snapped. Keep affection for the eldest son of M3. You have blood- relationship with your aunt.”

“M1 has become totally different. He may compare it with the earlier condition. N1 tyrannized L1 quite a lot. L1’s condition will not remain the same now. He will be slowly alright. You have been hasty. M3 is a perfect rogue.”

“The anointment on the forehead of R2 with blood was aimed at slicing his neck. The impressions of that ceremony are still there. If I had not taken care, who knows what would have happened. This spirit was to cause harm to you and to bring defeat to M1. The intense feeling that was pumped into him (R2) was designed to make R2 smear his hands with your blood; but I took care not to let this come to happen. The anointment has been performed by drawing out blood from your body, so that the anointed person (R2) may assassinate the same person, whose blood has been used for anointment. For this job, R2 appeared the fittest tool for them.”

“When you stayed at K., M3 intended to administer poison to you; but I was not allowing this thought to be fixed in his mind. You never forgot me; so I also never forgot you. I had to take more care of you due to your good-intentioned nature and temperament of simplicity. Your aunt was not a party to this plot; so I have spared her.”

“One day something was even administered to you in your meal. The purpose was to cause upsetting of your mind; but I digested it totally. You were feeling only nausea and vertigo. The drug was mixed with potatoes. Whoever had indulged in this activity, has met with due punishment. (The name of the person who administered poison, is dropped out). He (N1) had the knowledge of this secret. One (chief) purpose of administering this drug, referred to the fact that you were never without my remembrance. So, this drug was used to force your mind to give up adsorption in my remembrance to allow him (N1) to snatch away (your spiritual condition and capacity). M3 had asked N1 why he did not snatch it away, to which N1 had replied that you had your Master (Lalaji) firmly seated in your thought, and never gave up that thought, as a consequence of which, it was not possible to

snatch it away. Thus, that noble self M3 had come to work out this plan. That drug could be something out of some variety of Dhatura.”

25th May 1944:

The dictation continued:

“Today, I have made you dive into the condition, that has hardly ever come to the lot of very very great personalities. Hunting imparts strength to the heart; as such I have permitted you to indulge in it. I will not allow any of your weaknesses to continue. Summon the Wheel of Time (Destruction)- Kala Chakra – today. Its shape will be in the form of a black circle. Finish the entire work today. The handsome looking wheel- Sudarshan Chakra-has already done its w6rk. Have sufficient sleep during daytime today.”

At the time of working, a thought came to my mind that the condition of volcanic eruption be created. Immediately dictation descended: “Don’t do that, otherwise the whole area will get destroyed. Now, you leave aside emulation of my inner condition. Consider yourself to be all in all.”

The dictation received at evening time:

“You will have to destroy B. No person is appointed by Nature to work there. Protect HI. The time is yet far off. All of their powers will have to be snatched away. You will have to make provision for the protection of HI. You have to supervise the work here also; and protection of good people shall be your duty.”

“He will return hale and hearty. If you so desire, you may create the thought and urge for coming back in his mind. But, calling him back will not be in the best interests. He has immense love for you in his heart.” “Connection remains with the Master alone. The guiding master may also be included therein.”

Question: “Are the relationships of the elders, prior to the Master, also to be taken?”

Answer: “All relationships are included in the Master.”

26th May 1944:

Revered Master's instruction:

“When you have completed the work in hand, you should get out of this condition; and return to your previous state, which is the real original one. Have control over both conditions. Today the Power bestowed on you has come in accordance with Grand Master's orders. He has developed special consideration for you. You have won everybody through your temperament of simplicity.”

27th May 1944

Revered Master's instruction:

“The work-in-hand had to be suspended, because you had increased sharpness. I did not want that much sharpness. It was characteristic of your mind to save labour by increasing sharpness. Now, do not devote to that work; and pay attention to the associates, practising with you.”

Since there was a little harshness in the heart, and the thought was inclined to that direction, there were orders to exercise control so that thought did not go in that direction. This having been done, since harshness was still there in the heart, I was required to engage myself with some other work, and go to sleep. I complied accordingly.

Last night at 1.00 A.M., I felt somebody came and sat near the pillow close to my right shoulder; and immediately got up in hubbub and ran away. Nightmarish fear was felt, and I chanted an incantation, as instructed.

Revered Lalaji's instruction descended:

“This was an evil spirit. Snatch away all spiritual powers of the person who sent it; and catch hold of the evil spirit that came, and thrash it down; and start with harshness in the matter concerned, without delay.” All this was done. In the morning the knowledge was given: “This was your aunt's unconscious act.”

Instructions concerning SI:

“He should stop the work of training others for some time. The mania for imparting training is to be given up. That force is to

be attached to Revered Master. That is the benefit of vision being held up. Do not pay attention to what comes to you (Ram Chandra) by way of conversation from them. This will keep the heart free from impressions. Give up extreme habits; and come to moderation.” During this very instruction, M1 intervened to say that if special powers were granted to him, he would have worked a lot more quickly. To this Revered Lalaji replied: “Just on account of this, powers were not granted. For this purpose, a person of cool and calm heart is needed.”

30th May 1944:

Instructions descended:

“Start the organization. Begin attracting people to yourself. A point of thought is to be established. Try to set characters right. I have already perfected arrangements.”

“Do not direct the force of Ether to that side. That is a very ruinous force. There is no need to bring that force to anybody’s experience. That was the force at the command of Arjun at the time of the Mahabharat war. There was no answer to it. There is mention of ‘Brahmastra’ (The unfailing Supreme Weapon), having been used against opponents. The ‘Kala Chakra’ (Weel of Time) is the special weapon of Lord Shiva. In the ‘Gandeeva’-bow of Arjun, necessary particles in the form of thought-power had been congealed. The defence against all these is like this ... (Revealed through visual plan). The ‘Brahmadanda’ of Sage Vashista, (in the mythical lore of his fight with King Vishwamitra, who turned a sage after defeat) was hypnotized through thought-power. The arrows were also got hypnotized through similar processes.”

“To N1 I had given power, but not in full quantity. He has traded with it quite a lot. He had started merging himself in those powers. So only power remained; Reality was gone... These are most secret, significant points, which are handed over to one and only one person. If somebody like that is available, who may break the weapons by orders of ‘Reality as such’ (Zaat), then one’s state is to be merged in that to the extent of reducing it to zero. That state is there where the very idea of ‘Reality as such’ gets lost; only the supposition or base remains. This also does not remain thereafter. One who has got oneself merged into that, nothing can

affect such a person. Persons having reached such a state will be extremely rare. These are very subtle and secret points. There is nobody except myself to impart training concerning these. Your knots shall go on unravelling. (The condition came to experience - just a supposition beyond 'Reality as such'; and not even that thereafter)."

"The state brought to your vision - getting merged in it, is the starting point of the state of 'Sadguru' - Master. Beyond this there is the state of 'Baga' - permanence, which has also been bestowed on you. Beyond this, there are innumerable more things to tell. Your steps are going beyond the condition of 'Baga'. Further enlightenment shall follow later."

31st May 1944:

Instructions:

"Cleaning in case of everybody is needed. All those, who were receiving training from me, had been spoilt by filling grossness in them. R3 has now started going ahead. M5 needs a little more attention. Do cleaning of Bl. You have not done thorough cleaning. A lot is still needed. There is no harm in cleaning all at once. You can use that particular weapon in cleaning but not in transmission. There is need of much precaution therein."

1st June, 1944:

Revelations:

"I mostly cleaned during the dreams the effects of K.. that were being thrust on you. But when these became torrential, I started being all the time with you. R2 was attempted to be developed as your assassin."

3rd June 1944:

Instructions concerning organization:

"R3 may be given conditional permission, and the training at J.. may be put under his charge. M5 will have to be permitted after a little more reform. In every place someone or other will need being developed and made in charge of the training work there."

The overall supervision shall have to be yours. K2 is now alright; but what you have given him should be digested through your help. B2 is a useless person.”

Revered Master’s dictation:

“All this trouble came to happen only on account of you. I got out of my body together with that Power, and as soon as I was out of the body I transferred the Power to you, and then went away. B1’s essence was drawn away along with that Power, and it has not returned to him as yet. This action was not mine; it had occurred automatically.

“I had given my own life to N1 as a punishment to you all. I was desirous, but people were not coming to me. So I considered it proper that I should keep the same one longer, whom you were enamoured of, and whom you liked more.” (The plan was visualized). “People came to me, but were inclined to N1, so it was demonstrated that whom you liked more, I kept him established longer, so that all of you might have the taste of your liking.”

“The condition of J1 is clean and free from all these affairs.”

“Now, let Revered Master take rest.”

Revered Master answered:

“I shall find rest, when you will give me rest. When you feel much agony, start singing like me. Therein attraction takes place, and the attention to pain is reduced. Your singing has acquired effectiveness. I have given you something very fine, but it will not be revealed just now.”

6th June 1944:

The dictation descended:

“R1’s idea, ‘that in case of somebody’s transmission not being acceptable, an imaginary wall between that person and oneself may be conceived’, is wrong, because when transmission can be given across a wall, why should thought remain incapable of going across a wall! If somebody is closed in an iron cabin, and the transmission is directed to him, will it fail to reach him? Certainly not. Then, what force can a mere imaginary wall be expected to

possess? It is better not to meet the person from whom transmission may happen to be unacceptable. However, if somebody is transmitting, and requires to exclude some person from receiving it, then this can be achieved by having an imaginary wall between oneself and the person to be excluded.”

“What to say of others, even J1 will not be easily ready to accept you (as my real representative and successor). You do not need to go to anybody for Satsang. I do not like that the particles of transmission from other persons affect you. If such an occasion is there, you should yourself transmit. Be a lion. If somebody does not accept you; or in case of need otherwise, you can throw a challenge to that person. Initiate Prakash yourself. As far as possible, C1 should join the annual function this time at Fatehgarh. Give permission to C1 again from your side, which means from my side. His will is weak in this matter; and what I am suggesting to you, will create force in him.”

Submission:

“I could not understand that if I give permission to C1, it will be connected to you!”

Answer:

“Don’t consider anything to be from your side. Whatever you will say, shall be my permission.”

The dictation continued:

“S1 will also have to be permitted, but this is still quite far off. S2 is quite worthless. He is firmly fixed in thought in favour of N1. M1 is just fine. K4 still possesses the emotional condition, but its direction is towards the other side. He will remain like that.”

Submission by M1:

“N1 says that one who is an atheist, is a person of real faith.”

Answer:

“Such a person is not fit for Satsang. Abstain from his company. J1 is a man of poor disposition. No soreness should be caused to his heart. M5 will come off very fine, if he has faith in you. He needs your attention. In case of every disciple of N1,

initiation will need renewal. You need not force or emphasize it. They may have it done, if they like. Why do you feel nervous to initiate, when the responsibility remains mine!”

Question:

“At the time of giving permission, is it sufficient to say that permission is granted, or transmission is also to be given?”

Answer:

“Transmission is also to be given; and this has been revealed to you already. The condition is imparted to full capacity. The method that was adopted in your case, is not applied. That is done only in one case. Never break off the bondages.”

Submission:

“Only that much should happen through me, which you have denoted.”

Answer:

“I shall take care of it.”

Submission by M1:

“You have bestowed on one to the fullest extent.”

Answer:

“According to capacity, I have not been miserly in case of anybody. As was the capability, so was bestowed by me. There is never special benefit by bondages being broken. Responsibility is enhanced. He has no leisure during all twenty-four hours. Should I fix some site for my own residence or not?”

Turning to me, the dictation continued:

“I shall become free after your physical passing away; and the whole responsibility shall pass onto you. This chain shall go on continuously. Nature makes and uses only one as Her instrument. Cl may himself initiate his sons.”

Last night I had enquired:

“When every particle of Master has merged in the Ultimate Reality and become as such, then should His supposition be continued upto the end?”

Answer:

“I have done just like this. (Supposition of God cannot be possible, without establishing a form).

8th June 1944:

Instruction from Revered Lalaji Saheb continued:

“At the time of transmission, one’s condition is not to be cast on the person to whom transmission is made. You can transmit a slight shadow of your condition only; but not on every person. This precaution is for you only.”

“Your representative ship will be a matter of very great shock to B1; and it will take much time for his heart and mind to be normal.

His mother will also be unhappy; and she will try to make her brother active. He will develop quite an enmity with you. He could not do anything to cause harm to you even earlier; and even so, he can do nothing now. The condition of all those persons of K.. has grown very bad. Some persons will remain directed to B1, who has created quite a strong influence in his favour. You have no need for defence. Nobody’s power can have any evil effect on you, even though all powers will be turned towards you; and all associates of Satsang will be set against you; and B1 will consider you as his enemy.”

Question:

“Will they be against M1 also?”

Answer:

“People are afraid of him. You have to stop going to him (B1) also. R1 will have much difficulty in accepting you. You need to be cautious with him.”

At 8.30 P.M.: “HI has arrived in France. He is quite well.”

Submission:

“I surrender his safety to Your Lordship’s care. I have very great love for him.”

Answer:

“Have faith. I have assigned this duty to myself. He will return safely. You should be in touch with this war (second world war). News will be coming... is to be got ruined. The result of the war in... will go against... This work has been assigned to yourself. (The work got started). Do not depute anybody else for this work. Some Qutubs (Dhruas - fixed regional personalities) are working under you. This is big work. Only you are fit for this work.”

Question:

“Which Qutubs are engaged in the work?”

Answer:

“The revelation will come. I am going just there. This work has been assigned to both you and I. You should remain there (in France) with me. The work of training will remain assigned to you, which is not to be transferred to anybody else. (The experience was there). Very great people shall be befitted from you. You are the Lord of the European countries. Now remove your subtle body from K. Now there is not even a hair- breadth of difference between you and me.”

9th June 1944:

Revered Master’s instruction:

“Now heavy fighting has started (in France). You go on increasing the power of the Goddess of destruction (Kali). The superior Power of destruction is present in the Goddess. Today they have to surrender that front.

10th June, 1944:

“You are making the power of experience dull. You like to ask me everything. This means that duality to some extent is still there. To take a rather bad example: suppose somebody is brought to a good place out of a dirty toilet; and he remains feeling the effect of dirty experience for some time even at the clean good place. As a matter of fact, he is not in the toilet, but the air of the past

experience is still reverberating in his mind. This will be removed through training.”

“When you initiate somebody, his system-is to be connected to your heart. I do just this. There is no need of the smoke-method.”

“No need of asking to repeat an instruction. Save time.”

11th June, 1944:

Submission:

“When I cast a glance, all points appear to be in an open condition. Then, the cause of changes in the condition are not comprehensible.”

Answer:

“That is also a kind of wonderment.”

12th June, 1944:

“Publication of books is to be stopped. That is causing propaganda, which is against you.”

16th June 1944:

Revered Master’s instruction continued:

“When someone’s defect is to be removed, or some condition is to be created, one is not to be made aware of what is done before it is done. In case of prior information, the mind of that person will resist and oppose your effort, as it has become habitual with regard to that defect.”

17th June 1944:

“My Master is the example of direct love to God, which occurred after a lot of progress in spirituality. I myself am the example of love to the medium (Master). Those who are inclined to monistic way of worship primarily find direct love to God suited to their disposition, while those who remain dependent on a mutual base, develop a nature of taking a concrete base, rooted deeply in every fibre and vein of their entire being. These latter derive benefit through the medium (Master) only. You give the method as you find the inclination of a person.”

22nd June 1944:

During the night Revered Master's directions were received:

“Your status is Qutub-ul-Aqtab (Dhruadhipati-controller of fixed regional personalities). This degree is not something ordinary. Many Qutubs are working subservient to you. To them orders will reach through you only. The bigger tasks, which may not be for them to do, will have to be performed by you. You have a firm concept about yourself as Qutub-ul- Aqtab.”

23rd June 1944:

Dictation continued:

“The Humility, adopted by you, is the next stage beyond Qutub-ul-Aqtab. In creating this condition of humility, there will occur a decrement in courage (and self-confidence). No doubt, one has to come to it. Amongst our associates, nobody is endowed with the approach to the condition of divine revelation, to compare with you.”

About courage, Revered Master pointed out: “Courage, nobody has more than M1; and love, nobody possesses more than you. The condition of Qutub-ul-Aqtab comes after the departure of egoistic pride.”

“R2 will turn to you, but after quite some time. Whatever work you will surrender to me, I shall become responsible for it.”

Submission:

“When I am surrendered to you, every work is also surrendered to you.”

Answer:

“That being so, be perfectly at ease. However, the active concept of work will have to be in your mind, since you alone are my instrument.”

Question by M1:

“Is this the case with everybody?”

Answer:

“This is the case with anybody who has perfect faith. Everybody is lacking in faith. That means, there remains nothing more to do, when faith is perfect. In other words, there is something or other lacking in everybody, so long as perfection is not arrived at. And there revelation of faith is achieved to arrive at perfect faith.”

“There is no lack of love in Si, but his methods are not right.”

28th June 1944:

Instructions for M1 were received from Revered Master:

“He teaches self-control to others, without practising it himself.

(1) He should not indulge in something that may cause hurt to another person’s heart. I have to structure him as well. If so much of labour had been done on someone else, who knows what he would have become. There is nothing lacking so far as the inner condition is concerned. He has little time at his disposal. How long he would remain in this condition of doubt and indecision!

(2) He should give up the style of a teacher of Muslim theology. He should not be obsessed with the idea of age. He should not consider anybody as inferior to himself.”

“What you have written to SI about training in your letter of 27-6-44 should be known to everybody. Give a copy of it to M1 and send a copy of it to Cl. Tell him straight that this is a divine revelation to somebody, and that he should do likewise. Write in that copy also what you have written to SI about mutual cooperation and togetherness. Write also that all this has been written to SI. You have described the method very well; and the example quoted is also very nice. If he puts it to practice, much of your work will be done.”

“N1’s life will not be spared. The death of B5 has done away with the possibility of my ill-reputation. You have committed a mistake by writing in the letter about peace to the soul of B5. He is an object of my anger.”

Revered Master then smiled and continued:

“Alright, man has consideration for man. I forgive mistake. Now, structure somebody else in his place.”

The instruction being not clear to me, I asked for clarification, whereupon Revered Master explained: “Transfer your prayer to someone else, who used to go to my Samadhi.”

Question by M1: “Is prayer to be transferred to the late R4 (who was drowned in a river)?”

Answer: “His soul did not get peace. He was a good person, but helpless. For him whatever may be done will remain insufficient. He had developed a lot of self-control. B5 was a... dark cave.”

(The plan of that person lying in a dark cave came to view).

29 June 1944:

Revered Master’s instructions continued:

“At the time of the annual function (Bhandara), if nobody else makes a declaration, M1 may himself do that.”

On enquiry direction descended: “It is courtesy and good manners to inform your respected aunt first of all.”

“Al will demonstrate his masterly prowess. M1 is not aware of his own condition. It was revealed, but he did not experience it.”

During this dictation a thought arose that M3 had once said at... some time ago that B1 had made B5 cross the point of mastery over a region in a single transmission. Automatically dictation continued: “This is simply deceiving. Till now nobody can do that except you, and M1, if he takes courage.”

“The whole condition of M1 has become revealed, except some secret, which is not proper to be revealed yet.”

“Prevail upon K1 to continue Satsang (group meditation). Give direction to people there to go to him for receiving transmission. Remove his shock. This you can do just now. Consider him your elder; and do only what your heart may feel inclined to do. In this respect do not consider anybody as elder or younger to yourself. However, etiquette should be maintained.”
(Note by M1 concerning the above-mentioned shock: After physical passing away of Revered Master, B1 and M3 had been to J., where

K1 gave a sitting to a group of 70 to 80 associates (practicants). After the sitting, the two brothers (B1 and M3) had pointed out that K1 was not giving transmission properly; and that there were specific defects and drawbacks. K1 felt ashamed, and fell silent, whereupon the organization there fell to pieces. Having become down-hearted, K1 gave up interest. Aunt had rebuked both her sons (B1 and M3). This incident had been narrated to me (M1) by K1 at the time of the next annual function).

In the evening after R2 had left, dictation continued: “You did well to give him information, so that when he takes a turn in future, he should not have the opportunity to say that he was not made aware. He will take a turn after quite some time. He does not find me in his vision. He has established a figure of me, through his power of thought and imagination. Since he has the thought that I am pleased, so he constructs that sort of an image. To call me is not easy. However, sometimes I go to loving people on my own accord. All people are talking to their own mind. The hope for real intercommunication is to be had when the Ultimate Self would have become perfected. One suffering from the effect of selfhood, can attract only that person, in whom the effect of selfhood is still persisting. In R2, even the condition of ‘Kinship’ has not yet developed. There are very few such people (disciples) who are endowed with the condition of ‘Kinship’ with me. My Kinship has made a start in R3, if he is able to retain it.”

30 June, 1944:

Dictation:

“R4 has not gone devoid of thoughts and remembrance.”

“People wasted their time too much with K. people. They (disciples) did not give me-opportunity for training. The locus of their thought was mostly there, so I sent those people there to him (N1). You take lesson from my mistakes. (Note: On hearing this, the worsened condition came to view, and I felt pained.)

Dictation continued:

“You have set things right to a large extent. When people come you will see and know.”

“Universal love is there where all identities seem to become nonentities, and Oneness alone appears to be pervading. When this state is developed, and someone likes to enhance it, then he/she should include oneself in it, and then adopt it to oneself. Before this, if someone tries to enhance the condition, then, suppose he/she creates love for ten persons, there remain twenty more to be loved. If one may like to sharpen the former condition, one is to conceive the state (in which one has included oneself) as love and love alone. (The plan came to view. It is very difficult to describe it in words).”

“If someone is carefully attentive your diary can tell about all these states. In our system, the whole life is not dedicated to perfecting one thing only. No single thing (like universal love) does bring you to the destination or perfect fulfilment.”

“Master is one who is taken as ideal; and Master Associate (Sohbati) is one who would bring that ideal to ripening. Keep your heart free from worldly suffering. This will be achieved through association. The association of that person will be beneficial, who has an approach upto the stage of Qutub (Dhruva-fixed pole star or regional personality). Our by-gone representatives were connected to Qutub.”

1st July, 1944:

Instructions:

“The philosophy that is reverberating in your mind, you now start writing it down. It will be put into order later on.”

Submission:

“I find myself unable to expand the points.”

Answer:

“You can put up the subject matter very well. Practice will set everything right. When you started writing diaries, you were filling pages after pages. You just make a start.”

Dictation continued:

“The condition of mergence at the point of heart consists in the state of having lost oneself remaining continuous, in spite of

thoughts arising in the mind. There is an aversion to the incoming thoughts. Mergence or losing oneself is of various forms. It is there at every stage; but there remains difference from one to the other. The first form of self-forgetfulness (losing oneself) is called 'heart - resolution' (wherein the conflict of desires in the impulsive part of self is resolved). This is the condition, of freedom from the heaviness (caused by conflict of lower impulses in ordinary life)."

"The capacity for exercise of discriminative intelligence is enhanced when 'purification of the lower self' (Tazkia-e-Nafsa) is achieved. The 'heart' or 'lower self' is unduly despised generally. The source of thoughts is this (pointing to the forehead between the eye- brows), which is technically called 'Trikuti' or 'two-petalled lotus' or 'Ajna Chakra' or 'point of firm determination."

"A plant should not be covered with cloth at night. (This instruction was received at the time of spreading a shirt for drying up on a flower-plant)."

"Write a letter to S2. Continue writing to SI and CI. Don't wait for reply. There is Divine wrath against the priestly class. It will be useless to waste much power on them."

2nd July, 1944:

Dictation:

"People will be inclined more to you. Your temperament is similar to mine. As such, there will be trust in the fact of penetration of my identity in you. Correspondence will increase, and replies to letters will also be correct. Your virtues are not yet clear even to you. Do not consider the work, assigned to you, as useless labour, without payment and return (Begaar), as explained to you yesterday. (Note: This refers to the topic concerning 'purification of lower self' (Tazkia-e-Nafsa) on 1-7-'44). So long as pleasure ensues from fulfilment of sensuous (worldly) desires through Impulsive actions, 'purification of lower self' is not perfected. On having achieved 'purification of lower self', one does not derive pleasure from association etc., but that act is performed as if it were a useless labour, without payment and return (Begar). This principle is correct unto its own extent. You have to proceed on your own principle. The relationship between you and myself is

direct. Adherence to these principles as such, will prove futile in your case. His (M1) insight is not so deep. What comes to you is from the Real. There is no admixture in it. I have left you in confusion. You will get its reward as well. Your story will remain a matter of talk for the people of the world for a pretty long time. For you this restriction will not apply, because people will be initiated on my hand. You can impart training to the disciples of my every and any representative.”

3rd July, 1944:

Instructions:

“Do not put my photograph at the place of my seat. People prevailed upon me to get myself photographed. Now worship of photograph has started. K2 will be coming in about four to five days. Prepare him a little more.” M2 was initiated today by M1, under Revered Master’s orders.

4th July, 1944:

Instructions:

“Prepare a list of initiated members, but do not include the name of R2 in it. He will have to be initiated anew. You are very fast in reforming your brethren; but they do not have the capacity for absorption to the same extent. So, go on increasing that also side by side. The mania for imparting training to brethren is good. That will bring strength to me soon, and you will find field for training.”,

5th July, 1944:

Instructions:

“Group meditation be held at the place of M1. To you people shall come one by one. This does not mean that you do not possess the right of transmitting to a group. You possess rights to everything. VI will have, to be initiated anew. You can transfer initiation as well. This is possible even now. His connection only to N1 still remains. The ghost of initiation is still haunting him. As such all efforts will go waste. You have been given information for the future. Remove the name of B6 from the list. There is one more person at G., who did not maintain connection with me.”

7th July, 1944:

“I do not go anywhere. I am always close to you. How? - This secret will be revealed to you when you will leave your body. I am quite aware of your labour. Matters are getting circuitous and meshy. So, I do not like to reveal you. Stop correspondence for the time being. Don't lose courage. Success shall come. SI did not pay attention to your letters. This lack of respect has hurt me. His progress has stopped. Don't be worried. Stop transmitting to SI. CI should take care of his health. Increase his energy also. There may be no harm in revealing the secret to him; but he should be warned not to communicate it to others. This man can be useful to you. The narration noted down by you, can be told to him as a whole. But these are to remain confidential with him. He should not keep a copy of these with him. These are for the future generations to gain experience. There is no need to tell these to people in general. Just as I have passed on my experience to you, even so you will do with your experience. You can take work from CI. His nervous system is weak. Tell him again not to reveal this secret at any cost, so long as the time for that is not there. There is no harm in inviting him. MI is to benefit from the treatment of water from bottles of coloured glass.”

8th July, 1944:

Instruction:

“When MI goes to E., he should have sufficient spiritual togetherness (Satsang) with CI. The deformation of society, as we find, was never expected to go down to this extent. Now this condition is here before us. (The plan and condition was brought to view). There is need of transmission individually to people one by one. Then, work without requiring their presence will also be going on.”

“People have taken me to be dead. When they considered me to be dead, obstruction in that current (of transmission) also got created; and mostly people did not maintain connection with me.”

Submission:

“I find myself non-plussed to hear such things.”

Answer:

“I also feel disappointed, but not with everybody.”

9th July, 1944:

Provisional permission to work as preceptor was granted today to K2, as per orders from Revered Master.

10th July, 1944:Instructions:

“Pull K2 to the cosmic region (Brahmanda). (Revered Master liked his control of lower self to the extent of eradication). Do not let your time be wasted. Remain engaged in some work. When you have leisure, transmit, or walk or read good books and take interest in the affairs of the household. You have a heavy burden on you.”

Question:

“Can I read newspaper at leisure?”

Answer:

“Yes; but not like M1. News is there around you. You can find out as you require. Newspaper is not a good reading material. If improvement of English is in your view as aim, you may read editorial notes. You cannot find in the newspaper anything better than what I will be giving you. There is no prohibition either, if you read it just for momentary recreation. Its impression should not remain there on the mind. If somebody wants to be a critic, he is to read newspapers.

That is not your job, nor have you come for that. Attachment to anything, whatsoever, is harmful for spirituality.”

Prescription:

“If organic mind is conjoined to the cosmic mind, there will be increase in the strength of mind: Though there is no need for you to do that, the power is there just at the back of your thought.”

Submission by M1:

“I had written a letter in very strong words in the year 1922, which was handed over by your Lordship to S1, who had returned it to me. I seek pardon for those strong words.”

Answer:

“I have pardoned his (M1) every mistake, because he has love. However, he is not taking care to improve his present condition, which makes me sad. The competence is there in him; and, therefore, I hold him responsible. (The plan of the condition came to view).”

“You have grasped the plan correctly. You can now try to snatch the condition away. But the difficulty is that he will create it in himself again. He has had a long association with N1. Some effect of that association is still there. He (N1) went on crushing everything in him (M1). So, the sense of competence got obliterated. His (N1) will power made him (M1) lose courage. His (M1) training was not carried on in accordance with his condition, or in other words, he was not made aware of his condition, so that it had acquired its natural glow. There, however, has been no miserliness from my side in filling him (M1) up.”

“The same fellow (N1) snatched away everything from PI; and that wretched person (PI) had no comprehension of it. Very often people who saw him (PI) felt that his features had come very close to mine. Since N1’s sensibility had already given way, he (N1) had the apprehension that this man (PI) may occupy my position (after my physical veiling). So, he (N1) performed that action as a precautionary measure. Since my intent was something different, I was not very anxious in the matter of giving him (PI) protection. He (PI) had already put his entire trust and faith in him (N1), which was an additional factor. Whatever care for providing protection I took, it was only for you, so that my pedigree may not be destroyed. He (N1) generally forbade people to come to me and ask questions. This was not his fault: he had received just that sort of training. Instead of sending people to me for association (Satsang) and transmission, he required them to go to him (N1). This was very displeasing to me. PI was not a good person.”

11th July, 1944:

Instruction:

“I do not want Toms, Dicks and Harrys,’ who are below the mark, to fill up our Association (Satsang).”

Submission:

“The preceptors who have got permission (to admit people in the Association) do so unknowingly. They may be given some light, which may enable them to refrain from committing such mistakes.”

Answer:

“These preceptors possessing permission commit mistakes in their enthusiasm, without applying their intelligence. As such, I consider it proper that they consult you before admitting some new person to the Satsang. Only M1 is worth exemption in this respect. (The chart concerning the condition of remaining ones flashed to view). Somebody tries to enhance the Satsang out of the pride of self-importance (viz. S1); someone else works in the sphere of Satsang, as a sample of idiocy (viz. S2) : people introduced by him will remain dull. C1 has adopted a better method; he got better persons also, but he could not render benefit to them. He has enhanced work to an extent, which he is incapable to cope with. He could not prepare even one person, who could be helpful to him in coping with his work. Letters will have to be circulated, instructing that persons below the mark should not be admitted. Not to obey you, will cause my displeasure, because I myself am issuing orders, residing in you. Instruct K2 as well, that on admitting somebody to the Satsang, he should write that person’s condition to you and have your approval. In case, however, he comes across someone, about whom his heart feels entirely satisfied, there will be no need of ascertaining from you. This same rule applies to everybody. Just now, any communication on your part with Si, will remain ineffective. When he receives a bump, he will pay heed. When he discovers conclusively that somebody superior to him in the matter of loving me is present, he will then come to his senses. The real love is that, when there remains no awareness of one’s love for Master, or of Master’s love for oneself.

This state develops in one person only; and the person, in whom it is developed, has no knowledge that he loves people or they love him. The person, in whom this has developed, has established connection with the Ultimate Entity in one jump. Such an example is rare in the world; and it is not to be expected from everybody.” (The Plan of Love to compare with this came to view). Detail of the Plan, as explained: “If Master loves the disciple, then the Master is lover and the disciple is beloved; and if the disciple loves the Master, then he becomes lover and the Master is beloved. The relation is established in either case. The mark of the condition described above having developed is there, when on asking to distinguish between lover and beloved (Master and disciple), no reply will be forthcoming through comprehension.”

On enquiry the dictation arrived:

“I will reveal the method of transfer of life at the end. If it be revealed just now, you might apply it, when worried on account of the troubles of household life.”

12th July, 1944:

Question:

“When the foundation for the organization be laid, should the brethren, who maybe close to B1 etc., be permitted to go to them?”

Answer:

“He will spoil them; and try to draw and attach them to himself.”

A thought crossed my mind that thus far my intention has been, in accordance with the established tradition, to help my fellow brethren instead of taking help from them; while only God knows about the future.

Instruction:

“There is no need to establish such a tradition either.”

Question by M1:

“The chart and plan of condition etc. comes to the view of brother Ram Chandra. Why does it not come to my view?”

Answer:

“It is a disciple’s competence to draw the Master towards him/her; and this competence develops in that disciple, who has crossed many stages earlier. Masters become so helpless then, that if they want to have someone else in place of such a disciple, they are unable to do that. This competence is God-given. There is no control of an individual (Master) in this regard. Objection against me is unjustified. I have no jealousy (or favouritism) for anybody. This is a reply to your ideas, that you have been putting before me.”

Dictation concerning M1 continued:

“Sincere labour, put in by anybody, does not go waste. One must always be optimistic. He (M1) has no need to put in the particular labour, which he has in mind. There is need only for reform of thoughts. He should give up his unnecessary egotistic assertiveness. After that I will tell something further. He does not fall short with respect to spirituality. He is to have only a firm will that this thing is gone, and then have no fancy for it. His will power is strong, even though he does not know this. He can do anything. I considered him superior to everybody. If courage (and will) is applied for a proper purpose, it is not to be called egoism. This you tell to C1 also. He too is lacking in this respect.”

“The revelation of all these matters and conditions to others (in general) will be harmful to you, and enmities will increase. If you desire to cause trouble to me, you may reveal these matters.”

Submission:

“I am very fortunate.”

Answer:

“No, I am very fortunate. If a good progeny is born to somebody, the parents consider themselves fortunate. These matters are very encouraging and correct also. Never put your courage to test. Do not call C1 just now. I shall tell you myself (about when he may be called). I am afraid you may be hasty, which may render his nervous system defunct. It needs much caution to take him further ahead. This you should tell to M1 also.

Entry into the para cosmic region (Ulia or Para Brahmanda) is yet distant for him (Cl). However, he should not be shocked at this. There is some good purpose involved in this. He will see something peculiar in the present condition; and then will get light to go ahead. This field, in which he (Cl) is living and moving at present, is not an ordinary one. If all conditions of this region get unrivalled and the stroll through it is completed, then many things and problems lying ahead are rendered easy. I have detained you a lot, and that is why you have obtained mastery over everything. No doubt, however, the speed, with which you have acquired mastery, is hard to achieve for anybody else. I like to bring him (Cl) up in this same way. But he will take time. Sure, he has wasted quite a lot of time. You should make people stroll in this field to the greatest possible extent. It is not the field, which people be made to cross quickly. There will remain immaturity ahead in proportion to the haste, allowed in this field. Beyond this region, there is enhancement in sublimity, but the capacity for flight in those more sublime regions is brought from the region, previously covered. There are many regions beyond that, but those are not for people in general. (The plan of the condition came to view). He (M1) was taken out of that region somewhat quickly. His mind was not such as to bear the Divine Flash, present there. He would have become more haughty. He has, however, suffered no harm thereby.”

On enquiry about M6, the dictation continued:

“S4 (to whom M6 was attached) was a person fallen below the standards of civility. He should have enquired of me, as a matter of necessary etiquette at least. He had the right to transmit. He considered himself very competent. If you like, you can break off his connection, provided that M6 may believe it. These matters will serve as lamp to persons coming to this arena in future.”

On further enquiry, the dictation continued:

“B1, no doubt, has some amount of hold in the cosmic region (Kubra or Brahmanda), but there is no comparison with you. The valleys, in which you have strolled, were never available to his fortunes.”

13th July, 1944:

Instructions:

“People have become embodiments of puzzlement. First of all, they will have to be brought up to a single thought, which is to be that of the Master. They have to be warned not to entertain thought of any other person. You too have to help them in this regard. Ripeness of thought will be your responsibility. If somebody may be against it, he has to be told to find some other home. This is the basis of the organization.”

“All of these people will have direct connection with you. Nobody will interfere with your work, unless permitted by you. Further advancement is to be taken up when this much of work is perfected, or the trust in its having been perfected, is confirmed. Useless conversations are to be given up. Absurd dialogues should be avoided. Reading fiction is to be stopped. The heart should not be soiled with love for persons other than He. Mania for friendship is to be given up. God alone is to be taken as friend. Religious treatises, soaked in Divine Love may be gone through. Going through difficult and deep philosophy is not needed. Mutual behaviour is to be fraternal. (Sympathy with one another, Help in time of trouble and so on). Good demeanour is the very essence of this system. Everybody must have to follow the principles. Adhering to principles of apparent good conduct like getting up early in the morning, practice of meditation, offering of prayer, performance of the duties of household in a proper way, and so on, will be incumbent on everyone.”

14th July, 1944:

Dictation:

“All happenings are within my sight. I am giving long rope, awaiting destruction. I have got correspondence suspended, because people are becoming impertinent, and human courtesy has withered away. Write to D1 that he has not yet seen the Sun, on Whose sight he will find his eyes dazzled and closed. Dialogues beyond limits of civility are distasteful to me. This disrespect is being hurled at me.”

“You have effaced yourself to such an extent as to acquire perfect identity with me in every nerve and fibre of your being. Insult to you will never be tolerable to me.”

“The enemies have not spared any effort at ruining of our home. Now, I have to see how people do not accept you. I had got the chain of correspondence started, so that people may get convinced in an easy smooth way. Now, you also come to your own. You will have to give a different turn to your eyes. People shall suffer harm as well.”

“D1 gave a very rude reply. N1 destroyed his other world to the extent of total annihilation. It is such one that is named ‘roguish unfortunate’ (Kandawa).”

Dream between 4 and 5 o'clock in the afternoon:

A man came and sat close to my head on the bed. He took out a knife and first tried to cause wounds on both sides of my head through the hair. But since the knife failed to pierce the skull, he put it on my neck with the intention of slicing my throat. I thrashed him down on the threshold and held the same knife at his throat. Then he started apologizing and said that it was not he but my so-called companion in misery (who was trying to harm me). I enquired his name; and he was on the point of giving it, out of fear for life, when I was quickly back to wakefulness. It struck me that it must be R2, since just before this last dream, I had dreamt that R2 had come, and was looking about here and there, indicating evil intentions. That dream could not be recalled clearly.

Dictation at night:

“I stopped your thought going in the direction of R2, so that there may not be strengthening (through your thought) of the power bestowed on him by N1 for causing harm to you. Since R2 has not cut off his connection from that side, you now snatch off the power bestowed on him by N1.” This was done.

The dictation continued:

“If you feel displeased, you may include D1 in the programme of destruction.”

I submitted:

“I do not want this. If it is an order, it will be another matter.”

After the allotted work was completed, Revered Master revealed: “These powers are bestowed only on a person of cool temper. You have developed your temperament after my own model. If these powers had been bestowed on Ml, he would have acquired much strength, and would have had to exercise control.”

I submitted:

“No doubt my temperament is akin to yours, but on occasions there is a sudden tide of obstinate rashness.”

Answer: “That is a paternal effect.”

15th July, 1944:

Instructions:

“You should not fill the organization with undeserving people, as I did. You take care of your health. You have much work ahead of you. Medicine alone will not be of help. There must be movement of limbs as well. If you are not able to go for a walk in the morning, then you go in the evening. You are wasting a lot of time. There is need to increase educational capability.”

I submitted:

“To some extent health, and to some extent idleness, hinders me to devote to work. In this regard, I alone am at fault.”

Answer:

“That is my fault. All of your faults shall equally be my faults.”

The instruction continued:

“I feel pained to observe your health (feeling of pain occurred). Take meals on time. Have rest, when the time for it is there. Milk will be good for you; ghee will not be good enough.”

“Two things you have to bear in mind: (1) health, and (2) self-respect.”

I submitted:

“Self-respect, as I understand it, means that one should not do unto others, what one would not like to be done unto oneself.”

Answer:

“All this belongs to very good old ages (Sat Yug). It means: being reserved with everybody; not giving opportunity for too much talk to anybody, i.e., not giving long rope for discussion; not revealing one’s household secrets to all and sundry; not considering oneself as weak; not to utter something that may drive others to become unmannerly to you-all this constitutes the definition of self-respect.”

16th July, 1944:

Instructions:

“The causal body of a disciple is made to merge in that of the Master. When Master has done this, formation of impressions (Samskars) in the disciple is stopped: (The plan of the condition came to view). The cause of the organic aspect of being (Pinda) is the cosmic aspect (Brahmanda); and the cause of the cosmic region is the para cosmic region (Para Brahmanda). What occurs there (in para cosmic region) comes down to the cosmic region, wherefrom it descends to the organic level; and then it assumes the form of suffering (or enjoyment). This is to say that what has appeared as suffering (or enjoyment) at the organic level of being, originates in the para cosmic region.”

“The subject dictated above is very subtle. Just, now your mind is beyond control. I shall explain it further when you are at ease.”

“You will have to break off initiations of some more people, and make an announcement to this effect. If G1 repents and takes a vow not to repeat his activities, and requests re-initiation, something may be done for him. You are capable of breaking off anybody’s initiation, to whichever system or order it may belong; though you need not do that. Make announcement about G1. He has himself broken off his initiation. If you say about somebody that he has gone out of mind, the effect will be there. If per chance, something like this happens, you should draw out and neutralize the effect. This method you can apply to any of your inadvertent acts. If somebody may happen to be under the effect of someone

else's curse, and you like to destroy that effect, you enter the sphere of piety (Qudsa), and draw out that effect.

There will be hardly any possibility to counteract it. Those having reached this region of piety are very few. Your steps are going ahead of that as well. Nobody can match you. Just as you have tried to move beyond other spheres rapidly, you are attempting the same there also. Such rapidity should not be applied in case of others."

"If you pay attention to your inborn sublimity (piousness at birth), and find somebody endowed with it, that will be the sign for going ahead. This sphere is not the fortune of angels even: they remain desirous of strolling at this point. I am telling all this to you, so that you do not consider yourself weak. In your previous birth, you had great fondness and attachment to spirituality, as well as extreme longing. You had died in the state of that longing. You did not find a guide, and you suffered extreme pain in that longing and pining. You had many children, and were able to pull on with hard life in poverty.

Your wife was a very pious and simple lady. (The plan came to view). The impression of longing that you brought from your previous life is still there. The stage you are in, is not reached on being born in a priestly family. This is a matter of experience and not an absolute law. You belonged to a business community (in previous birth)."

"In previous birth M1 was holding some royal post. He had no family. Financial status was good. He was fond of a pleasure-seeking life, and became abstemious at the end. C1 in previous birth was a low-caste person. He had plenty of humility. He was very tolerant. He had a pretty hard life, but considered that poverty from the side of God, and had no remorse; and hence felt little distress. (The plan came to view). SI was a physician in previous life also. He was strict by temperament. He was connected to a prostitute. He felt much shock on her death, which turned him to remembrance of God, which persisted to the end. His financial condition was good. Now that you have enquired about him, eradicate this element of carnal love in his nature. But not just now. C1 has brought the weakness of his heart from previous life.

M1 has no doubt brought with him the dirt of pleasure-seeking and prosperity, but its effect has changed, and it is not harmful now.”

Dictation:

“The transmission for this point of piety (Qudsa), has not been given by me to anybody except you; and that also was given to you in your dreaming state. The accusation of miserliness against me is baseless. Nobody came to me with a wide open heart. In your case, I had to do it under orders; and you compelled me as well.”

“Whatever I knew, I had to carry in my bosom. Nobody capable of taking It from me was ever born, and the desire (to give away) just remained there in me.”

Submission:

“Tell to me at least, my Lord!”

Answer:

“I delivered It all to you. The thought persists in you that somebody capable of taking It may be created (born). This is the effect of my mentality. This is my influence that is surging up in you. Who knows whether you too may have to return unfulfilled. Those capable of taking it will be very rare. There was one person (hinting at B1), in whom this capacity could be developed in course of quite a long time. But he still carries the blood of N1 in his veins. He can hardly ever have orientation to you. S1 cannot reach that point. C1 does not have life left enough to achieve that Condition by that time (of your return). M1 does possess this potentiality, but he does not give up his royal status. The access to It can be possible when all impulses get extinguished. In your case impulses were innately in a condition of extinction. Sensual desires were clean, but paternal influence was present. Longing was part of your very basic nourishment. You have a lot of tenderness in your temperament. Try to get rid of it. I do not mean that you say good-bye to it altogether. It is a gift from God, which does not come as a fortune to everybody. What I mean is only that you keep control over it. Refinement causes trouble: you yourself would have experienced this. You will have to deal with dirty people. Then you do not deeply contemplate over it, and let it just

pass. You tend to be hasty by temperament. People will not be able to withstand it. Everybody can get only in proportion to one's capacity. By making haste there may be the danger of harm being caused to the nerves of the person concerned. Special care is needed in case of the transmission through the mind. Force is to be applied only where a point is to be opened up immediately."

Dictation concerning M1:

"He understands very well! No sooner someone would cross him a little in conversation, then he would become enraged. If he removes this defect, all other defects will follow suit. Politics, that proves troublesome at meals, is the defect of attachment to newspapers. There is a proverb: 'Why is the religious magistrate (Qazi) slim? - Just due to apprehensions about the city?' He (M1) reads the newspaper, broods over it, and starts shouting abuses, even sitting alone in the room, whether somebody is there to listen to him or not. There is one more defect, viz. if he has formed a good opinion about somebody, he goes; on observing virtues and virtues in him; and as against this, if he gets displeased with somebody, he finds not a single virtue in him. He likes flattery as well. There can be nobody, perfectly free of defects. The habit of observing defects, means that the particular defect is present in the observer in seed form, which being reflected is projected in the Other person. This is indicated so that, if the heart feels trouble on comprehending the particular defect (observed in the other? person), that defect is present in seed form in the observed. That should be cleaned off. If on knowing some other person's defect, no trouble is felt within, that will be the quality of sensitivity. Where one's inner virtues are not reflected in the other person, there the defect will also not be projected."

"It is surprising to find such defects in a person of his (M1) stage, as may cast a veil over his virtues. He never controlled any of his mental tendencies from going beyond limits. Complaining he considered to be his duty, and then he had no concern any further. I have never shirked my duty. Ask him what duty he has performed. Wherever he sat, he only defamed me. I think his mind is beyond control to some extent. But the responsibility for this falls on him alone. He never considered these as defects; and I also

said nothing as a matter of courtesy. Master always keeps an eye on the inner condition.”

“He (Ml) should not feel down-hearted. I have revealed all these secrets on inquiry from Ram Chandra; and his intention is also benign. I have often been giving ways and means (to get rid of defects). Suppose the defect is not removed, then he (Ml) has, however, got his share of benefit, but my purpose has not been fulfilled. It is my personal purpose that I require that he be free from the defect. Your uncle (Nl) always patted ‘Bravo’ to all such things. If you like, all such defects in him can be totally eradicated, but he will have to be merged into yourself, and then you will not be able to attend to anything else beyond this (work). If he creates repentance (and aversion for the defect) in his inner being, then you can dig these up from their position. But the difficulty is that he creates a place for these again.

If you may merge him in yourself, then you will need keeping an eye on him all twenty-four hours. (The plan came to view). Ask him to try himself, and use his will. That can also give the same result. One more reason for the degradation of his character has occurred by way of my passing out of the world, due to which he got rid of the fear of my presence. Every representative has become a slave of his own will (and opinion);- and I have this complaint from everybody. If there is no head or supreme authority in a society, this defect" creeps in.' My dear brother (Nl) never had anything to do with it. Neither he was ever the supreme authority, nor did he comprehend the responsibility for it at any time. It was infact a mistake on the part of all of you, that you took him to be as such (supreme authority) without my order. Now the controlling agency is present, and my own power is active in it. One whose responsibility is greater, must essentially have greater authority. Your liking and request will have the status of Divine dictation to me. One who will not be oriented to you, the Spiritual spring in his case will get closed, and this will be that person's own blunder. It remains quite clear that when a river has broken off its connection to the main spring, there is every possibility of its being dried up. In case of Dl, if you like, you can break off his connection, and link him up to that noble (meaning ignoble) personality (Nl), so that he (Dl) may enjoy that (peculiar) taste (of such a connection).”

18th July, 1944:

Instructions:

“The sum total of carnal desires resides at the navel. When needed it is to be pulled downwards, and made to descend, and then again drawn up at will. If due to straying wayward, some excess occurs, then it is to be evaporated through the navel. But this is not to be given out to people in general, nor is it to be something for general practice, so that they may not draw this power beyond limits. Under intoxication of pleasure, which may become difficult to manage and control. This can be done by a person of great capability for control. To you I have told this because you have almost eradicated it. There is much need of correct estimate in this regard, so that more than what may be needed is not drawn up. Hence, I am telling this only for use by very special people. In our circle no special emphasis is laid on this point in order to avoid any possibility of undue arousal of this power. This point can be dealt with in a proper way only by someone, who has developed full expertness about use of this power, and in whose case this point has been sufficiently cleaned. A person of the status of pole star (Dhruva or Qutub) is to be preferred for this purpose, because he acquires expertness about this point. This, however, does not mean that he does not observe precautions. SI requires a lot of cleaning of this point in him. He has brought this effect with him (from his previous birth). I gave him that sort of training which made him closely attached to me, so that there may not be much opportunity for the arousal of that effect in him. It is the quality of my training that he could develop so much love. The reason for such training, I have already stated above. The feeling of self-importance in him (because of his love) is undue. The express capability for it was not there in him. The sprout of love was certainly there in him; but it was my work to develop it and give a proper shape to it. Cl came cleaner.; That does not mean that he was entirely free from it. Instruct M1 with a warning not to tell anybody about it. If on observing some other person's defect, one remains feeling the pinch of it for quite some time, then defect is present in the observer in the form of a seed, so-to-say. If the pinch passes off only after a short time, then this is due to attachment.”

Dictation concerning Ml:

“If some mistake is committed, I mean especially during conversation with some other person, he (Ml) should apologize to him. In proportion to the apology being tendered from the core of the heart and with tearful eyes, the force of the mistake will become weak to the same extent. But the difficulty is that he (Ml) never realizes that he should not have said something undue and unbecoming. He considers everything uttered by him as right; and even thinks that what he said was correct. The sign of something being unpalatable to somebody is that the person has been hurt, as indicated by a change on the face of the person concerned. He (Ml) may think of past matters, and should feel repentant for what comes up in memory; and put the above-mentioned instructions to practice. Nobody except God is perfectly right. It is useless to be proud in this regard. This (condition of perfect rightness) is created in someone only through God’s Grace. This is to say that the origin of that (rightness of actions) is He (God). Then where is the occasion for pride! If a person, while living (and behaving) in the world, makes it (i.e., the world) unpleasant, I think there is none more unfortunate (than such a person). The real truth is that man cannot be oriented to God all the time, and hence all this material of right and wrong, good and bad has been created for his recreations. If considered-with full sincerity, these things have no reality basically. The pair of opposites contain pleasure of mind in them. Goodness, and badness are mutually opposite. Goodness can be recognized as such only when we have badness in opposition to it. Similarly, badness can be known and assessed only when goodness is there to compare with it. Now just consider as to what is to be their base or foundation. All these are materials created by Nature for man’s recreation. Whoever comprehended it like that has attained to salvation of his human existence. (Plan came to view: The plan demonstrates two currents, viz. of goodness and badness, oozing out of a single object, which currents being inverted, both lose their respective effects. From the same source one current of remembrance of God, and the other of carnality emerge. On being inverted their origin is discovered to be the same).”

Right Side	O	Left Side
(Remembrance of God)		(Carnality)
Goodness		Evil

Dictation continued:

“When man is engaged in remembrance of God; and the current, which I have named as such for your comprehension, is inverted to reach the original Reality, then the same effect starts descending by way of the other current which I have described as the current of carnality. Thus, carnality is purified and loses its usual glamour and sharpness. Therefore, in our system, carnality gets perfected last of all, and this is the principle everywhere. In our circle, particularly B1 has talked of many techniques to create impression on people. These are all structured out of his own mind. These should not be put to practice. Only that is correct, which I am giving you, and shall remain giving in future also. Or whoever has achieved perfect harmony with his perfect Master, and thereby start receiving light from the Source above, can give correct prescriptions. Acting on mentally constructed methods will not eradicate the effect of mind. What is happening generally is that, on somebody telling something or narrating his condition, one or the other technique for his convenience is given to him. By techniques, I mean meditational or other spiritual practices. These techniques, which are not coming from the Real Source, cannot be correct. It is a different matter that sometimes just by chance, something given like this (mental construction) may happen to be correct. People are giving these so-called techniques to assert their self-importance, and create impression. To be very careful at each step is needed. Spirituality is not a children’s play. Just think, whether I am now a dead personality?”

“Your memory has been spoilt due to the effect of chloroform. Its antidote is lemon. At the time of the annual Function, if something untoward happens, then getting - aside from those people, you may enquire of me in seclusion. B1 is so proud of his techniques. C1 is in dire need of your love. His activity has been

drawn up also to some extent. Sacrifice has been performed by you alone. You had no desire for anything. This is real sacrifice. (Plan came to view: The plan appeared as if some living objects are fixed at their places, and they are only half-headed, having lost their capability for movement).”

“This is the definition of real sacrifice. Such a spirit does not develop in all and sundry. That however does not mean that people give up efforts to that effect. You possess this quality since very infancy. It is this condition that is called ‘suspension of mental tendencies. I have narrated about Si’s condition of love, with a view to making you free from the burden of gratitude for his so-called love with me.”

19th July, 1944:

Dictation (concerning DI):

“MI has no concern with welfare of children. He can, however, offer prayer, and also can write to him (DI) that he (MI) is praying for the health of that boy.”

“There is no state of well-being upto the status of Brahmin. One who strolls about in the Brahmanda Mandal (cosmic region), having no approach any further, is called Brahmin. The higher status than that of these people, belongs to Maha Brahmin, whose limit of climbing is the Para Brahmanda Mandal (para cosmic region). One going beyond that becomes free from the limitations of the so-called four castes. But the condition of well-being appears not even at this stage. Maha Brahmins hold good mastery over thought- power, and they do not remain bound to rituals anymore. (Plan came to view). In fact, both (Brahmin and Maha Brahmin) are in bondage. They cannot pull up anybody beyond their respective limits. This power belongs only to a saint, whose stage starts beyond that (para cosmic region). He (Saint) gets into touch with the air of the Real Being to a sufficient extent. (Plan came to view). The region of piety (Qudsa) also is not the place to stay on, nor is it to be considered as adequate. (Plan came to view. On minute observation, it appeared to be an initial stage. On looking ahead, there is no end).”

“I will bestow something on you before the annual function.”

Submission:

“As it may please you, my Lord. I have surrendered all that is mine to you (Persian half couplet).”

Answer: “I also recite just this: I have surrendered all that is mine to you.”

Further instruction:

“Make a note of this, so that future generations may have a lesson about the extent to which you have established consonance with me.”

21st July, 1944:

Dictation:

“What a strange idea you have formed! Your stroll of heart has already been completed. The first stage of the happy condition at the point of heart consists in the development of single-pointed orientation. The second stage is that of eternal presence (in front of the object of the orientation, viz. Purpose or Destination, i.e. God or God-realization). This is not an ordinary happiness. The third stage is its oblivion. Then (after this) stroll begins, when revelation of so many matters is started. A stage further than that is concerned with experience (rather imperience); and expression through tongue does not remain possible.”

“In the course of stroll at the (second) point of soul, all that is stated above remains in the shape of thought (subtler condition like supposition). Sentimental enthusiasm drops out. A sort of light condition is felt all around. A tendency to prefer temperance develops. Glamourizing inclination disappears. Simplicity begins to prevail. How much to narrate, as it all concerns imperience.”

“Your stroll of all sorts of happiness (at various points) has been completed; and you have attained mastery over that as well. Nothing is wanting. All these, I had perfected in my life-time itself. Only restraints had been imposed. As a result, you got more smouldering inside; and power got stuffed within; and force got generated, as its outlet was closed. Now only this much has been done that all has been included in the Real. Nothing new is done. Those who have expressed some opinions about your condition,

could not make any correct assessment, because their approach was not upto that stage.”

“Your weakness is not without reason. You have deliberately been made weak, so that on being healthy, the heat of that state may not get included with your condition. A person at your stage of development, in a healthy condition may commit strange acts beyond normal comprehension. Nature has created you weak. If you had been healthy, the condition of your thought would not have been this. For a Hatha Yogi, health is needed. (Plan came to view: It seemed that all the particles of my existence got merged in the Real (Ultimate) Being and attained to the condition of Ultimate Purity (Sadgati)). Let me first make this condition flare up. Then you will get the dream of health. Just consider, whether any healthy person can be able to perform what you are doing in such weakness. I have not yet revealed those secrets to you, through which miracles happen. You will be able to do everything through your thought-power. Just now, let me take required work from you. The Siddhis (miraculous powers), achieved through ritualistic deeds and exercises are unreliable to my understanding. Your weakness has laid the foundation of telling these matters to you. I have brought the plan to your view. All these things were present in me. I force you to walk and stroll so that you may retain smartness. Who knows how many of such notebooks will be exhausted. This is what I have to do.”

“Thus far nobody has revealed secrets and matters concerning the system. In B1, there are unharmonious contradictory elements; there being no perfection about anything. Can it ever be possible for me to tell him about you that ‘Ram Chandra has acquired a spiritual condition through being related to B1?’ I had already perfected you; and did not allow emergence of thought about granting of permission (for preceptorship) to you, so that you may not be burdened with gratitude for that. SI had spoken about permission just by the way. That is not to be treated as permission. I had undertaken responsibility for everything concerning you. S3 has been accorded permission by SI, which has not been given properly: no condition has developed in him (S3). SI may consider it as his own permission. You accorded permission to K2, which was from me; and was given correctly. (The plan of

both was brought to view for comparison). Such permissions (as accorded by S1) are of no avail. Nobody knows how permission is accorded.

I am telling you an ordinary symptom: when your consciousness automatically starts compelling you, and the thought about it comes to your mind again and again, then you take it as (Divine) impulse from Above. There is a second symptom also, that you feel restless so long as the work (assigned from Above) is not completed (by you). I find that this condition did not develop in (so-called) successors, and they have started granting permissions. In this regard, what is beneficial to others, will have to be indicated to them. Tell M1 to point out to (so-called) successors how permission is to be accorded (in the proper way). Tell him (M1) also that he should give up the habit of speaking in a blunt way, because this also makes people unhappy and hostile. Conversation should always be such as overbrimming with affection (love). Only God is devoid of defects. Fault-finding is a fault in itself; and that causes trouble to oneself (fault-finder) as well. If he (M1) had lived with me for some time, he would have started finding faults in me also. He should give up this habit. When this habit is developed, mind starts constructing faults in people all around. When one is bereft of father's shade over one's head, one has to be very careful in everything at each step, so that one's actions may not bring a bad name to (the departed) father."

22nd July, 1944:

Dictation:

"I want to keep you away from all these conflicts. I have accepted your recommendation about M1. You surrender all these conflicts to him, to deal with. Do not transfer powers. His condition of fixed pole star (Qutub or Dhruva) will start just on opening of the condition of mind, indicated by me. Tell him to reform himself now at least. This is the reward of the labour that he has been putting in for you. He (M1) is lacking in broad-mindedness, and has a glint of narrow-sightedness. A control and reform of these conditions is fore-runner (herald) of that great state (Qutub). The extent to which the thought for M1's reform is there in your mind, the thought of twice that extent has been developed in me also.

Whatever thought reverberates in your mind, is developed in me with several times the force and intensity. This is a philosophy, which does not need elaboration.”

Dictation addressed to M1:

“Thus far Ram Chandra was under obligation to you; now you have to be obliged to him. Whatever thoughts and considerations about you are developing in me now, are all due to him (Ram Chandra). The work concerning tours (to various centres etc.) will be assigned to you, even though there will be no restriction in this respect on Ram Chandra as well. You have indulged quite long in boyish games and sports. Now that period has come to an end. I have now changed the phase. Quite soon, you may be conversing with me directly. But (as stated in an Urdu couplet) ‘those who enjoy higher ranks, have to face greater difficulties. This is to be borne in mind. You have loved me, considering me your father. As such, I shall be strict with you as a father to his son. Ram Chandra has taken me as beloved; and surrendered himself entirely to me. He has not kept anything, belonging to him, with himself; and given up everything for me. He preferred poverty, and underwent difficulties, but never forsook me. So, wherefrom can I get the heart to be strict with him. I will have to bear with all his beloved ways; and you should also be fully considerate. I could not find anyone to date, who would love me as beloved. I too would give up my heart unto such one. I have not kept anything that may belong to me, as reserved to myself and away from him (Ram Chandra); and I remain anxious to give him more and yet more that may come to me or belong to me. If Ram Chandra’s nerves and veins be operated, and one who performs the operation may have eyes endowed with vision, he will find my whole power expressed in him (Ram Chandra). Now my state is such as inspite of being perfectly free, I am engrossed in thought about him. I assure you that it is difficult to have a person of this status. As people are now pining for me, and have come to know somewhat about my state after my physical veiling, that same shall occur with him (Ram Chandra). I say again that nobody has eyes capable of seeing him. He has made himself extinct to such an extent as to leave hardly any trace for expression; and he has developed this habit. This is my fault also. If I had not kept his powers and capacities closed and

unexpressed for twelve years, he would not have developed this habit, and would have got expressed and revealed at once. Now Ram Chandra's condition is such as he possesses wealth of the whole world, and yet has only the touch of thought to that innumerable wealth, without any sense of its possession. I have developed expectations from you (M1) also."

Dictation concerning M1 continued:

"One big defect persisting in him (M1) is that the fault of self-importance that he locates in others, is present most of all in him. He may not be aware of it. As such, I am telling about it. He feels about every matter that whatever he says about it, is alone correct. For a person of this status, this is fatal poison."

Dictation addressed to M1:

"I am telling again that if people did not derive benefit from Ram Chandra, it will be their great misfortune. People often thought that the representative of Lalaji Saheb will be a unique personality. Now it is here. They may see. The paternal effect presents in Ram Chandra, I do not want to eradicate. I have got it diminished. If that effect is totally withdrawn, his (Ram Chandra's) flight will get directed to the Higher World, and he will leave the physical body. This reverberation, which sometime develops in him, and which I also notice, is a paternal effect. He sometimes becomes obstinate also. It influences training as well, so that the person under his training starts an early flight. I have reduced this effect sufficiently. I consider it as a beloved demeanour. I may repeat that people treated N1 (quite wrongly) as my representative, when N1's condition at that time was not even worth the dust of Ram Chandra's feet. This I tell to make people have an estimate of the State of Ram Chandra. SI etc. are just school children starting with the preliminary alphabet, when compared to him (Ram Chandra). This is just to make people have an idea of his approach. Those who have no capacity for pulse-reading can know the patient's condition through symptoms. All of my successors should consider themselves under Ram Chandra's subordination."

Instruction about M1:

“Do not try to open that condition (Qutub) in M1, before perfecting his present condition (of spiritual journey) to the fullest extent.”

Dictation addressed to M1 continued:

“The practice adopted by Ram Chandra had such an effect on me that I was adopting the same practice for him. He did not lose remembrance of me any time for all twenty-four hours; so, I too never lost his remembrance any time for all twenty-four hours. This continued for years together. He (Ram Chandra) is very much desirous that I reveal this very practice to everybody so that everybody may derive this same benefit. I, however, like to tell him that there is no harm in telling this practice to everybody; but everybody will not be able to achieve the same result. I do not find anybody (among the herd) to come to that standard.”

Dictation (to me) continued:

“First of all make all people oriented in a single direction. M1 has loved you very much, for which I am also very much thankful. He is reaping the fruits of the same. I like others also to develop love so that they also derive the benefit. Whoever loves you to which ever extent, shall find me in love with him to that same extent. This is also a spiritual philosophy.”

“N1 played one more trick on you, which even I could not notice. That trick consisted in expanding the point, on which you were concentrating. This made you talkative rather than quiet and patient. You did well to transfer love from him to me. This was the correct punishment dealt to him by Nature. This was the first attack; and the attempt to stifle you was made at the very outset. Its effect is still there. Waywardness of thoughts was increased since that very day. He could form an estimate that if your concentration was able to force me to come, what havoc you could possibly have wrought. In fact, that was an occasion for him to be happy. This defect, I could pay attention to, only now that you (Ram Chandra) indicated it to me today. I was not conscious of it before this. I was, no doubt, wondering as to how could the thoughts of a person of your calibre and capacities be confused

(wayward). Now just turn that trick over to himself (N1). I must have praise for your memory.”

“Appoint M1 somewhere, that he may find field for work there. He should reduce consumption of chillies. There can be many ingredients beneficial to brain in vegetables. He should give up meat-eating. Permission for that can be only for you (Ram Chandra). Meat-eating creates heat in his (M1) brain, which is harmful to him. You have lack of heat; so, it may be useful to you. For him, roaming and strolling is not needed. I mean going about for prey (Shikar). For you that is needed. His point should not be opened suddenly (and in a single stroke). If SI had developed faith in you, he would also have become something. About C1 you just wait and see. If you stay for some time in the village and devote to hunting (Shikar), your health can improve. About this, there is one thing more, viz. that when you shall concentrate on the animal of prey, it will derive spiritual benefit; and this effect will go with it. Ram had done just this to Ravan. Thus, there is no defect (in hunting).”

“You were so much pleased with R2, that I had to accept your recommendation. N1 dealt great harm to you. He (N1) has perfectly spoilt R2. I am afraid that he may start adultery. He (R2) has lost many opportunities. If his present condition continues for some more time, he may be written off (as gone). You shall get many friends. Have patience. Now stop people from going to R2’s place. I do not want to create heat (sharpness) in you, for you may create havoc, all of a sudden.”

24th July, 1944:

Dictation:

“No work for God is devoid of purpose. Repugnance (at heart) is of no use. What worry concerning the work, surrendered to me! What anxiety to the person, who has surrendered himself to me!! The tide of materiality remains upto the existence of the physical body.”

Answer to a question concerning no letter being received from C1 for quite some time:

“Do not be perturbed. This is testing time. I have to see how many friends I have. Consider D1 as having been lost. If he wakes up sometime, that will be seen then.”

Submission by M1:

“There is no external manifestation of Ram Chandra's powers.”

Answer:

“In this regard he has adopted simplicity, after my example. His thought does not get oriented to materiality. I had already eliminated anger in him much earlier. Whoever is endowed with authority, his anger has to be eliminated first of all. It is not my want to build up a Durvasa Rishi (a very easily infuriable legendary sage of ancient India).”

Question by M1: “Why my anger is not eliminated?”

Answer: “That is his fancy.”

Dictation continued:

“Tell M1 not to reveal secrets of K5 anywhere. I took courage in worldly matters, and left everything on God as base. Through this method, there is no delay in completing work. That other is the way of ignorant blockheads. This quality! (Of wisdom about work) is not created in everybody.”

“People have entirely wrong notions about courage. People consider and call the incitement of mind ‘courage’. If the mind is eliminated to such an extent that one begins to feel depression in oneself, then this prayer or courage is endowed with the function of a command or order. You would have noticed that somebody suffers great harm at the hands of somebody else, and having no courage or heart to take revenge, feels perfectly poor and helpless and sits quietly in the state of helplessness. With such condition of depression, whatever thought takes hold of such a helpless person’s mind, is bound to take shape in concrete reality. In case of courage (of ordinary conception) there remains the flavour of equality of status and position, which is opposed to humility of serving and belonging to Him. As soon as excitation boils up in the mind, self-importance gets involved. But you should never be

oriented to harm or malign anybody. For common people, I am giving one more technique. They should refrain from involving the mind. For them this itself is courage. I mean they should give up the idea of affirmation or denial. This subject is not for everybody's understanding as well; and nobody will like it: This is to say, in general. There are different methods for different purposes. The method of calculated control of carnality (Muhasiba-i-Nafsa) is from my practice: Wherefrom thoughts may be rising up, that is to be merged in oneself. Oneself means one's soul.

Whenever thoughts may rise up, their base be got merged (in oneself). The result of this will be so fine that people will feel astonished. The method, in general, is to take oneself as Master, and merge into That. One who does not have faith in Master, cannot derive benefit from this method.”

Submission:

“N1 had told somebody that ‘calculated control of carnality’ consists in supposing (or imagining) a furnace on the left side of the heart, and going on throwing in it whatever thoughts may be rising up.”

Dictation continued:

“N1 remained telling his own peculiar constructions about it. The principle here is comparable to a tub-bath. There the heat of body is drawn out. Herein also the heat is reduced. Cleaning and bathing is all meant to achieve that end. I have not yet brought you to that condition because I have to take some work from you. Your nature has attained to the sleeping state; I had, therefore, used the word ‘inactive (or dull)’. You are going on continually quietening what God has bestowed upon you. I do not like to allow any more than the condition which has now been arrived at. Just on account of this, I had to make haste; otherwise, I would have taken more time. You have carried on this practice for twelve years without being conscious of it. This certainly resulted in illumination of all the particles; but any further development of this condition will bring about destruction of my whole purpose.”

Query: “Which purpose would be brought to destruction?”

Answer: “God does no work. If you quieten your particles more, the same state will prevail; and this state for you, I want after your death, even though your death has already occurred, and only your manifest physical body is still present in the material world. This instance has no parallel. Remember, you should not induce this state in anybody. This is not a human condition. Such a state is not introduced even in successors and representatives. This state is its own example. But it is of no use to me. Can anybody claim to develop this state by oneself? This is only your example; worth being written in gold-water. Those who will comprehend it after you, will feel astonished. I have to say again: ‘THIS REFINED CHARACTER IS NOT ATTAINABLE BY FORCE OF ARMS’ (A half couplet in Persian). Note down again that if this condition has got increased (Plan comes to view), this state will follow (in its trail). Imitation, no doubt, would have brought about this ripeness, but you structured it so real that you went ahead of that imitation. I, no doubt, was residing in that state; but one thing, developed by you, was not in me. I used to be in that state, to the extent of the need; you have gone beyond that. To comprehend it, only such intelligence is needed. I think, only God can know this state. I do not like to say more beyond this. The stage that I have bestowed on you, the environment for that you had already established by yourself. That is the reason why the advancement you have achieved during this period (of three months), was difficult to attain in years together. I now have to say to you only that you have brought your progress to culmination; and even there you are not at rest. Every moment the steps are going ahead and ahead. But, alas, nobody is there yet to comprehend it. Your example will be the subject of a proverb for those who will comprehend it. Now, blessings, and farewell (for the time being).”

25th July, 1944:

Dictation:

“Yesterday I have told you about your condition, and have restrained you from a certain practice. You can do that during the last year of your physical existence on earth. The paternal effect is to be eliminated just close to the end. This state is beyond anybody’s thought and comprehension. (An estimate was made available).”

“What M1 had said yesterday about meditation on the form of the Master (Shaghal Rabta) will be useful for everybody. In that regard your method is the standard one.”

“The symptoms for the destruction of a (particular) group of people have developed. They have framed such tendencies as are taking them downwards. The other (particular) group is far better than these. Your third or fourth generation will be assigned just this work; but he will not be able to complete the work in his lifetime. Thereafter a Special Personality shall emerge and complete this work. Materialism will increase.”

“Your family had never brought out a saint. You have opened the way. This is Nature’s game to eke out rubies from the clutch. (The Special Personality to come in future came to vision-bluish complexion, no beard or moustache, healthy, stomach slightly bulging, short stature, dry-natured, no courtesies, preference for coarseness, having nothing to do with anything except bloodshed).”

Dictation continued:

“When Nature had created the universe, It had made all arrangements from beginning to end. It had not left out anything to cause interference next or in-between. I have now done exactly the same. I certainly have apprehensions with respect to one person in the future chain of this generation (of this system). You estimate that this apprehension with respect to one person refers to the 15th or 16th generation. At that time very special efforts will be needed to advance the system. My last representation will end at annihilation (Pralaya). (The plan came to view). Since I do not have a body, I cannot give as much benefit as you can. No doubt, however, benefit can be derived directly from me after having achieved the ultimate of progress.”

26th July, 1944:

Dictation:

“By ultimate progress, I mean the example of progress, set by you. So long as one does not come to be merged in me through progress, there can be no hope for deriving benefit. It is mercy on my part to give benefit to some extent, but not the aspirant’s

capability. There arises helplessness, but not here. This is not to be told to everybody. This is for the so-called big ones, who are getting deceived. By being attentive, one will reach wherefrom direct guidance from me starts being available. I am touring everywhere; everyone reaps benefit according to what one deserves. The deserving one has to be simple and well-behaved. But this will not enable him to be fit for our spiritual training (Brahma Vidya) which is of a very high standard.

The (really) deserving person possesses an inner condition, which you have rightly expressed by the word 'Wasa-at' (expanse). Everybody brings one's own capability with him/her. 'Wasa-at' is of several grades. I had narrated to you 'Wasa-at' of high grade. To the extent to which that quality is lacking, there will be lack of benefit from spiritual training. If this quality, viz. 'Wasa-at', is not totally absent, then some progress, however little, is bound to be there. This is my experience. I have given you the main points; and will remain telling you more, as and when required by situations and occasions. You may also ask me when something comes to your comprehension, and you feel the need to seek clarification from me. Appropriate labour can alter the impression or settled tendency (Samskara). (As the proverb goes,) fire can be created even in sandalwood."

Question by M1: "What is the method of altering impressions and Samskaras)?"

Answer: "The technique of high order is to suppose the impressions to be mine; but such a thought can hardly arise in one who is not a person, of best impressions or settled tendencies (Samskaras)."

Dictation continued:

"It is only for your part to bring any state to bloom and expression in a twinkling of the eye. This could not develop in anybody else. There is need to keep precaution into view in this regard: in case of a need for demonstration of some spiritual state, even at an occasion for test, bring it down once again in its real condition to yourself, without the need of establishing it."

Clarification in response to a query:

“Others were not deserving for it. You were endowed naturally with capacity for it, which I developed. It is not proper to reveal these states to uneducated dullards.”

“Slaves (animals) to Vedic knowledge (Veda-Pashus in Kabir’s terminology) also fall under the category of uneducated dullards. A slave devoted to Master (Guru-Pashu) is one, whose guide is not capable, viz. unable to impart spiritual education (Brahma Vidya) properly, but is still structured as God by this disciple. The slave to mind (passion) is called ‘Triya-Pashu’, whose obvious examples can be figured out, without the need of being quoted or mentioned. The slave to human condition (Nara-Pashu) is one in whom egoism in gross form is still there. There are another kind of slavish beings, who do not like to give up their spiritual condition, which happens to be blissful to them. The number and kinds of such slavish beings are even beyond this.”

Question: “Is there an end to slavishness (animality) as well?”

Answer: “Animality ends on reaching your present state. This does not mean reference to your state of representative-ship. This state is not on account of your being my successor.

No doubt these are the signs which are found in successors, but not everywhere. You have eliminated whatever filth and dirt was there in your thoughts. Now the pure condition has remained. By filth and dirt, I mean whatever was causing heaviness on thought is now rooted out, leaving an unadulterated state prevailing, which is cleaned of animality. This example I have given to enable you to weigh others against it. These conditions develop in persons other than successors and representatives also. M1 is such an example. His inner condition is such; but the external condition has not been cared for.”

Dictation continued:

“The annual function (Bhandara) remains only one. If your purpose gets fulfilled there, no need will arise here. In that case Bhandara here will start after your passing away. People at K. tried much to uproot Bhandara (from Fatehgarh); but as this was against my will, they could not succeed. If after passing away of N1, people start Bhandara to commemorate him, there will be a

shower of darkness only therein. Brilliance, you have already withdrawn. Not one of those attached to him (N1) shall progress. The warmth of their own thought may bring convictions to them according to their liking, whatever.”

“The intoxication of G2 has come off. Now since his purpose goes waste, he wants to be oriented to M1. Such people can be illustrated by the example of bats, which is correct also in so far as he knows nothing more than hanging on. When darkness starts, then he comes to his senses. Tell M1 not to be attentive to him. He is not a good person He does not have faith in anybody. He meets N1 also for selfish ends, but N1 has no discrimination, in his aspiration for collecting a wild crowd around him. Remember, not to give place to such persons in your circle, unless they have sworn repentance, and break off their connection of heart from N1. There is no connection from above with anybody (except you). ‘When the Master himself is downcast, whom can he give beneficence!’ They have started to be filled up with darkness. M1 should now give up the intention of visiting E... There is no harm in going to B...”

“I withdraw all that I have said (thus far) about C1. No need of writing anything to him, now. You will now need setting up your separate association. All are helpful only in enhancing my worries. Nobody (except you) has the guts to share my burden. If C1 continues in such a condition, he will have to be totally vacated. All birds will fly away; and their very life will stand imperilled. My step, whatever, now will be very serious. Matters are undergoing change day by day. They have put me also into trouble. Irritation is developing in me. I will have now to adopt my destructive form (Kala Rupa). Toleration has reached the breaking point. Now my merciful form (Dayala Rupa) will be only for you and those connected to you.”

“The comprehension of C1 is just a pity. It was good that you did not stuff him with power, as you had intended. The word ‘moth’ is an insult to me. What M1 was writing was my own order. If he (M1) turns his comprehending vision to it, he will find the whole matter to be dictated by me. There is no need to send any reply to this letter; he (C1) may comprehend whatever he may like. I find only M1 as the person to my liking; all others are turning to seem just feminine. The degraded condition, which has come to my

society, would not have occurred anywhere else. I just wrench within. If matters continue like this, I will issue orders to you for total destruction. I have given up courtesy and gentleness this moment.

I shall be oriented to my Master, and His orders will be put to effect from now on, At E..., you were called a fool! I should have structured my successor before giving permission to them (to impart training). I now realize that mistake. I am withdrawing all permissions given by me; only M1 is an exception to this. So long as you will not return these permissions, nobody will be able to impart training. If somebody continues to impart training, that will mean, he is deceiving others. If he will still go on persisting, the result will be just reprehensible in the end. Remember, all of these arrangements by me are with a view to learning lessons by you, so that you do not repeat such mistakes. First fix your successor, then give permissions to impart training. Permission is not something necessary to "be given. Since I had to put my Master's orders to effect, I made a little haste in this regard. For you, putting my orders to effect is duty. Now, in case of those persons to whom I have, allowed you to give permission, you must ask me (as reconfirmation) before giving permission to them. It is better to have no disciples, than to have incapable disciples. I feel that you were right in thinking that not more than four to five persons be initiated: in fact there is no harm in keeping the number even less. Among persons initiated by M1, one person has proved to be degenerate. No need of increasing the number. If some really capable one is found, there is also no need to refuse. For him (R5, initiated by M1) the only way remains that M1 may pray to God for him. He (M1) cannot himself now leave him aside, because he has been initiated on my hand. What a fruit of my labour, that I have to see this day! I went away rather well, putting you into the mire of so much trouble!!"

Submission: "My Lord may give all His worries to me. I will bear them all, no matter if I lose my life."

Answer: "Since you have turned my worries to yourself, I grant you the right, that whatever you will do, will be acceptable to me. If you totally destroy somebody's foundations, I will not ask for any explanation. I now have left everything to you."

27th July, 1944:

Dictation:

“Now, when you may permit them, only then their work will proceed on. I have withdrawn permission (granted to them). Do not break their connections. M5 has become a worldly person, having lost touch with spirituality. S5 is a better person, but is very gross. FI has thoughts connected to Master, but there is upsetting in temperament. H2 is gross and useless. B7 is of uncouth temperament. There is no need to stimulate him any further. He is static, making no progress. S3 is absorbed with the intoxication of his employment. He just performs his duty, having no real attachment to me. He also is not capable of receiving higher training. M 5 is a better person. He is capable of making progress. I have attachment to him. He is, however, involved in the web of C1. The reason is only self-regard. He is fond of leadership. If he develops faith in you, he is one of those who may be capable of making good progress. He has stepped in the sphere of Brahmanda (Kubra), but he is not getting good help. There is need of cleaning. (Plan came to view). S6 is a good person with an humble temperament of a poor person, even though he does possess a little wring (of some sort of pride). A slave of N1, he also is not included among those capable of high progress. S7 is better, and can go ahead. If he comes to believe that some Personality has come to existence, he will be drawn to that Personality; but this cannot be expected of S6. B8 has the flavour of beauty in himself.”

Further revelation:

“My Master also dictated to me just like this; but I was used to writing something, and forgetting something, because I had nobody to take notes (of those dictations). You have found one. He (my Master) had given notes of some special matters concerning spiritual training. Since He had given me all that, after His mergence with the Ultimate, His experience is also being passed on to you. Now since there is so much upsetting in your ranks, you have to scribble pages after pages. Moreover, you have also attracted me quite a lot; and hence everything has to be cared for. It appears to me that whatever worldly losses you had to suffer, has all occurred due to me. You had no time, free from attention

to me, to devote to other affairs; and even now your condition remains the same. Now, shall I take care of you or look to your home-affairs! Everything has to be done for love! My Revered Master had also given me some instructions in this regard; and hence I have to comply to His commands as well. You will never have troubles in the world. Prosperity will never forsake you. This is my blessing. It seemed to me that what you have done to me, I could not give its return to you. If you had asked me something in return, I would have become lighter of that burden; and only spiritual training would have remained (as my responsibility). You should not make anybody like yourself, so as to keep yourself worried throughout the period of that somebody's entire life-time. You did not ask me even for love, which people are seeking after. This is a feature in your life and career, which shall have no example anywhere. Those who ask for love, mostly mean, indirectly, that I love them. You never entertained a desire for this as well. To me it seems that asking Master for love is height of disrespect."

"The result of all this was that I had got merged in you with all my powers. Only one (stage of) progress (highest state) had been kept back, which I have now brought to bloom. People might comprehend what they may. The worth of this writing shall be gauged afterwards."

The last two sentences were in response to my humble submission that people on reading all this shall think that I (Ram Chandra) have indulged in praise for myself.

Dictation continued:

"Even now you are continuing to draw me (to you). If I had not been free, who knows how great longing would have been caused to me. This absorption (meditational practice) I neither like to take away from you, for that shall cause a shock to you. No doubt sometime I make you forgetful through talking. Will it be possible to find such an example in future. I do not expect it. My Revered Master has showered much praise on me for my marvelous creation. Alas, people shall pine for seeing such a personality (as yours). It will not be possible to appreciate you to

the extent that you deserve. Only I know your state in the real way, and sometimes I give an indication of it to you also. If you like to have an estimate of your state, it can be in this way, that whatever very great saints and perfect beings may say about your state on the basis of their experience, will be in praise of only the lowest stage of your real state.

That is the reason why you are made the Supreme Master of the whole universe. Whatever will occur shall happen through you only, and light shall come to you (in every way) first of all. But this is not the end. I consider it the beginning of the consequence of your love, the final end is yet far off. Your governance shall extend to still further spheres. I give only this much indication.

“You are not able to perform worldly work properly, and people get an opportunity of hurling critical words at you. The reason of this is that you have made those tissues dead, which are used in performance of worldly work. If I had not made haste, you would have lost the basic reality as well of those (tissues). Now I have put a brake to it. I do not want more than this. I have permitted you, on your request, to do this practice one year prior to your physical passing away. This is only to give a rest to your heart’s longing. In fact there is no need for that. You had got your purpose fulfilled in my life-time itself. There will be no return for you (in this world). What more to dictate! My heart longs to blurt out all that I know in praise of you!! I will dictate this subject to you later, when I would have created the state to my heart’s content. The foundation for that has been laid, only a few days back.”

“The feeling of repugnance in your mind (some time back) was not devoid of a causal factor. The condition of N1 now is that of a contracted snake. He cannot do any harm to you now, nor could he do it earlier. Now he has lost power to harm anybody else as well. This is in reply to the thoughts of M1. He (M1) was getting instructions, but he has no comprehension as yet. When the thoughts will reach the state of stillness, comprehension will get started. This medicine (prescription was given) shall definitely benefit him (M1). If I myself remain telling things to everybody, how shall your stature and elderliness be established over others! The instrument of Master has to be only one!! You should develop your

habit of descending down to the lowest level. Otherwise, a person of this state (i.e. yours) cannot generally impart training. This will be achieved through practice only.”

While I was discussing with M1 that the Beautiful (Jamal) and Sublime (awe-inspiring Jalal) had coalesced in Grand Master, the dictation in clarification to query continued: “What I mean is not to regress from one’s state. There has been enough of progress and regress. What I mean is that you be autonomous: wherever need may arise, you establish yourself just there. This example of mine will also hardly be available to you anywhere; I took the enemy as friend. This is the condition of a Prophet.”

“I had whetted you yesterday (to behave in a sharp aggressive way). There was need for that. Don’t be tyrannical. You have to do anything to set things right. A mother has to get even a surgical knife-cut administered to her child, when needed. You do not need to imitate all of this. Moreover, I did not reduce your obstinate irritability for some other reason. If it is completely eliminated, there may be a possibility of physical dissolution, and if it is reduced below what it is at present, then you will become ineffective. I have to take some work from you, which requires presence of this quality of temperament. It is not retained without use and purpose. I have given you quite a unique training. You possess both forms - destructive (Kala Rupa) and compassionate (Dayala Rupa). Both of these are devoid of sharpness. Both these are Godly forms; and there is no Satanic element in them. Now I define these. The compassionate aspect is love from top to toe; while the destructive aspect is opposite to that. Lord Krishna possessed this characteristic. This training you shall not find anywhere. Neither does anybody know the method of this training. It is very difficult to have both side by side. It was a special Gift to me from Revered Master. My destructive form was not seen by anybody. I had not given brightness to it. It was a treasure, lying concealed in me. I have transferred it to you. Nobody else is capable of receiving this training. This is special training, which is not available to everybody. There is neither a trainer nor a trainee of this technique. Both powers are contradictory; so, its training is difficult. I have not yet told you the method of imparting this training. There is no use either in telling the method to you, since

there is nobody to learn what I have taught you. How can anybody learn it! You too will have to transfer it. For this training the characteristic that is needed is that you and I are penetrated entirely into every nerve and fibre of each other, so that it will not be wrong to describe us as one life pulsating in two bodies. This feature will not be found anywhere. The Master has no positive or negative attachment to anybody; it is the disciple's ability to make the Master one's own. This is God's characteristic as well; the shower (of God's Grace) is the same everywhere."

Submission by MI:

"Everybody had the thought that Revered Master (Lalaji Saheb) loved one best of all the rest."

Answer: "I did not deceive anybody, but people earned deception from me. If my external countenance had not been what it was, nobody would have respected me. My state was also like yours (Ram Chandra). The difference was that of experience. Secondly, everybody had direct relation with me. I repeat that nobody received (proper) training from me. If intense desire to impart training and spread Brahma Vidya (Science of the Ultimate) had not been there in me, I would not have been worried and perplexed to such an extent, because I was free (liberated)."

Dictation continued:

"N1 is being treated as God by people. He (NI) has assumed the form of Satan during life itself. You are again and again dwelling on the thought as to how the abovementioned training is imparted. I have nothing to conceal from you. Let the time come, so that you may be able to grasp it properly. Transferring you can do even now. If you like, you will get the right to do it, but there is no need to do that. This training is very difficult. Once Revered Master had cast light on it. His Holiness possessed both capabilities in perfect form. You people certainly suffered harm due to my courteous generosity. I have attempted to remove all these forces (Causing helplessness to me). There is opportunity for people even now. I have not gone anywhere; no doubt I have forsaken the earthly (physical) body. Now, if people be duly considerate, they will not have an occasion for complaint even in this regard. There is no harm in change of form: I have only

changed my form. The same state is still there; only the orientation of people to it is needed. Anybody may observe through experience; there will be no scarcity concerning Grace. Your state of Parshad (Ghous) has commenced. What I am telling must be noted down.”

28th July, 1944: About 12.45 P.M.;

There was some talk between me and R2, all of which I told to M1. I had gone to the place of R2 from the place of Doctor Sahib (my physician). At the physician's house, I submitted to Revered Master that according to His inward intention, M1 may be raised to the status of Dhruva (Qutub) without any more delay. Revered Master replied that there was no need to hurry in this regard. This talk I also mentioned to respected M1. During these talks with M1, I told that Revered Master's inward intention was to raise him (M1) to the state of Qutub. But what I meant by 'doing it without any more delay', was that the thought of obtaining acceptance may take root (in Master). As such, while referring to Master's inward intention, as expressed, I said without asking for confirmation, that acceptance had been obtained. Revered Master was taken by surprise, and exclaimed: "What have you said here! He has now really got raised up to the status of Qutub!!" Then He instructed further that there was need to be cautious in future. The condition immediately engulfed him (M1), and he had a glimpse of the sphere of his work, which was endless. Revered Master assigned the duty concerning work as well, and said: "This is the fruit of his good intentions."

At 1.50 P.M.:

I was reclining after the meal. Instructions were received: "Revered Grand Master is arriving. Be alert and sit regardfully, wearing an Indian shirt and cap. Just after that Revered Grand Master arrived and confirmed the status of Qutub granted to M1. Then He turned to me, transmitted, gave blessings and departed. The purpose of the visit was evaluation of the work.

Dictation from Revered Master:

"Your status has been further enhanced; and I (Revered Lalaji Saheb) have also received praise. This way opens on reaching the status of Parshad (Ghous)." (The plan was revealed, which

brought to view a sphere of the Ultimate (Zaat), in which Revered Master was present). He said: "I have brought this to your view, so that, on physical dissolution, you arrive there straight."

The dictation continued:

"My Revered Master has recommended the status of Maha Parshad (Ghous- ul-Aazam). I intend to take you even higher than that. I do not feel satiation any time. All the time I keenly desire to take you higher and still higher up. When your name will come up in the genealogical tree, you will be aligned to the status of Maha Parshad. Beyond that there are no status-stages, which end here. Now, Reality loses its veil. I want you to be aligned to the name of this highest status-stage, viz. Ghous-ul-Aazam, just because there will be no name of the condition that will emerge still beyond. I am happy that the credit of this attainment has remained in my hands alone.

Now there is not much delay in arriving at that status. Revered Master has already laid the foundation today. One thing more I have to tell you: do not transmit to anybody from the status of Maha Parshad. The extent to which your condition has progressed, is beyond the reach of peoples' comprehension. One who may know It has never been born. This status may be somebody's fortune about one thousand years after you. Many elders, who earlier reached this status, could not advance beyond that, with the exception of the personality of Hazrat Mujaddid Alif Sani (the innovator of the spiritual system, one thousand years after the advent of the Mohammedan era). My heart is all the time emitting blessings for your progress. Not a moment goes without your remembrance for me. But it grieves me to think that you may hardly find somebody to learn from you to the extent of advancement granted to you by me. (As the Persian poet has said), 'this stature of excellence is not attainable by force of arms, if the Omnipotent Bestower God does not bestow it (on somebody).' People and great saints who may happen to get the awareness of your state, will be attracted to you like moths. I do not refer here to the condition that has been bestowed on you. There is nobody to understand It. The happiness caused to my Revered Master on seeing you, is known to Him alone; and I am proud of it."

“I used to behave very indifferently to you in the presence of other people. The reason was that I did not like to reveal you to them. I was all the time apprehensive of being deprived of this precious gem. If people had come to know your potentialities, there would have been attempts to administer poison to you. (In spite of my precautions) thoughts to this effect remained reverberating, even though they could not do any harm to you. I did not let anybody suspect of my love for you. Even my son had no inkling about it. Is anybody capable of it? People are dreaming of the capability for representative ship. No Tom or Dick can be my representative. They may only think whether anyone of them possesses my Special Characteristics, my State, my Condition, my Love. (If they turn their thoughts thus), they will come to know (the reality in this regard). If somebody observes attentively, he/she will mark the similarity of your demeanour and behaviour with mine. People’s vision has not yet acquired that dimension. B1 has confined himself to a narrow sphere. Even though his condition is good, (and if it has got defiled, that is of his own doing), yet there is no comparison to yours. He (B1) has not even got any touch of the air of this condition (that is yours). Your condition, as I have already said, is changing moment by moment. This is the state of a Prophet (pointing to me).”

29th July, 1944:

Dictation from Revered Master:

“You have advanced beyond the sphere of piety (Qudsa). Now you are proceeding ahead of that. I want that your mind does not get disturbed at this time, and you remain peaceful. Thereafter I shall pay attention to your health. I am making haste.”

Submission: “I surrender absolutely to Thy Will!”

Rejoinder: “Say, ‘I surrender absolutely to My Will!’ I have shown you, my point. You have to come to It. You will not need any effort (to reach It) after (your) physical dissolution: only energy will get attracted. You will already be there, where you would have to reach. Your death has already occurred. Only the outward shape remains in this world. Expect the emergence of the state of Maha Parshad (Ghous-ul-Aazam) very soon. This state, that I have shown you, is higher even to that (Maha Parshad). All running after

comes to an end Here. Only expansion in the Ultimate Being remains. I shall tell about That later. Just now, let me complete the work-in-hand. That condition has started emanating into your thought. The way has been cleared. Now do not call yourself a beginner.”

Question by M1: “Are Parshad and Maha Parshad etc. stages of authority? Is spirituality an essential pre- requisite for those stages?”

Reply: “Neither are these stages of spirituality, nor does authority go side by side with them. Convey the tidings to M1 that he has been accepted. His condition will enhance further. He should not lose hope. Beyond Dhruva comes the stage of Dhruvadhpati. There is no life for more than that. I want to take SI ahead, but he does not progress.”

Submission: “Whatever you order me, will be carried out immediately.”

Reply: “First he should repent for his mistake. You will have to use your special power for them (SI and CI). They have got spoilt. They are under the intoxication of self- importance. CI is aware that he is not making progress; even then he does not give up self-importance. My permission is now ineffective, unless you give permission. I have finished permissions. All these matters are for being told to them. Give up consideration for S2. During the annual function (Bhandara) do not allow (your) people to sit with anybody at other places. Pull them towards yourself through your power. So far as possible, give time to everybody separately. The condition is too much spoilt. Some work may be assigned to M1. Nobody seems to come up from amongst my progeny: they consider it a matter of play. Remain serious. The jokes of N1 have spoilt the hearts of people even more. You do not allow people to indulge in jokes. Where such an occasion (for jokes) may arise, you may yourself go and sit there (to maintain a serene atmosphere).”

31st July, 1944:

Dictation from Revered Master:

“Are you considering yourself as an ordinary personality! Emergence of even a little thought is to work havoc!! The incident

concerning the train is worth noting down, so that you may learn the lesson, and those coming behind you may also know, that thought comes to acquire such tremendous force!!! I am dictating the details of the incident. When you were relaxing under the tin shed, the train was going, producing its peculiar noise. Noticing the fast speed of the train, your courage also boiled up. This is your habit. You should give it up. For one or two seconds, you entertained the thought of thrashing it down. Then there was no will to get it done. This resulted in the derailment of the train. If you had retained the thought a little more with courage, the train would have suffered a terrible fall (out of the track). This is a precaution for your followers and successors in future. If human nature may turn towards something bad, immediately bring thought for the good to mind, in order to restore the balance. This precaution is for M1 also. You remain praying for the welfare of all those who are connected to you, so that, in case some evil thought about them arises, the earlier thought (about their welfare) may remain superior to it. Prayer has to come from the heart. His (M1) sensitivity has awakened; now he should not let it go. During the annual function, if need for harbouring some thought arises, do not give force to it. Otherwise, their hearts will get shattered. Your stage of Ghous (Parshad) is coming to its end. You have already stepped in the state of Ghous-ul-Aazam (Maha Parshad). Have expectation for beyond that as well. I will not detain you at the state (of Maha Parshad) for long; and then you and I will be together. Then this sharpness will come to its end. Before the annual function, you will be at my condition, which has a force that is still more than that in the present condition.”

Dictation continued:

“I have stirred up all of your conditions at once. What am I to do, when I do not find rest. Even now I am restless.

You are in love with me; and I am in love with you. Neither you leave me, nor I leave you. I, however, shall rid myself by bringing you to my state, because there is end of love beyond that. To rid myself means that I would have completed my work. But so far as living with you is concerned, I have promised to be with you for the whole of your life. You are very fortunate. The innovator of spirituality after one thousand years after Mohammed came to see

you. He perused my work, and went away very happy. He has blessed you also. Your condition has changed. He also could not resist giving something to you. This was the relationship of the innovator Saint which has got transmitted to you. You have designated me as second innovator; I designate you as the same. My heart desires to call you exactly as you prefer to call me. There is nothing more to say beyond this. You just observe your state. It is not proper to say more, in view of due regard. The innovator has merged into you. I have to say only that he (the innovator) has stepped up in the process even beyond that. That time is also soon approaching. That relationship is that of Mohammed. If I had not been perfectly liberated, I would have started dancing out of this great joy. There have been so many saints, but his state has not been available to anybody.”

Revered Master passed his hand over my back and blessed me: “Be happy. You have enlivened my name.”

The dictation continued:

“All these preparations are for taking you ahead. The flight has become easy. Now I am devoting to my work. Some destruction and construction remain. You remain free. I do not feel courage enough to take work from you.”

Revered Master revealed:

“N1 had closed that point of M1, under the power of which, mind functions. Beyond that N1 had no approach. Now it is unlocked. About your point being open, he (N1) did not even have an inkling, as I had retained a light kind of veil. That was the reason, why N1 could not have the knowledge. Beyond that there was no possibility for the reach of his thought. Just see my cleverness in performance! Otherwise, he (N1) would have gone out of control!!”

Revered Master continued in answer to a query by M1:

“What use is there for power in old age! I have now passed on this work to a better person, who is free from heat and cold. No doubt, rhymelessness surfaces on some occasions. I take care to stop it.”

Some instructions directed to M1 followed:

“This is your (M1) influence also. In future, take care not to incite him (Ram Chandra) in any matter. There is need to keep this in mind. If this demeanour is continued by you, I will bring him to my state. You too have become out of hand for me; so I have to take care. But I think, you shall respect (and value) my words. I have kept nothing secret. I am telling everything with an open heart. You M (1) may do something better by yourself, when it sometimes occurs to your mind. You need not refer that to him (Ram Chandra), who will never shirk your words to him; and that will cause harm to my purpose. I have structured him in accordance with my scheme, which will suffer a hinderance, otherwise.”

The instruction to M1 continued:

“He (M1) should take care, in this regard, during the annual function also. He (M1) should not become sharp. He (M1) should not issue any instructions to Ram Chandra during the annual function. He (Ram Chandra) will do exactly in accordance with my will and purpose. M1 can structure his disciples to the tune of his heart’s desire; but he has no right to structure my disciples like that. For them, I will do what I consider to be right. I will render work through Ram Chandra, who has to take care that a fiery spirit may not develop in the disciples of M1. I think, it will not be proper to involve M8 in this annual function.”

M1 admitted that he intended to take M8 with him to the annual function.

Dictation continued:

“He (M1) should just remain listening (and observing); and continue using (power of) thought, without the need of quarrelling and fighting. It is necessary for M1 to act on these instructions; for otherwise there will be cause for my displeasure. I feel, it will be most befitting if M1 continues to create this condition there. (Revered Master revealed the plan of the required condition, in which peace was raining). The thoughts of people can also be suspended. He (M1) should take care about eating and drinking.

During the annual function, there will be pressure on his brain. You (Ram Chandra) assign that particular work just to him. You (Ram Chandra) should get down on the heart during the annual function, so that there is no pressure on your brain and work will be going on. You can move up, whenever needed. The state of intoxication should never be given up. I will be present there with my full force. Only exercise of thought (and remembrance) will be needed (for my presence and action). The condition of Ultimate Reality will be raining.”

On enquiry by M1, about reverential conduct at the annual function (or such other congregations), the instructions came: “(1) There should be mutual respect among all persons; (2) There should be no question of more or less during the function; (3) All should consider everyone as progeny of the same parents; (4) Nothing should occur that may be distasteful to one another; (5) Unbecoming conduct is to be desisted from; (6) Mind should be oriented to a single direction; (7) There should be no liking for discussion - only necessary matters may be enquired into; (8) The purpose of the annual function is to refresh the memory of whom it commemorates; (9) There should be no consideration of who is whose master (guide) or disciple-the shower (of Grace) is to be one and the same.”

On further enquiry, the dictation continued: “B1 is not someone alien to us. The only thing (to be taken care of) is that people are getting attached to him, and orientation to me has dwindled. To correct this will be your job. When he comes to know that someone else has more power as compared to him, he will get automatically attracted. It is not proper to create non-enjoyment. M3 is a duffer. Nobody is likely to go to him. One or two persons, who are afraid of him, may possibly go. Many people sit with him also to make fun of him; and several others sit with him with regard to his being the son of N1, who may be pleased at this gesture. Nobody goes to him to obtain transmission (Grace). Much of all this will get altered. You will have no difficulties.”

1st August, 1944:

Dictation:

“Tell Ml that he has done enough swimming. The point has got opened and refinement is increasing. Now, there seems no need of transmission. Give him work; now this alone is worship (meditation) for him, which he has performed enough. He should try also to lead brethren to the right path. He has to spread the thought-current all around. One thing remains. You complete it (duly) - (reference to opening of the heart). I sometimes include a visit to him in my tour-programme. Just now I am present with him. I liked to get this work done by you (reference to the work of giving the status of fixed pole star (Qutub) to Ml). I do not have limbs. This condition, you should bestow, in case of others, after much thought and consideration. You have a lot of affectional force in you. It was in much quantity in me also, but I was very particular about the observance of rules and principles. You remain oblivious of these out of affection, which has penetrated fully in every element in you, and which I have not been able to regulate as yet. It is not a joke to acquire the status of fixed pole star. Neither does anybody give such training, nor is this capability found in everybody. So long as special powers are not there, awakening of the light in the heart cannot be possible. Earlier you had tried for this, but you were not able to perfect it.”

“The work of I. is assigned to Ml. He should work in accordance with the light given to him. He was so fond about work. Now I shall make him do plenty of work.”

“Your condition of Maha Parshad (Ghous-ul-Aazam) has started. The stage of Parshad (Ghous) has been crossed over. The Ghous-person, I had shown you, should be kept contact with, so that you may issue orders directly to him. I shall issue orders to you. I like to continue this state for some time, so that your supremacy be established amongst the sages. I shall take you even ahead of this state. Occasionally you will be able to return to this condition of Maha Parshad; and this will be dependent on your own choice, because the worldly affair’s will not be possible to be dealt with, except through this condition. This is my love, that I am drawing you up to that side. Otherwise, this status can be arrived at after leaving the physical body. I want to give everything to you during life itself. Every sage cannot do this. This is my special invention. There is no limit even beyond this state. I had

done a lot of swimming in this point during my lifetime. I have been praised a lot amongst the sages due to this invention. I too was returning at will to the status of Ghous-ul-Aazam. For me also, returning to this point was dependent on my own choice. No sage could go beyond this point. I make an exception in the case of the second innovator one thousand years after Hazrat Mohammed. If you so intensely desire, I will not prevent you. You can use the title Maha Parshad after my name in the genealogical tree. People will wonder as to how two persons are coming almost together, viz. I, and after that, you. 'The kingdom of God is not too narrow; and my leg is not suffering lameness' (Persian saying)."

Instruction about training during dreaming:

"The subtle body is sent with the idea that the person concerned may develop thoughts, according to your intent and purpose. The method for that consists in sending the subtle body containing the elements which weave the content of the dream. Transmission is given from behind that. The same pictures get projected on the screen like in a cinema. But all of these depend on courage and will. Everybody cannot perform these. So long as courage and will is not there, devices will not work. Devices are meant only to hasten the effect; and these are helpful to achieve the purpose."

Method of training revealed by Revered Master:

"When spiritual training of * somebody is started, first of all the point of heart is to be taken up. He is kept there for a sufficiently long time; preferably he should not be pushed ahead, so long as he does not come up on his own, to cross that point with the help of his guide. This makes his base stable, and the apprehension of a fall is overcome. That way, he comes to enjoy the glimmer and dazzle of divine effulgence, which grows dim on going further, so much so that only an impression remains, and this also is finally gone. By so doing, i.e. by keeping him long at the point of heart, he is made to enjoy a lot, so that the tendency of mind for truancy gets overcome."

In reply to enquiry concerning how to know about it, Revered Master's dictation continued: "When the aspirant may start to come up in a condition, subtler than the earlier one, then it should

be taken to be an indication for opening the next point. This (heart) is not an ordinary point, as you have comprehended it. Many very big saints could not cross it; and a perfect stroll over it comes to be the fortune in quite rare cases. In our fold, these points were opened by way of shadowy reflexion, but the capability for stroll was not found there in anybody. So long as stroll has not been undertaken, perfect mastery is not acquired. It is this that requires the longest period. The state of Dhruva or fixed pole star is close to it. Now you may estimate how great this point happens to be. When I tell all this to you, I make an exception of your case.”

“The other points in the lower region of organic existence do not possess that vast expanse, and do not require that much time. All those points are connected to the heart. Take the whole chest as heart, since that alone provides for the maintenance and growth of all organic forces. If its function is stopped, there will be a state of lifelessness in a moment. On proper consideration, this (sublimity of heart) will be revealed to be the sacred altar (of worship) for all sorts of sublimity. If this thing is left apart or if this point (heart) is not touched, the sublime condition at all other points will remain weak. In our fold this (sublimity of heart) has been assigned very great value: it should not be thought of as an ordinary point. The method which has been given to you with the help of a plan, is to be used when quick results are needed. But it is better to give an opportunity to the aspirant to come up on his own accord through some assistance from you. About other points, I do not feel the need (of emphasis) to that extent. Your own condition just now, is the ultimate (utmost) state of heart. All other forms of sublimity, whatever these may be, keep their condition confined to themselves: this (sublimity of heart) alone accompanies every other form of sublimity. As the heart advances, it proceeds on, leaving the mind behind. This means that the force of mind goes on decreasing (with the increase in the sublimity of heart) as it (heart) advances to acquire its original character (of purity), so much so that it adopts to the state of Undifferentiated Ultimate, shedding off all layers of illusory existence called Maya. It is this (heart) itself whose glory reigns in the region of piety (Qudsa); and it is this alone, that goes even beyond that. All other sorts of sublimity do not help in reaching upto the Destination. Wherever

the aspirant arrives, he is able to arrive through this (heart) alone. It gets lost, when it has affected approach to the Final Being (Zaat). By the term 'heart', I do not mean the lump of flesh. It is that something which has been brought down into the Heart (region) in the shape of a kneaded compound medicine, consisting of the quintessence of all other forms of sublimity."

"When you impart training to somebody, you should lend force to the heart alone. By the expression 'lend force', I do not mean that you rend somebody's heart. On reaching the Ultimate Being, this thing (heart) gets lost. But you should comprehend what its loss means, when you would have arrived at my state. There everything comes to get merged. When you reach ahead, you may ask me. There the very possibility of asking will be gone. You may understand it like this: love is the real thing, but its ways are different; ways (methods) only regulate love and alter its form."

Referring to the technique of Chishtiya Swords, Revered Master continued instruction:

"The defense against all these consists in having a firm will that 'Master's Power has penetrated in me all over, wherein none of these (evil) powers can have any effect'. If this thought is taken up from the very start, i.e., the day (moment) of arriving to the Master, then such power will be created that these weapons will have no effect. Moreover, there will be no need of having that thought all the time. Only firm conviction in this regard is required; and its maturity is needed. This can be possible when (perfect) faith in the Master is there. These questions have been put forth by MI and he has especially been nurturing thoughts about defence. This is in reply to his thoughts."

"Now he will ask further as to how faith (and conviction) is to mature! The only answer to this is: the acquired tendency (Samskara) of the aspirant and help from the guide (Master). The aspirant's faith starts acquiring maturity just when he sees his Master's way of living and behaving as right. If all imitate this, all cannot be successful. Everyone will possess defence (against Chishtiya Swords), according to the faith, present in him. It is dependent entirely on one's courage; and love remains the essential condition. In our fold emphasis has been laid on love, so

that the state of self- forgetfulness may develop, and the power behind that may pervade it. Dogmatic bellicosity against group and belief other than one's own is a synonym for weakness of heart. Whoever has developed this defect, take him to have fallen off from the point of heart; and his progress has withered away."

Referring to the case of reverend A1 in the context of the abovementioned remark, Revered Master instructed M1: "You (M1) should also take care with respect to this civility (culture)."

The Usual dictation continued:

"I bestow mastery over the element of air to you. After this, there comes the turn of miracles. I have kept a whole stock of miracles, reserved for you. Just let me set your health right; then these will be transferred at one stroke. Today, after fully crossing the condition of Parshad, you entered into the condition of Maha Parshad, and traversed quite a good portion of that. By tomorrow you will complete it; and the day after, I will connect you to the Ultimate Being (Zaat). Then, you may just remain swimming therein. What then? - 'It will make a fine company when two lunatics will be sitting together!'. This is to be the first example in the world."

Question by M1: "Do we, who merge ourselves with the Ultimate Being, get merged into It?"

Answer: "The condition of Ultimate Being starts very much earlier than your present condition. Many elder sages never reached the state of fixed pole star, but acquired connection to the Ultimate Being. Your (M1) condition has got established before your condition of fixed pole star. There is a good condition of Ultimate Being in you (M1)."

2nd August, 1944:

Dictation:

"Only I know the worries of my household! What to wall over that!! Take it as austere worship. The cure for all this is shamelessness (to develop a thick skin). Many sages desire to have it, but do not get it. It is a divine gift. The example of your wife has

gone beyond the life partners of all sages; but her end is to be good. She will go free. She is not devoid of spirituality.”

Question by Ml: “My wife is residing at her father’s place. I desired that she may devote to worship; but she did not do that.”

Answer: “It is just on account of her that you could have such a condition. If her temperament had not been sharp and troublesome, you would not have been oriented to me like this.”

Instruction: “Open the heart of Ml today.”

That was done and the condition overshadowed Ml. Further instruction: “Make the place permanent.”

3rd August, 1944:

Dictation:

“You had crossed the status of Maha Parshad yesterday; and your connection to the Ultimate Being was established yesterday itself. Your position has got established. I was also close by. You were assigned a place on the right-hand side. You were asked to swim; but as you have left everything to me, I have promised to pay attention and impart transmission. I shall get you merged at that point. Nobody can form an estimate of your good fortune today; and I can say only this about your condition: ‘My heart knows; I know; only my heart knows.’ Yesterday you had asked a question, to which the reply is that there is simple permanent life in the Original State (Baqa) and That alone. All the stages end there.”

Question by Ml: “What is ‘Baqa’?”

Answer: “It is a condition, entirely beyond description. (Plan was revealed). Only this much can be comprehended, for example there is body and soul. Body is concrete (solid, gross); soul is subtle (fine). Its taste can be savoured, but never described. If he (Ml) so desires, you may show it to him practically. The condition is present in him as well. In this condition, mind seems to be more open.

So long as stages are there, merging (Fana) and permanent life (Baqa) remain coming alternately. Merging (Fana) is the name

for being lost, and this comes at each point. It may be comprehended for example as water and its steam. If the steam be made still finer, it will become permanent life within permanent life (Baqa dar Baqa). Ask Ml whether he now has comprehended it! The condition that has been demonstrated, must have been comprehended by him (Ml). If this is taken to further depth, it will become merging of the next point; and this chain will go on and on. Does Ml have anything more to ask in this connection? He did well to ask this question, which engages the mind of so many people. I do not want to keep any progress or secret to myself. I could not do that (make it available to everybody) in my life; and I want that it may happen now.”

Submission by me: “I do not feel pining now.”

Answer: “Why should pining be still there during togetherness (union)! Make a little addition to this modification introduced by you: when the form comes to the point of disappearing from the heart, this thought (of one’s own body being that of the Master) be taken up for practice. Earlier than that, the aspirant is likely to feel odd. The method of taking up this thought from the beginning, can be given if you like. But in that case the aspirant’s link will be direct. Such aspirants, anyway, will be rarely found. As such, the need for emphasizing the Master’s ideals is there, so that the help may remain available to him (aspirant).” (Editor’s note: Here reference is being made to the stages of the practice of meditation on Master’s form).

Question: “How is transmission given at the time of death?”

Answer: “The thought is to be firmly held that the entire state has been brought to him by me. Transmission is to be given with all points made open; and at the end the membrane of thought is to be torn off. This point (the brain of heart’s sublimity), wherein thoughts reside, has already been pointed out by me; and that is also the point of heart. The membrane of heart’s thoughts may be torn off first, as well, and then transmission may be given. The method is to be adopted according to the exigencies of the particular case. So long as the membrane of thoughts is not torn off, freedom (liberation) is not there; and this is not the job of everybody. By giving transmission, the effect will, no doubt, be

carried along with it, which will be fruitful in the next birth. If some points have been got crossed over in that condition (which is not everybody's job), then there will be advancement starting from beyond those points in the next birth. Very ordinary attention (transmission) will be required on those points. All this work takes not more than one minute. Courage remains the basic requirement. There is no special transmission, to be given at the time of death. The method is just this. Only rapidity and forcefulness are created."

"N1 has never had the capability of tearing off the membrane of heart's thoughts (as explained above).

He has only been able to give transmission."

MI became directly oriented to Revered Master, by His permission, and asked: "Can I tear off the membrane through your help?"

Answer: "Yes. Courage is the basic requirement." (The words 'courage is the basic requirement' were not clearly comprehensible; and hence had to be indicated later).

The dictation continued:

"He (N1) has never possessed this capability. I had reserved it for you (Ram Chandra). All these matters about you, I have got written down, so that it may be comprehended by somebody in future, what sort of training I have imparted to you. These are not mere words of praise, but hard facts. My capacity will now come to people's comprehension. Neither anybody could recognize me, nor did anybody try to recognize me."

Question: "What is Jiwan Moksha (Vedantic term for liberation in life)?"

Answer: "Your condition, earlier than the present one, was that of Jiwan Moksha. I have created that condition already in my life-time. You had already become devoid of actions. That was the gift of meditation on Master's own form (Sha- ghal Rabta). I shall take you down from this state of togetherness (union), created in you. Otherwise, you will not be able to do my work. You will remain getting the air of that state (togetherness or union). Consider the

state as permanent. You will have self-mastery. Togetherness (Union) has taken place.”

Submission: “When I tried to open sensitivity in the case of M1, I felt a kind of stiff (swollen) nerve in his brain.”

Answer: “That was a gesture of N1’s doing. There were so many kicks, administered to that nerve, that it became stiff (swollen). Now you set it right. His (N1) life is not remaining, otherwise I would have ordered you to make his nerve also stiff (swollen).”

4th August, 1944:

Dictation:

“You had made direct invocation of your Grand Master in accordance with my instructions. He has made arrangement for you in that connection, by placing me entirely at your disposal, which means that, henceforth, I will be doing what you may desire.”

“I have taken direct part in destruction. N1 is wholly upset, but he does not listen to anything. I have administered direct warning to him just now (11.00 A.M.), but he is lost in his pride and does not listen. I have started ray work.”

Dictation from Grand Master:

“N1, whom I considered just a toy, has left no stone unturned to spoil ray progeny. I was free, I had left all work to your Revered Master. He has become an embodiment of mercy; and has no example of love against him. I feel inclined to eat the special vegetarian dish of Mongauris, I took lots of this dish at his house, but not at yours. You arrange for it together with two chapatis (flat thin bread) sometime for me. My visits to you will continue off and on. Now I am going. Have full trust. Your Revered Master is now coming to you. My duty is over now.”

Revered Master’s dictation:

“M1 should not consider his condition as ordinary. His tongue has acquired effectiveness. The five forms of sublimity, i.e., the sublimity of the lower organic region, and to some extent the points in the head, have come up to a similar state.

The heart has bloomed up. The defence (and care) of your family and children and home from today upto the annual function is assigned to him. He should remain doing this job continuously. There should be no need of reminding him again and again. You had transmitted to him during a dream from the state of Dhruadhpati (Qutub-ul-Aqtab). I had stopped you just there. The effect has taken root. Your transmission can never remain ineffective. Observe proper care and restraint. So, it is ray pleasure also to open that point; and I have made a promise also to this effect. (The condition overshadowed M1). If the other representatives (successors) had followed you, they may, very likely, have reached this state sooner or later. M1 does not need going to the annual function at S.or E.. or anywhere else except Fatehgarh till a second order may be issued. I bless, he be happy, and his difficulties come to easy solutions, and he may shine like a star.”

“SI is becoming like a camel without the controlling rope in his nose. I have tightened CI. This is the punishment for his impertinence. The fold of my progeny has now got full of such people, as may, in some cases, be likened to dirty eggs. Only he is great, whom I have made great; and he is their own brother. For N1 people never entertained such thought. Somebody left him because of helplessness. Some others gave up due to his threats and rebukes. Spirituality does not admit of superiority due to age. Even the youngest can come up to be the biggest. But whom to tell this. All are involved with their petty egotistic wishes. Someone is ebriated with his capability; some other is getting elated with the sight of the number (of followers) with him. All are devoid of Reality. Your idea is correct that nobody has got its savour as yet. I am to illustrate my successors with the exception of M1, by referring to children, playing with toys and getting happy with it. All consider themselves as recluse and ascetic; but none amongst them is really like that. Hints containing light concerning these will have to be issued from time to time. I had the desire that my successors (representatives) would have got corrected first; and become helpful in your work. But the results are turning out to be opposite. If I had revealed you during my life-time, and had declared you as my representative, these successors would still have remained busy with setting up their separate shrines. They could never

comprehend that I had made them like that (permitted to impart training) due to need. I was under great influence of my Master's instructions; and, in haste, I could not make them traverse the stages and points, necessary for a successor (trainer). The result is here before us. Moreover, whatever stages or points I made them traverse, N1 made reduction in them, instead of increase."

5th August, 1944:

Dictation:

"Start imparting training to B9. K1 is in good condition. Help him to go a little ahead. B9 is attached to you, and hence this thought occurred to me. He is however rustic and unsophisticated. I had accepted R2 as my own, even though he was entirely devoid of spirituality. If he (R2) transmits to somebody, there will be a bad effect. The influence of those people (of K.) is active in the form of impressions. This is the mystery, which I do not want to reveal."

Revered Grand Master intervened:

"I kept N1 like a toy. He arranged many sorts of play. Whomever you structure and develop, remember him in good words."

Revered Master's dictation continued:

"I consider you as a friend. You also consider me likewise. Both are of equal status. That means, love in both has come up to the same level. In whatever amount you love me, I love you more than that. 'What wonderful company when two lunatics are sitting together' (oft quoted Urdu half couplet). Your worth, only my heart can tell. My own Revered Master has started coming to you. As such, care and attentiveness has become more exigent. I was content with tastes of penury, but my Revered Master had got a prosperous nobleman's temperament. I like you to have a life-style of a prosperous noble person. It was, therefore, that I had mentioned about silver pots for your use. I have given you both kinds of riches. I have kept whole sets of silver utensils for you. You will have them at the time of need. As a poet has said, 'let proper time be there for me to tell thee, O sky! How can I tell you just now what is there in my heart, (it is before-time)' (An Urdu couplet)."

This above-mentioned remark was in reply to my submission as to how silver utensils would be possible to arrange for visitors and guests, if I started eating in silver pots, when Revered Master had asked me earlier to use silver pots for my meals, which would be cared for and kept clean by my wife.

Dictation continued:

“I gave permission to you to initiate others (on my hand) from that point, which has not been available to anybody’s fortune. You possess such power as to take somebody in one second to the state, that is yours. You can bring the state of togetherness (union) to anybody in one second. But that is prohibited. All powers are present in you. I meant those powers, which are capable of bringing about miracles. However, these powers have not yet been brought to awakening. The time is very close at hand, when these will be awakened. (This was in reply to my submission that at the stage of Maha Parshad there are many powers). Whoever will have love for you, will be fulfilled with prosperity by me. You have been freed from every responsibility by me.”

6th August, 1944:

Revered Master’s dictation:

“At the annual function, there is to be the announcement in these words: ‘Lalaji has appointed Babu Ram Chandra of Shahjahanpur as his successor and representative; and declared that those who have love for me should love him. Now their well-being lies therein. One who loves him shall be fulfilled with prosperity and perfection to the fullest extent by me. One who is against it, cannot derive benefit from me.’ This is to be noted down and handed over to the warning-administrator K1 to be announced word by word.”

Further instructions:

“He (K1) should tell J1 that herein lies his greater well-being; and he may make an estimate himself also, through his own past experience. Ram Chandra can never give up his companionship; and neither can there be any better friend (than Ram Chandra) available to him (J1). J1’s mother (your respected elder aunt) needs only to be informed. The announcement will be made by the

warning-administrator, my adopted son (Kl). If JI's mother wants to make some addition on her own, she may do so, with the condition that the words to be added (by her) must bring well-being to you. This news will be given to people in general without prior notice, giving opportunity for discussions about it. Neither shall any such word be used as may arouse suspicion of some kind and make them use their low tendencies. These words will have a magical effect, and I assure this. At the time of announcement, you penetrate these words into the hearts of people. I am not getting leisure as yet to attend to this work. The more I try to find leisure, the more work pours in. "I have permitted you to sit on deer-skin. You can spread it, wherever you may sit. If possible, arrange for a deer-skin for Ml. He is also fixed star. Sitting on lion-skin is only for Jalali (sublime) saints. The reason for this is that sitting (on animal-skin) is appropriate when mental tendencies turn inwards, i.e. what is seen outside, starts to be seen within. Using animal-skin to sit upon before that, is just imposterity."

7th August, 1944:

Dictation:

"This method is good. Acquaint Ml with it and start its application." (The method under reference, consists in transmitting from anywhere to whatever sublimity, but continue giving suggestions from one's own mind and watching the resultant condition simultaneously).

A conversation was in progress, the topic under reference being that reverend saints would return as gods, when Revered Master intervened: "Reverend saints do not return. His (Nl) sins will never be pardoned."

8th August, 1944:

Dictation:

"You do not have material wisdom. You are very often talking of materiality. So long as the material does not come to an end, man does not get fulfilled in spirituality. First of all, the same was brought to end (in your case). Even the cause of the appearance of incarnations gets obliterated. They come and go by themselves. Sometimes people bring them forth, bound in some form. When

their faith becomes very strong, they experience a kind of life in that form, established by their faith; and to maintain its dignity, a wave from the Ultimate Being pervades that same form. It is the effect of their own thought, that incarnations appear as moving about. Wherever incarnations have appeared, the causes are invariably there in every case, but their forms have changed. When you think of me, never bind me in a form. When you need to do some work, you get that thing penetrated in the cause, and give suggestion to the spirit (soul) that the same shall occur. Then sharpness in it will get enhanced.”

“Ml is now in good condition. His weaknesses are gone. Let him go on swimming in sublimity, and continue giving benefit. The reward for his services has now been received. This means that he should take care of sublimity, and not allow grossness to enter his temperament. This thing increases to such an extent as to pervade the whole. Look here, I am telling you something.”

Submission: “I am fully attentive.”

Indication: “Look at yourself. The Ultimate Being surrounds you.”

Submission: “It is certainly there.”

Question: “Have you comprehended this?”

Submission: “No, my Lord.”

Explanation: “You’re merging in the Real Ultimate Being (Asal Zaat), with which union (togetherness) had already taken place, is started. This is the point, which is beyond comprehension for anybody. Neither can anybody believe it. It has come to be thus, as it is just my invention.”

Ml was conversing with me. He (Ml) said that it was his (Revered Master’s) invention that He was thus imparting training after physical 'veiling. '

Revered Master’s dictation:

“What Ml has mentioned, is really something special. My elders were always ready to impart, training after their physical veiling; but I stepped beyond them, in this regard; and this work is such as will not come to people’s comprehension. If I had a body, I would have written it down myself.”

“Ml’s condition is good. Give tidings. He should now give up old habits, by which I mean lack of courage, in particular, and anger. He should develop the habit of winning other people’s hearts. He should have patience. Rudeness has gone away. If he is obedient to me, there will be more progress. Being a father to him, I have to tolerate everything; but there is to be regret, certainly.”

Then Revered Master started addressing Ml directly:

“Consider Ram Chandra to be your own. I have already done the same. Trumpets shall sound all around in his praise. I do not like to reveal anything just now. It is in my heart as yet. Everything will come to light at the proper time. I assure that there is no limit to his progress. There is much of his life still ahead. I had perfected him at the age of thirty. Those people are blessed who derive benefit from him. Otherwise, people will weep and wail for him also, as they are doing for me. I have kept his powers established within measure. This may mislead people, possibly, to deception; and they may not comprehend my state. I have not left even a hair-breadth of imperfection in him. If some people do not believe it, they may come forward to have their own observation in due course. (This is to be included in the article of declaration at the annual function. The portion to be included begins with ‘Trumpets shall sound....)’”

“He sometimes becomes stubborn. I consider it a beloved’s demeanour, and this I do not like to take away from him. (All this is not to be included in the article of declaration). His nature is so complicated that it was after quite a long time that I could know that this person was fit for being my representative. I tallied my own revelation in this regard with my Master; and when it was confirmed, then I paid attention to him. I was happy with his simplicity and innocence; and thereafter many more occasions for being happy came my way. You (Ml) will feel even more astonished to hear that all Revered Elders are considering him their own.”

The dictation concerning Ml continued: “Ml was not fit for representative ship. Whatever he was suitable for, has developed. His brain was very soft (weak); and he was not able to do several jobs at one and the same time, nor could he keep an eye on all

sides simultaneously. If he had received orders for destruction, he would be involved in inner conflict over it, and even exercise his own mind about it; and if ordered to be merciful and compassionate, he would remain engrossed with it. So, to say, whatever work was assigned to him, he would have mania for it. He had been keeping company of crude people.”

“Ram Chandra always tried to develop his brain (intelligence) ; he remained fond of that alone. The effects of illness, no doubt, caused jerks to his brain, but those were due to past impressions (Samskaras), and hence there could be no help. His brain is certainly weak (tender), but very far-reaching. The fine point, capable of being reached by it, cannot be arrived at by anybody. I also get help from him. Out of respect he does not give suggestion concerning any matters, but I grasp it and start working likewise. I know that a man of this calibre and merit (intelligence), as has come to me, is difficult to be found by somebody else. If you see any defect in him, it will be found to be concealing some merit in it. This thing is very rare. Nobody could assess him to the extent of my estimate of him. Nobody could even value him properly. Mostly people had considered him as the simple divine cow, fulfilling everybody’s wishes (Kama- dhenu). As such there was apparent love. J1 too does not have cordial love for him. SI wanted to keep him Under his subordination, so as to make him the beast of burden. He would enquire about condition from him, and (taking credit for it himself) would assert his own superiority. If help was needed, it was obtained secretly sitting behind closed doors in some cabin. But I felt extremely pleased (to notice this), and very much liked that you did not even give a thought to such things. Your condition is like that of a lion-cub, about which you may have read in books, that was not aware of its reality until given the thought about it. You had no opportunity to go anywhere. Wherever you had gone, he would use you as his instrument. To tell the truth, he (SI) considered you to be a fool. He knew that Ram Chandra could create an effect, even by uttering the word ‘yes’; and create any condition at will. I was laughing at all such things; and felt pity at your innocence; and felt happy as well. This was a sort of sacrifice that you were offering. No example pf this can possibly be found. Secondly, you considered everybody as superior

to yourself. Sometimes when drowned in love, you certainly felt sharpness, but even that you remained considerate that one's own merits should not be demonstrated before elders; and this thought made you humble. You certainly underwent deception concerning Si's condition, and your intuition in that case was wrong. This was because you had comprehended him to be my chosen purpose (Muraad), and were convinced that nobody was capable of loving me more than he (SI). All the rest of your intuitions were correct."

"M1 should not use bad words for himself. For such an expression, there can be many Toms, Dicks and Harrys to be named. B1 considered himself to be my representative, and this is his thought even now. R1 strengthened this thought in him (B1), and misled him as well. He had no claim to my representativeship; and what may I say about the condemnedshaped (R1)! By 'condemned-shaped', I mean condemnation personified. And M3", I consider like somebody coming to dance and jump about on the occasion of a child-birth, and departing after collecting a few coins (from the new-born child's family). The influence of his father on him is perfect. J3 I connect to the name of a thief and plunderer. Wherever you went, everybody just wanted to take advantage. Nobody had real love for you; and if somebody even got some condition treated or developed, there was the secret of his own petty benefit involved. Somewhere you were assigned jobs of menial service like cleaning utensils and preparing beds for others, and filling tobacco-pipes (Hukkah) for Indian-style smoking. The purpose of all this was to impress people by demonstrating that such wealthy people did such petty jobs at their place; and thereby to reinforce the mark of the greatness of those who took such service (from you) on the hearts of the people who saw you doing those petty jobs. Nobody gave you anything after (the end of) my life, but even tried to spoil you. The transmission, concealing the secret of selfish advantage behind it, can hardly be effective. You had love for B1, but he also did not repay the rightful due to you in this regard, and you still continued saying that he was doing a lot for you. The cause of it has already been noted above. I am forgiving the single person of B1: he always had the thought of your progress. I felt very displeased at your being engaged in cleaning utensils and in serving like slaves and servants. On those

occasions, I constantly remained with you: sometimes you become aware of it, but mostly not. The blind ones, however, had no discretion (and discrimination) about it; and they took all kinds of paddy to be rated low alike (as the Hindi proverb goes). You too have to take up the job of training: you should not allow such practices to be rampant. If you enquire of me about the reality, my dear N1 was indebted to you for his bread and butter (salt), but he could not compensate even for your services. Whatever closeness and affection with you was attempted to be enhanced by B1, was all with selfish purpose. He wanted that if Ram Chandra became worth anything, according to his idea, his (Ram Chandra's) condition be considered as due to him (B1)."

"The Article of Declaration"

(For the forthcoming annual function)

Revered Master's dictation:

"Selfless friends are rare in this world. If I have to express my view, there can be no better friend than the Master for a disciple; and a guide who is devoid of this quality (being the best friend for the disciple) is not worthy of being called a guide. I can say with perfect force that the love, given to me by my Revered Master, has no other example! And what am I to say about myself! Only the experience of people shall tell!!! God alone knew the state of my love. But alas! Nobody responded to it. No one loved me with an open heart. I consider this to be my own fault. Even now if people get oriented, this can still fall to their lot. If someone gone wayward in the morning, returns home in the evening, he is not to be termed as lost. Time, no doubt, has gone waste. But if love and attachment is created to the extent of time that has gone waste, it can be made up. People have gripped the skirt of lack of courage to such an extent, as to be wholly disinclined to leave it. This is so, because they did not find a proper atmosphere and mostly, they remained involved with pick-pockets. Nobody wished (sincerely) that my progeny would progress, and my name, whatever it was, would remain alive. What complaints would I make against those, from whom harm ensued to them! I consider it all brought about by my own fate. I repeat that a true friend, other than Master, can never be found."

“They should remember that what they had taken to be real, was just deception. If they pay attention, they will know that it was a case of hunting from behind the cover; and no subtleties were left unused to misdirect them and to lead them away from me. Where it will be difficult to find, on the one hand, an example of how defects were introduced (unscrupulously) into our society, it will also be hard to find an example, on the other hand, of how I tried to weed out these ills even after my life in the world. I had burdened myself with all responsibilities, and tried for their fulfilment and made arrangements for the same. Although there were some very few persons among them, about whom I should have been responsible, yet my intellect got veiled by changing reality of worldly times and my own love and kindness. I am suffering the consequences. To me there seem to be no more than one or two persons as helpers among this herd of people. Is this your sense of duty, that assigning me to oblivion, you have moved away to the valley of somebody else ? They stepped in a vale, where their luck brought them to nothing but thorns and dust. Many others were stranded into dangerous valleys, whose desert-winds snatched away reminiscences of their homes from them; and they mostly lost the way. What they considered to be fertile well-irrigated land, was nothing but mire and marsh. They have not yet enjoyed a walk in the Lord’s valley of enlightenment (Vale of Yemen where Moses had the vision of God’s Light Divine), nor appreciated the sight of pleasant paths therein. Neither has luscious freshness of (that valley’s) breeze come to their experience yet, nor have they drunk the water of its lovely springs. I think they were (plainly) deceived. But they may just look to whether this was not against divine unity! Was it their duty to forget me and yield their hearts to others'? Now the time is there. They should not let the opportunity slip out of their hands. I feel I have just made all these facts audible to them: these are all for their own benefit. Now this time is here: only an attachment of heart and a turning of the face is needed. I have not left anything wanting to create new life in them.”

“I understand, Ram Chandra’s words (appeals) will be put into the garbage for waste, and only a few will be there to do that. But they should also remember that whereas I have bestowed on

him (Ram Chandra) the power for mercy and compassion, I have permitted him also to be strict. Whatever he will do, shall have my approval. I have given sufficient length to this article, so that nothing be left out: and everything significant may appear there in its own hue again and again; and no occasion for wavering and doubt will remain for anybody. Otherwise, I will apply the last cure which I have thought out and come upon.”

“Just possible, some persons may consider it a kind of propaganda. They should refrain from such thoughts. Ram Chandra is not their slave, and neither has he any desire for money. God has already bestowed enough worldly respect and (social) status on him. I understand many of those included in this herd, will not be able to compete with him (Ram Chandra) in that respect. Thus far he has not been obliged to look upto anybody for (pecuniary) help and support; nor shall he be in future. People may weigh and measure all the questions (and doubts) arising in their hearts against these illustrations, and come to the right path. I do not like to say anything more than this. I may add only this half couplet (in Urdu): ‘When the thorn of the forest grew (beyond limits) it served as a surgeon’s knife’. I may not have to come to this principle. I have here completed this article.”

“People will wonder also, how I am dictating such an article, after my physical veiling. As a proof thereof, I am presenting Ram Chandra. People may have their own experience. I want also to make it audible that I had structured dear Ram Chandra (to perfection) during my life-time itself. Due to certain reasons, I had to conceal him. People may test him with all the means of testing that they may have with them; and satisfy themselves in whatever way they may like. And (or) if somebody may have intoxication of pride, he can challenge Ram Chandra and see. That is all.”

“This article is to be captioned: ‘Article of Declaration Concerning the Annual Function’ (which Revered Master Lalaji Saheb has himself dictated and instructed to be read there).”

More dictation, apart from the article of declaration, continued: “J1 thinks that B1 loves him; but he has now no love left in him for anybody except wife and children. Moreover, if he (J1) has some purpose in view, it cannot be fulfilled through him

(Bl). His guide is still there in the physical form: whatever he may like, he may have from him. Once he goes on his journey to the world of Eternal Existence, Bl does not possess the power to take him (Jl) then to the final extent (Dhura). I had not wanted, then, to reveal you (Ram Chandra); and hence, I had turned his (Jl) orientation to Bl. I had already lost all hopes from Nl; and hence he (Bl) was the only one to whom I would have submitted him (Jl), in the capacity of an elder brother. If Jl now really wants to have training, he can find nobody better than you (Ram Chandra). He (Jl) does not possess the capability of estimating people. He has been mistaken in assessing you.”

9th August, 1944:

Query to Revered Master:

“In case there are some persons so much devoted to you, that they like to be initiated by you alone, can that be possible?”

Answer: “Yes, but very rare - just one and/or half.”

Dictation:

“In giving permission (for training), the condition is made stable. In Ml, there does not seem anything to be wanting. Only giving up some habit may remain. The ocean, in which swimming is to take place, however, is limitless. The (essential) characteristic of spirituality is dependent on (good) conduct. Both depend mutually on each other (Plan came to view). If the essence of (good) conduct be snatched away, both conditions will become the same. Ml’s father is in good state and giving blessings.”

“The clothes of my Revered Master, as well as mine, that are preserved, may be taken by you. Take the cap at least. If they have some objection, I will make recompense. Nobody has any love for you. Jl has no attachment to you: in fact, he is lacking with regard to this quality. All others (of K..) are selfish people. They have greed in such abundance, that, if you give your entire worldly wealth, even then they will be crying for something more. Hell is calling Nl. The ditch has been prepared. Hell is a place, where pitch darkness prevails. There is perfectly no light. Souls, that are dropped in it, get involved in the web of their own thoughts (impression) and get entangled in that mesh. There some material is present, due to

which every thought gets developed. A power revolves them there in the form of a whirlpool. Souls go round and round in it, as a result of which mental revolving gets started: and this agony can be experienced by the soul concerned alone. God save everybody from it. I do not like even to show its plan to you. I am bestowing this power on you. I did not use it on anybody during my life-time, nor should you do it. People heaped many troubles on me, though. I was full of all powers during my life-time.”

“C1 has returned back to his old patterns. He is concerned with increase of number. Whether spirituality remains there or not, is no longer his concern. He has just made himself the god of spirituality, so that people go on worshipping him. Meanwhile he has suffered tremendous loss. Just a turn of your eye has brought such a condition to him, as all of them (at K..) could not do combined together. The condition is difficult to put into words adequately: the flow pf Beneficence to him has become obstructed. I am also silent. Your general transmission is now causing no effect. This is because of what you have done to him. If that is removed, the effect may then start being produced. For that I dont give permission. M1’s transmission also will have no effect SI has returned to his old ways. He has not budged an inch even. The orientation of people (to him) has diminished: he wants to net them in through flattery. He refers to my name, but wants to establish his own masterdom. He is concerned with enlisting disciples, and increasing number. No doubt he devotes labour, which brings benefit to some extent. He has not given up self-importance. The permission (for imparting training) in case of both these persons has got snapped. Now if you give (fresh) permission, do that only after casting them in that particular structure. If he is prohibited, his master- hood gets a jerk: why would he listen to (the prohibition) then! The whole atmosphere has got spoilt. Who, and how many are to be wept over!!”

Question by M1 concerning references to the causal body on August 8, 1944: “When, on being born again and again, everyone’s causal body remains present separate from one j another, is not soul also different in each causal body?”

In reply the vision was brought to view.

The dictation continued:

“Many secrets of Nature come to knowledge on leaving the body; and there are such secrets also, as are difficult to be brought to experience. N1 was trying to pull you down. That was not within his capacity. You were under the impression that (group) meditation was being conducted. You were not praised in the presence of others. Just possible, something may have been said some time to please M1. I had told M1 once that this (boy) Ram Chandra will be the lamp of the family. Out of his good nature, he (M1) blurted this even to that (great) fellow N1. That became even more harmful for you. But since these were Divine Words, they came out to be exactly like that. All calamities that could be brought to you, within the realm of his (N1) capability, were tried. The messages to call you, that were sent, contained the secret of observing your condition, in them. Your real condition was beyond his capacity for comprehension, since that was beyond his reach. I feel an urge to praise you. If they choose to joke about the praises, I have showered on you, then I assure that they will have their (touch with) Reality snapped off. Tell M1 to have no worry. And, if your eye takes a turn, I will also have to turn my eye; and the consequence comes to light by itself. Reality does not remain concealed Just see, (with laughter) how I have brought you out unscathed! There was one mistake on your part also: when you considered me to be all-in-all, why did you get oriented to someone else!! This mistake on your part, has been cleaned off. Your simplicity was responsible for this. Moreover, you did not see evil in anybody. You had no distinction between friend and foe; and that is your nature. ‘Union’ means togetherness. Transmitting by establishing togetherness of one’s soul with that of another, is known as (the technique of) ‘United Transmission’ (Ittehadī Tawajjeha). (Method is briefly mentioned). This transmission is prohibited.”

Question: “When is it given?”

Answer: “When the inward temperament may tell of itself, then ‘United Transmission’ is needed. Some people are so intoxicated of their ability that they feel pride in adorning words with a new meaning (novel interpretation), because they understand that the people in their audience do not possess that much (intellectual)

ability. Since those listening to him (Bl) are bound with faith in his greatness, his words are taken to be hallowed with scriptural authority, since those poor fellows do not have the ability to comprehend it by themselves. I have brought this vision to your view. Your figure is established there. If that is obliterated, you will go out of life just now. I had brought my state of mergence to your view. You were feeling that you had also got merged (along) with me. I had a special purpose in bringing that vision to your view. Expansion has started along with your condition of mergence. At the sight of this condition (though the use of the word 'condition' is inappropriate), everybody likes to go out, to whomsoever's fortune this state be brought. If you did not have a guide like me, you would have flown out of the cage of (material) elements. I too have undergone this state."

That condition subsided after some time, and the thought of leaving the physical body was removed by Revered Master. Only the imperience of the taste remained.

10th August, 1944:

Revered Master happily offered:

"You ask of me whatever you like to have from me."

Submission: "Even though there is nothing wrong in begging of one's Master, one's God; yet my Holy Lord has bestowed everything on me, and even got absorbed His Own Self into my being. Now what remains there that I am to ask for!"

Revered Master blessed:

"God grant you the greatest fortune. In finding you, I got everything. You will make me freshly memorable (in the world). My affection for you was boiling up (with warmth) at the time, under which effect I offered to fulfil your desire, whatever. I have given you everything: you have also surrendered everything to me. I have with me what you have surrendered to me; and you have with you what I have bestowed on you. This is a philosophy that if a human being surrenders everything (out of love), he is filled up with all that belongs to the one, to whom surrender is made. The extent to which an aspirant is lacking in surrender, the gift from the Master is proportional to that same extent. The world is the residence of

return: as you give out of this hand, you receive (likewise) in that other hand. The extent to which somebody has given to me, I gave its return to him. I have not kept myself indebted to any one of them. There are very few persons, inclined to give, in your herd; while there is a large number of those, desirous of taking and grabbing. I took everybody to be mine, but nobody considered me to be his. There are some exceptions, no doubt, whom I leave aside. I had got amongst my associates, an abundance of drug-smoke-addicts (fond of intoxication -1 mean spiritual): seekers of Reality were very rare. When they got an air somewhere, in agreement with their mental tendency, they had no scruples to slip away to that side: intoxication happened to be their only interest; and nothing else was the object of their desires. These are the circumstances in the society, that you have to suffer. At present the condition is much worse. Very often people wish to purchase Brahma Vidya (Science of the Ultimate Reality) with money; and they have been taught also like that. I leave aside the very special ones. People have developed desires of becoming Masters, even though they are not yet even disciples in the real sense. These desires originated at K.. Permission started being bought (and sold) like certificates under Christianity. Palm-greasing got introduced.

Even agents got appointed for this 'nice job'. Prayer (and blessing) began to be paid for. The responsibility for this lies, to some extent, on A1 as well. I had to name him even clearly at last. 'Nobody except God fulfils needs'- this was not taken into account. Desires for rich and heavy food like sweets and pudding persisted; and nobody was ready to take a cheap nourishing meal (consisting of soup and gruel). Was it Reality that was introduced and popularized in our society? I blame those in this matter, who laid down foundations for this (state of affairs). The needy person becomes reckless; he does anything under temptation (of the fulfilment of his need). As such, aspirants may deserve pardon; but those, who were posing as bosses of the establishment of spirituality, are not deserving(pardon). This is a new point that I have dictated to you. If there is something more, I will tell you duly."

"This was the wave that went directly into the heart of people. Bravo for your suggestion. Go on like this. Success is bound to

come.” (The suggestion was to fill that wave with Divine Light, so that colourization got altered).

At 9.00 P.M., M1 was sitting in meditation, during which a peculiar condition prevailed in him. Revered Master, who was present, indicated after meditation: “In his (M1) case, something has opened up. First ask him to narrate about it; and then I shall tell.”

After M1 had tried to describe his condition, Revered Master told: “He (M1) has entered the store- house, wherefrom all powers ensue. I give congratulations. People have lost this best opportunity, or else they would have become, only God knows what. At present, there is an upsurge of all the powers in you. In you also, this condition shall pass off. His merging in the state of the object of worship, has got started. B1 ’s condition has come down to the cosmic level (Brahmanda) from that of the para cosmic (Para Brahmanda). His actions have accounted for this deterioration. Even during life-time each of my elements had got merged in the Ultimate Being.”

11th August, 1944:

The dictation continued:

“M1 is going higher up, after obtaining mergence at that point. Nobody among the disciples could, as yet, reach this stage. When such references are made, you (Ram Chandra) should know yourself as excepted. In your case no stage is remaining. Give up the habit of doubting: it is harmful. That condition is very soon to arrive, when your complaint will be over. You are merging in the Ultimate Being; and you are developing into that state, which I had mentioned as my state last night, i.e. every particle was totally merged in the Ultimate Being. The sharpness that is created in you, is the result of union (togetherness) with It. I wanted to apply brakes to this, but that seems to be beyond me. I feel helpless. ‘Beyond’ means that I am getting out of control. Your remembrance keeps me restless, though that does not cause any trouble to me. I do not prohibit you in this regard. That will cause a jolt to your heart. That is your practice of a life-time; and you cannot get away from it, anyway. It is this which has brought you to the fulfilment of your purpose. There is no difference at all between me and my

Revered Master. Remembering me is remembering Him. If He had not been there, your existence would also not have occurred. One new practice that you had adopted, I am telling you now. When automatic Masterly remembrance (Shabda) in your heart got started, you had turned its face (direction) towards me. This means that you had engaged every particle (of your being) into my remembrance. You never tried to listen to sounds, what may have been done in a customary way. You had made only me as the whole base of your life; and taken me to be all-in-all, treating everything else as mere grass. I am telling one thing more. Wherever you went, you tried to see my grandeur alone. The result was that you imbibed the whole effect of that condition. Just on account of this your stroll of whatever place or point you covered, was perfect; and this capability, I did not find in anybody else. Even now, you are trying to penetrate every vein and nerve of my Being, and have already penetrated sufficiently. You have not even an idea of anybody other than myself. The resonance of your thought is all the time there in my heart; and I am remembering you. These things are beyond comprehension for anybody. Only if somebody takes it up for practice, it can come to knowledge. My purpose in telling all these things is that people may follow these practices; and try to take up these in right earnest like you. That will be their obligation to me. Your condition is in full bloom; every particle is ready, so to say, with open lips to suck (transmission of) Grace, from anywhere, as desired. The drawback in him (Ram Chandra) was that he had absorbed every condition in such a manner that there was no awareness of it by others. That was his capability, but I considered it to be a drawback, in so far as it was not beneficial to others. I have removed that drawback. Now wheresoever he shall sit, (transmission of) Grace will be flowing there; and people will remember being together with me. But, alas! The society has undergone so much degradation, that nobody remains there to understand this. (Pure) sincerity is gone: (selfish) materiality has come. Moreover, these people too are not to be blamed: they developed a habit for seeking the taste of pleasure, that was served to them. People's attention was not drawn to where sincerity was existing (indicating M1). To tell the truth, all (K.. people) served their own personal ends, and spoilt my purpose, instead of serving it. They will be answerable on the (doom's) day

of the settlement of the account of good and bad actions. If I were alive, i.e. in a physical, body, the view of this state of affairs would have brought tears to my eyes. The pleasure-seekers have brought all my labour to ruin.”

“Show this whole article, dictated by me to my adopted son (Kl) to make him astonished and alert. I hope he will not deceive me in my old age. You do not be sad. Trumpets shall sound all around in your praise. Or else I shall turn over the entire structure itself. If your heart is too sorrowful, I may start that work just now. I cannot see your tears. Remove this sadness from your heart; otherwise, the Omnipotent Nature shall start rising up just now. You have no idea of your condition yet. Remember that I am present in my perfect form in each particle of your being. This has been revealed to you. After leaving my physical body, I have brought, first of all, this very revelation to you. You are not able to form an estimate of the amount of my love for you. Always I kept this love concealed. Now I have already started telling Ml about it; and I am happy also that he has trusted and obeyed me. May God bestow stability. From all other sides, I have withdrawn my attention for the time being.”

“In writing anecdotes concerning sages, people have applied their ingenious minds as well. It always takes time for events to take a turn. When even God has something to make for, the relevant causes thereof start accumulating; and then the particular happening comes to pass. If some sage immediately brought about the desired effect through his (or her) blessing or curse, then it means that the provision for the happening had already got accumulated.” (Here reference is made to some special kind of work through will).”

I (author - Shri Ram Chandrajji) tried to get the Real Current permeate my being; but there was the sound-‘Don’t do that’. I gave up the meditation. On reference and request, Revered Master revealed: “That was said by myself. It was because I am perfectly merged in you; and hence there is no need for you to take up that work. To tell the truth, you don’t need any meditation and practice. You had disinclination for it since much earlier; and I did not enforce anything. Your mergence also has been of a strange kind, which will make people wonder-struck. When I came to know it for

certain, that I was to have you as my successor- representative, I tried by and by to merge myself into your being. You do not think that I did not try for you. I also performed my duty, that was my due in accordance with your practice. To tell the truth, it was my own purpose (that was thus served). It is by God's Grace and Beneficence that such a successor-representative is made available. Otherwise, Reality gets lost and materiality remains. In our chain (of succession), this has continuously been God's special munificence. Be it so! Someone or other fine person has always come into existence (in due course). You will also not remain deprived of this (finding a successor). That is my benediction. This kind of training is not imparted (in general) to all and sundry; or else everybody would achieve it. Fulfilment can be attained, and is attained; but this thing is not developed in everybody. Just now Revered Master arrived, and left after blessing you. He told one thing more, which will be revealed after sometime."

"I will have to give some light to my adopted son (K1) also. People will be after him as well; and will develop a veiled opposition to him also. Just on account of that I had asked you to push him forward. Do this today without delay. Do not have your time wasted in talks. It will take time, because you are prohibited to do this in one stroke. The (battle) field will be in your hands. People will wear withered faces. I will be present there (in Bhandara) with my full force. Only a little thought will be needed (to bring about' action). Have no care for opposition from people. You don't need to be cowed down by threats from any quarter. On your back, you will have such power as will have no example to it. M1's idea is correct that it will be a miracle. I shall be telling you what will come to my comprehension from time to time. No power can match you. These words, I have repeated again and again, so that you take courage and hold it. Revered Master has taken responsibility for your courage in His own hands. You were lacking in this regard; and I had made a request to Him. My presence there (at Bhandara) will be so strong that effect will be coming minute to minute. I will leave aside all other work at (he time. That alone shall be my purpose; that is to say, (I will be attentive to) the work in hand at that moment. If B1 indulges much in absurd talks and tactics, you just

rub him down and sit tight (Plan came to vision). People will turn to be your helpers, just there.”

12th August, 1944:

Revered Master's dictation:

“There is no need for consideration in case of anybody. Tit for tat. I will have to prescribe a medicine for your heart- I permit only you for ‘tit for tat’. That is because some people may possibly try to apply their mind (thought and will). You will be getting information minute to minute. This is also a method of training that if there is pressure on the mind, and it comes to the state of suspension, as a consequence thereof, something humorous should be stated. However, it should not be unbecoming, as N1 is used to do: this makes one lose one's dignity.”

“Your work on my foster son (K1) yesternight was quite good. There is need to transmit only at the point, to which you have pulled him up.

There is no need yet to take him further up. He is weak and is in his old age. B1's deterioration has started. He has commenced emitting the bad smell of a corpse. You have also stopped transmitting to him. Whatever his steps, they are just downwards. You go on with your work. You are to have no concern with the effect.”

Revered Grand Master instructed with regard to the case of respected A1:

“Take care of him. I order you (Ram Chandra). This responsibility will be yours alone. I was in charge of him. Now I leave him under your charge. ‘Elderliness is a matter of sagacity (intelligence) and not of years! (a Persian quote). His condition has very much declined: B1 has suffered the same effect. That is also the reason why your transmission does not work in case of B1. Take care of the root: branches will acquire freshness and green leaves by themselves. There is need of strictness in his (respected A1's) case. You can do that, where required. Your Master has bestowed everything on you; and I will also not leave anything wanting. The whole world shall be lighted by your presence. Many sages and saints will seem like glimmering candles in the morning, as against

you. As your Master has stated, I also say that there is no estimate of the limit to your progress. Take courage: I have undertaken that responsibility also.” Revered Grand Master went away.

Revered Master’s dictation resumed:

“Do the work, assigned by my Revered Master to you, with your entire heart and mind. This will also bring immense beneficence to you. I had cherished a craving in my life- time to get someone who would make my name alive. That longing has borne fruit; and God has brought this day to my view. Revered Master has also transmitted to you.”

Revered Master’s dictation continued:

“What you have thought to do in the case of respected Al, is just proper. If such a respected saint did not keep his faith (and sincerity) intact, it is regrettable. Our Revered Master has assigned this responsibility to you alone. If you fail to do this job, you will be answerable on the (doom’s) day of settlement of the accounts of good and bad actions during life-time. The distinguishing mark of a saintly person is that coming-close to him/her) the mental activity would get suspended without causing any pain or shock. (The plan was brought to vision). It is brought to your vision so as to sharpen your superior- most remembrance of Master (Shabda) in your heart, and what I had mentioned yesterday, I have brought to your actual experience. The result is that every particle of your body is experiencing the force of the Ultimate Being, and is oriented to It. In fact, this is the purpose of such remembrance (Shabda or Ajapa). If mere repetition of the sound ‘Ram’ (or Om) had been the purpose, even the parrot would have got benefitted. M1 has also to perform this masterly job of training: he should make a note of it. The method of creating this condition is the same as the one Ram Chandra has adopted. To tell the truth, Nature is moulding you (Ram Chandra) to that state. My part has been just that of an instrument: it is all the effect of Revered Master’s blessings.”

13th August, 1944:

Revered Master brought me to a lower level on my request during yesternight. His dictation in the morning:

“The events of last night are praiseworthy. I brought you to a lower level on your request. When you like, I will take you up again. Your full-fledged engagement was distasteful to me; but due to love, I was not saying (or doing) anything about it. There is no deterioration in your status even now; only orientation has been reduced. If that condition had continued for some time more in you, even the highest saint or a person of very high approach, so to say, would have been unable to tolerate your transmission. You would have become unfit to transmit to anybody for even a single minute.

You were going to the state that comes after physical dissolution. You would have lost the sense of proper estimation; and the same condition would have prevailed that comes after total union (or togetherness) with the Ultimate. Then you would have become incapable of my work. Your body also would not have worked for long; and even a little push would have made you fly out of the cage constructed out of physical elements. I think there is no example of this (level of) spiritual progress; and even our Elder Sages are proud of it. Your level of progress, anyway, shall be in safe deposit with me. It is a sacred trust in my custody. At the end, my condition had also come to be just this, but you have acquired it even at the beginning. I had comprehended (in my own case) that total union was at hand; and then I had entered into it all at once. You do not need to do that. What I have left in you purposefully, was not there in me, i.e. stubbornness etc. It is necessary to keep it there in order to make you retain your body. You should not let repentance or sense of guilt enter your mind on this account. I am responsible for everything. Everything will be occurring at the right moment. You have not been deprived of anything: it (your condition) has rather been enhanced. Only the shape has been altered, i.e. its direction has been oriented downwards as well. That was your practice of a life-time, which boiled up all at once, on being opened; and you are not at fault about this. I have already bestowed on you everything; and elders too have not left anything wanting. Now you have been brought only to the point that everything remains within your control. If you like to give little, you are capable to give only that much; and if you feel inclined to give much, that is also to be possible. Earlier,

this thing was beyond your control. Whomsoever you would give, he got flooded up all at once; and beyond that there lurked the danger of his brain being shattered. MI earned quite a lot of benefit from this condition, even though limits were also kept into consideration. It was difficult to bear it for anybody else; and beyond this he (MI) too would not have derived benefit. As such your prayer to reduce the state was most appropriate. If you had not desired me to reduce it, I would never have brought you to a lower state, whatever it might have cost me.

Now, this has caused no loss to you; but I have gained. I will take you to that state with the same amount of orientation, whenever you so desire; and I will bring you back again to this present state, whenever you ask for it; and will keep you there as long as you my like to be there.”

"During the annual function, if need arises, I will establish you by myself at that point; and according to need, you will stand at that point by yourself. However, you will not stay there. After completing the work, you will return to your present position. That was my way of functioning also, during my life-time; but I had full control over everything, while you got out of control. Your orientation to anything, once developed, becomes difficult to remove or turn away. That is your nature; and that alone became the cause of your progress. It was God's immense Grace that you have remained oriented to the Ultimate Purpose. If orientation had been to something else, there would have been the same amount of sharpness in that as well. Your simplicity served as a veil to your riches. This was a safety (valve), which was bestowed by Nature as a help to the fulfilment of my purpose. Many wealthy persons came to me, but nobody except you could progress. This is a matter of experience; I am telling you: one should not expect much from them (i. e. wealthy people). When one kind of wealth is there, orientation to the other becomes difficult. That is the reason why seekers after God remain worried and upset, and scarce of even ordinary necessities, like food and means of livelihood. This is a general observation: only your case is an exception. Anyway, I am happy that I alone could keep a wealthy person set on the right way. This example will not be found in your genealogy. This was the outcome of my sacrifice. My love is in a state of overbrimming

at this time. So, when you have offered so much of a sacrifice, this condition shall be under your own control, just as in my case. However, your responsibility has increased thereby: take care of that consideration. This same order was issued to me by my Revered Master just now; and compliance of his orders, I take to be my first (and foremost) duty. I am helpless with regard to His order: I shall, no doubt, have full consideration so that you prove fully successful in the fulfilment of your responsibility. Revered Master's heart is full of enthusiasm for you: His love for you is not any less than mine; and even more. He (Revered Master) had especially emphasized training for courage alone; and also filled you with it; and instructed me to leave nothing lacking."

"My intention was that in case my successors could be set right through correspondence, they may be brought to you one by one, and got prepared adequately upto the time of the annual function. That would be of much help to you also. Now you consider God as your helper. I shall prepare M1 by the time of the annual function upto much greater extent. All these have deceived you at the time of need! Had I brought them up just for this? R2 has also proved to be a snake in the sleeve! That alone could be expected from him!! God may save (us) from such morons!!! I shall never give up being with you, whether anybody else remains with you or not. Now I am unable to comprehend as to what device should be put to use. (The plan of their condition was brought to view). You yourself think out and suggest. These people are sitting aside with their own peculiar constructions and notions. Nobody has any concern about anything or anybody: they are intoxicated with gurudom (masterhood). To tell the truth, they are not busy with my work, but engaged in following their own sensuality, and are experiencing the pleasant condition of the same (sensuality), considering it the whole thing: they did not have even a touch of spirituality. That is arrived at, much ahead; and the people following this system, take what comes prior to it, as spirituality proper. I have been telling very often about these (successors): just now, my intention was only to narrate their condition. My very purpose is dead. Respected A1's condition remained good during the night."

14th August, 1944:

Revered Master's dictation:

“SI is amenable to being a slave of CI, so that his (SI) gang may also swell. Nobody is a seeker of Reality. SI considers himself as perfect. There is a secret. When someone imparts training without selfish interest, only then effect is there. This is known as sincerity (Khuloos). Just after my release from physical bondage, you developed cholera. Symptoms had surfaced even earlier in the form of diarrhoea. That was because I had filled you with power all at once, and hence the accumulated dirt of past impressions (Samskaras) had started getting cleansed. This had to be done to make room for that transferred power. This is correct that I remained with you during illness; and made you go through such a terrible disease, without causing pain to you. At that time, morphine-injection should not have been given to you. That was material intoxication, which exercised effect on that process (of cleaning); and delayed your process of recovery: otherwise, power would have got absorbed quickly. You had written about this condition in your diary, viz. that you were experiencing limitless power in yourself after the physical expiry of your Guide. This diary passed through (scrutinizing) notice of some people, and NI's heart picked up a hint. Nobody else could apprehend it: he (NI) possessed the capability to discern (spiritual) togetherness. This happened through lack of precaution. For the future I instruct that a diary of this kind be neither sent to nor mentioned to anybody other than one's guide. M2 is to be particularly notified that he should not reveal his conditions to anybody, other than his guide. For others also, my instructions are the same. My heart is now very sore from such experiences.”

“I have brought your impressions of fulmination and fruition in dreams as well; and their formation had ended much earlier. In your case, very often. I have even used (the method of) their fruition for us both (you and I) together. Just nominally, these (impressions) have been left to keep your life continuing; and certain restraints have been introduced, so that you do not give up your (physical) body. At the point, where you are established, nobody can reach without being cleansed. This is also my invention, as to how one is able to reach that limit, where you are

established, through creation of restraints against impressions. This matter will remain beyond people's comprehension: it is something quite novel. (Plan came to vision: impressions seemed swimming like pieces of cloud, within a boundary). This is the plan of your condition, that is before you. If that boundary gets shattered, there will be immediate flight (out of the body). This is a very subtle subject. People do not possess capability at all, for its comprehension. Now you have found, how few of your impressions still persist, without yielding to the process of fruition: they are rather being provided with (vital) force. (Plan came to view, revealing that an electric like current is penetrating the impressions, to retain their existence). When this in-coming force comes to an end, the fruition of these impressions will get completed, and you will proceed on your journey to the world of Higher Reality (Existence)."

A thought crossed my mind that provision of the (vital) force to impressions can be stopped by applying a certain technique. Pat came the instruction: "Never do such a thing, so as to stop the flow of the (vital) force into impressions. The plan was not brought to your view for this purpose. Leave something at least into my hands: I have to take work from you. As soon as the plan was brought to your view, the particular technique was grasped by you. That is the efficiency of your mind, even though this was 'far from my intention."

MI intervened: "One masterly device must be kept concealed."

Revered Master replied:

"I have not concealed any device from him (Ram Chandra). However, the tendency of his mind will not bring him to acting in that manner. He can be made favourably disposed to anyone through love. There is no stiffness in mental tendency. I do not conceal my devices from anybody, if such a person be available. My heart had become full of Divine Munificence; and the same specialties had started developing. I had brought a condition one day upon you, about which reference has been made earlier. The purpose of that was, not to let even that last bond remains. (Indication to the revelation followed). It refers to your desire to die, you may remember, which was in fact the desire to have perfect

togetherness. Now no bondage remains. The chest is perfectly clean; and whoever likes may observe (and see).

The Divine Effulgence is glimmering in it. So long as the stage of fixed star (Qutub) has not been reached, the capability of imparting training is not really arrived at. The purpose can be achieved, but the right (and capability) to make (somebody) traverse the stages is not there. The meaning of subordinate (or deputy) Qutub (Dhruva) is not what M1 has mentioned, viz. that it means representative of Qutub. Subordination really means that the condition of both (i. e. teacher and disciple) becomes identical.”

“I had been to K.. today. The condition there is (in accordance with the half-couplet): ‘Neither does the (emperor Mahmood) of Ghazni possess that jokeful discernment; nor does the (beloved slave) Ayaaz have that (enticing) curl in his (lovely) tassel of hair (on his forehead).’ N1 is wailing over his own actions. No power is coming to their help. Ruin has started. (The half-couplet refers to the anecdote concerning a famous king of Afghanistan, who was very fond of one of his slaves. The other courtiers became jealous of the slave Ayaaz; whereupon the king demonstrated the superiority of his beloved slave by asking his courtiers one by one to obtain information about a caravan, passing through Ghazni, the capital of the kingdom. All courtiers returned with an answer to only one question, and failed to provide the answer to another question. Only Ayaaz returned ready to answer any question concerning the caravan, even though he had also been sent like all others, with only one question).”

“M1 may use white kernel of green fruit-bunch of lotus- flower during winter. This is a prescription for his ailment, which shall be beneficial to him.”

15th August, 1944:

Revered Master’s dictation:

“I am telling you such secrets of spiritual training, that are beyond grasp and grip of anybody, and will not be found anywhere else. I devoted a lot of precious time of my life in discovering these methods, so that God’s creation be benefitted. My heart was over brimming with love for God’s creation.”

(Hereafter two confidential methods of training were revealed).

“These above-mentioned techniques are secrets of spiritual training. These are not for telling to all and sundry. Neither can this bring benefit, nor would anybody know its worth. These should remain breast to breast with one and only one. N1 never had even an air of such things. B1 has love for you, and sometimes gets oriented to you.”

M1's submission: “(His love is) due to wealth. Has he (B1) ever loved some poor person as well?”

Revered Master's reply:

“Lots of story-telling has been done. However, M1 has suffered much loss due to this habit (of hard-hitting). He should give up this habit. He should speak in a heart-enticing way, but without getting away from truth. He may take me as a model, to know what is what.”

The dictation continued:

“The technique you adopted in the case of respected A1 was new and praise-worthy. Our Revered Master was very happy to observe it. I understand and I trust that nobody can impart spiritual training better than you. This is a Divine Gift. How to offer adequate thanks for this. ‘This virtuous character cannot be achieved by force of arms’ (Persian half-couplet).”

(Hereupon another technique was revealed by Revered Master).

“This technique should not be told to anybody, because people will start using it for pleasure-seeking. This brings immediate effect. This method is not to be told even to preceptors. I assure you that you possess the capacity to complete the whole course of training in just one minute. (The plan came to view). I had kept your training like this from the very outset; and it is the same thing even now. Nobody else capable for this could be available.”

“There is one more reason for your (physical) being in a bad condition. The effect of your ‘balanced state’ (Samya Awastha) has influenced all the organs of your body. Under that influence their activity has also diminished, for example you do not have craving

for food. This is just on account of the same influence. You are in a care-free state to the extent that your attention is not drawn to it (hunger etc.). That same reason is applicable in case of all the visceral organs (and processes connected to them) in your physical body.”

(Hereupon Revered Master dictated a letter, containing significant instructions).

Letter, dictated by Revered Master in reply to the letter of M2, dated

14-8-1944.

Dear mine. Be always secure (and happy). Blessings; The whole text of your letter has been submitted (and read) to Revered Master, and the following is the reply from Him:

“When the stage of merging has started in an aspirant, the familial relationship with the guide begins. This gradually increases to such an extent, as to demonstrate affinity of feeling in the disciple and his guide. Beyond that, the disciple acquires the ability to become guide. If you observe closely, you will find a sort of relationship between me and M1, which will be sufficient for meditation on him. There is a very famous proverb: ‘Hold on to one, and hold on firmly.’ So long as thoughts remain scattered, nothing (significant) can be achieved. The (whole) purpose of (spiritual) training consists in withdrawing thought from all sides, and orienting it in a single direction in such a way, as to enable the power from that direction to flow into that one, who is linked thus (to the Source of Power). There are (differences in) stages of saints, no doubt; but the status of the guide remains highest for the disciple, who has nothing to do with high and low, and should have all his thoughts located on him (guide) alone. What is this trinity in your heart! Have your vision fixed on your purpose!! There can be only one object of (real) love!!! You would know the anecdote that there was no thought except that of Laila in the heart of Majnoon (Qais). Was there any dearth of women, prettier than Laila, during that period? But, whatever benefit, he (Majnoon) derived, came to him from that dark-complexioned ugly (beloved) one alone. To give the heart to anybody other than one alone, is against love: ‘What is love; just belonging to the beloved alone, so

to say; giving one's heart into the hands of another, and feeling non-plussed (as to what has happened)' (Persian couplet)."

"Do you comprehend your guide Ml as imperfect, and incapable of taking you through all the points and stages? If it had been like that, I would never have handed you over to him. It was my own initiative, that reached him somehow. For you any thought, except that of Ml, is improper. Whatever expectations you may have, you should have from him alone; and whoever gives you anything, will give through him alone, I shall also do the same. There is no friend to a disciple except the guide: that is my experience. There may be many to entice the heart; but it is only the guide, through whom the fulfilment of one's purpose can be achieved. As such, you always act on this principle. Therein lies your betterment. The purpose of my thought was only that I submit you to the proper person. You should take him to be everything: I shall say only this much. There should be no occasion for such a complaint in future. Take this as a warning."

"I certainly have affection for you. My happiness consists only in that you love your guide, from whom alone you would get everything. To follow his commands, whatever, is your duty. Remember the (Persian) proverb: 'Colour the bedsheet of your place of worship with wine' (if the guide so commands). The kind of complaints described by you in your letter, are unbecoming of you. I want to make you better; so I have submitted you to a better person. You are not aware of his condition: only I know it well. Remember, I consider him to be mine own. For you, as is the duty of a disciple, it is against human etiquette to create distinction between me and him. You do not know what means and methods for your progress are thought of continuously by your guide: that is his love. Try to merge yourself in him alone: that is to get you everything. He does not possess g! amour: do not be deceived by this. Whatever difficulties IT ay come your way; you refer them all to your guide alone: you have no concern with anything else. Writing poems is something good, but mania for that is bad. Read this letter again and again. It is not an ordinary subject, but the quintessence."

16th August, 1944:

Revered Master's instructions by way of certain explanations:

“Self - contented state (Isteghnea): It is the condition, wherein all impulses become quiet; and all sensei become idle at their own posts, so as to appear inactive. It this condition is due to lethargy; the senses will not seem inactive (or in state of suspension).”

“Code of sensuality (Hadees-e-Nafsa): This applies to somebody getting himself enmeshed like a spider, and the (enmeshing) yam remaining unbroken unless jerked off. The technique, to get rid of it, consists in getting absorbed (in all-engulfing) thought, as soon as the code of sensuality starts to be operative. The thought, herein referred, means that (single) consideration, which one has superposed on everything in one's life. The method of cleaning it consists in breaking its (enmeshing) yarns by (the force of) transmission. This can be used also by oneself. Even great (and important) people fall victims to it. There is one more device to get rid of it, vi z. that these (enmeshing) yarns be merged in one's guide. This is a very powerful prescription, which I had put to use sometime. I had developed this complaint only once during my life-time. The device of merging the (enmeshing) yarns, consists in taking them to have connection to one's guide. This is a prescription, not known to anybody: it is my own invention.”

“One thing more comes to encounter an aspirant on the way to the Destination: he feels a sort of depression in his (spiritual) condition. Very often people bid farewell to practice and meditation in this state. For this, meditation on (Master's) form is a well-tested prescription. In our fold, people mostly give up practice, when this state comes. This state is created, when the condition of the heart starts developing, and effects of Reality begin to descend into it: subtlety starts increasing, and intoxication begins to recede. When this condition starts, the blissful enthusiasm in it should be enhanced, so that the aspirant does not feel the (sting of) defect, which is not a deficiency, in fact. It has very often come to pass that just when this state started to develop, people gave up even tolerating a view of my countenance.

I give my blessings to you that those who will come to you for training, and receive transmission from you, shall step into this state, but will not develop to the extent of starting to make complaints, nor will they come to despise your countenance for that. This state is there in you (The plan came to view), but you never developed this complaint. In fact, this complaint develops in those persons who are not endowed with sufficiently sharp (spiritual) tendencies; and are moving on under lukewarm attachment and secondary considerations. In case of real endowment of genuine spiritual tendency, there is growth of inward liking for sublimity, with the growth of subtle conditions, to the same extent; and he finds the earlier condition manifold grosser in comparison to the present one. You had just this experience at every stage; and finally, the state was such as to have no liking for transmission from anybody (else). There was submission to a sitting as a matter of courtesy; and very often it was avoided. This thing develops in case of advanced sensibility.”

The Master continued dictation, in response to a query:

“SI had no natural inclination in this regard. I had forced him into it. The orientation of the excitement of the emotion of love, he had brought with him, had changed. I alone became available to my Revered Master; and you alone became available to me. I prepared the field for you. You may now pick up out of them, who may be of service to you.

If these people had not been subjected to an unfavourable atmosphere, some of them, or rather a large number of them would have been in a good state. I had filled them with this stuff to the extent that if they had continued with meditation and other practices even by themselves alone, they would have earned quite a lot. Your thought is correct that most of those, on whom I bestowed (spiritual wealth), have not been able to digest it upto now. Once, you reached Fatehgarh at the time of my Father’s Day of reverential oblations. I was busy offering (spiritual) satiation to my father and forefathers, in a room, keeping a mug full of water in front of me. You grasped the technique, just then and there. Now I am telling you what had been left out at that time. In case, God for- ' bid, some aspirant may develop heat in the brain, while receiving transmission, then this method, I have given to you

practically, will be useful. It consists in keeping a glass or mug, preferably of an alloy of copper, brass and a sort of white metal known as Phool, full of water, in front, and then establishing the freshness of that water, in a very subtle form, it may be oriented to the brain of that aspirant two or three times, who will thus be cured (of heat in the brain). This is also the treatment for insanity; but its use is prohibited. This is a good technique for giving benefit to forefathers, by way of external application, but everybody cannot apply it.”

Revered Master’s dictation continued, in response to another query:

“N1 had no knowledge of this technique. He had taken advantage of your revelation, and demonstrated his master-craft. He had structured something to maintain his prestige. It was revealed first of all, to you alone. I had told N1 nothing concerning giving M1 or anybody else permission for initiation: it was all his own construction. Whatever field I had prepared, was spoilt by K.. people. If those disciples had started getting favourable surroundings, just from then onwards, freshness in them would have increased. Now they have to be cleansed of the previous condition that has penetrated their very vital artery, as well as to be given advancement. To cleanse them is not the job of any ordinary personality. I trust that you can perform this job very well. But people need getting oriented to you for that purpose. If you start this work forcibly, i.e. without their getting oriented (to you), then their nervous system will get reduced to pieces; and they will not remain fit to serve my purpose. Materiality has so much infested them, that they no longer have any concern with spirituality: they have come to comprehend its heat as everything. Alas! A half-couplet (Persian) is recalled: ‘Not everybody, who gets his head shaved, knows the intoxication of freedom.’”

“Nobody got the savour of spirituality in the real sense. Had they not been spoilt, many of them would have got it by now. Tell M1 to consider this job as assigned to himself. For that, he may sort out quotations, useful for social get-together, and read it to them. There is no need of fear where truth is concerned. In our circle, only formal adherence to duty has remained: they take a nap and go away. This is a fault of preceptors; and not even theirs,

since they did not have anything more than this themselves. Now they may come forward in the arena: they may just come to compare themselves with you in an open-hearted manner, and then they will realize that they were really under deception. I have bestowed something special on dear Ram Chandra, which is not to be found even in great elder saints, viz. that sitting with him (Ram Chandra) will connect one to such sort of Grace, that there will be neither boredom, nor inclination to run away. That, however, is another matter that somebody may not have Brahma Vidya (Science of the Ultimate) as his fortune, and has come to you only under pressure or threat, and then intend to run away. One thing that is present in him (Ram Chandra), I am telling. The Grace that issues from him, flows in such a way that a person, whose senses have acquired a sleepy condition, may by chance get oriented to somebody in a dream. This thing was present in me. Transmissions of this kind are not available everywhere. Blessed are those, who have the fortune of togetherness with such ones. What more should? I say: experience may be had to speak by itself. (The plan came to view.) This is the condition of Death in life, which is not the fortune of all and sundry. Great saints have gone away yearning for this thing.”

17th August, 1944:

Revered Master's dictation:

“There is another method of deriving the benefit of Grace from me. (Method is given).

This however, shall be kept confidential. There is one thing more about this: only those who have direct connection, and are linked with me, can derive benefit, and not just any Tom, ' Dick and Harry. This method was told to me by my Revered Master. One thing more to it: those who do not know this method, but have the orientation of their thought towards me, (subject, of course, to the condition of love being there) can derive benefit.”

Ml said to me (Ram Chandra): “Here now! I shall rob Lalaji Saheb heartily!”

Revered Master put in:

“He (Ram Chandra) has no need to rob me: an open current flow in his direction. (Pause). Since you were irritable today, I also became irritable. Otherwise, I never mind such small matters. Give up your habit: I do not want irritation to such an extent. Today your irritation continued for quite long: ordinarily it did not go this far. Just now I took your habit into account: you abstain from meals, when you grow angry. If you feel unable to give it up, you surrender this irritation to me. When it is within your capacity to keep cool as well, you should look to it at the time of anger. Anger is not something bad altogether: its use should be legitimate.”

“A human being should structure the principles of life with such a pleasant orientation, as to give a glimpse of all round happy conduct. Moderation will be more beneficial. By this, I mean that keeping the entire army of five senses in moderation, irritation has (also) been retained. I have mentioned the reason (earlier) already. This is a human factor, that sometimes a little force is created in him (Ram Chandra). That is because the seed (of human existence) has not been destroyed.”

The Revered Master, then, referred to some principles of life, to be adopted:

- (1) One should remain involved with caring for and upbringing of children in such a manner that the heart remains unsoiled. The effect of love for them is not to be such as to cause suffering.
- (2) One’s spouse should be made one’s helper, so as to treat oneself as one wheel, and the spouse as the other wheel of the household.
- (3) Relations with people of one’s locality (and neighbourhood) is to be maintained so that they appear to be one’s own, and they consider you also as their own. This very principle be applied in case of friends.
- (4) Bonds with relatives are to be maintained in such a manner as to keep the rope to be felt as disconnected. Under all circumstances, one should join them in their misery and pain; and this should be with, everybody. One should abstain from money-transactions (with them). In case of their need, they be helped with

(only) that amount, which if not returned, would not cause repentance or deterioration in the relationship.

(1) The treatment with one's boss (or seniors in the office) should be such as not to yield any impression of insubordination to him (them); and whatever benefit this (attitude) may bring, is to be considered as coming from God.

(2) One should not tender advice, where one may comprehend it to be not respected. In the event of suggesting medicine in case of serious illness, advice (unsought) should not be offered, unless one comes to trust that the patient is going out of hand. This habit is in abundance in \social circles of) Shahjahanpur.

(3) Personal service should be accepted only to the extent that one may be able to repay as well. Helplessness is a different matter.

(4) One should not yield one's secret to anybody; nor should one arouse belief that something is being concealed from somebody.

(5) One should live a simple life without (undue) attachments.

(6) Keep away from worry, so far as possible. Even when it does arrive, it should be considered to be from the side of God, and He be offered gratitude for it.

(7) Regarding food and drinks, one should develop a flat taste (beyond intense liking and disliking); and consideration of legitimacy of intake be kept in mind.

(8) Everything be surrendered to Master (spiritual guide) -1 do not mean reference to money; and all that may be His, should be treated (and cared for) as something of one's own.

(9) Respect for Master's spouse be maintained, as for a holy elder.

The best thing in this regard is to consider all of them (Master's family) as members of one's own family, and then follow what principles (of family relationship) would permit. This includes Master's progeny as well.

(10) Treatment of the brethren of the Satsang (spiritual society to which one belongs) should be such as to generate pleasantness,

and promote their (spiritual) progress. Direct opposition is something very bad.

(11) It is legitimate to be stubborn with sensuality. You should maintain the same method concerning training of women, which I had adopted: I always remained cautious in this regard.

“I have come to these principles after a lot of. experience. These principles are developed by myself; and I have been mentioning these from time to time; but nobody could adhere to these.”

Revered Master explained:

“Ghous-ul-Aazam is only one to be there (at a particular time). This status does not fall to the lot of all and sundry. Even Ghous remains rare. A little more than these (Ghous) in number, are Qutub-ul- Aqtaab (Dhruadhipati). Qutub (Dhrua), however, are more in number, even though to be counted on fingers. Nature’s entire administration proceeds on through these (functionaries). In ancient times also, when the Hindu system predominated, this same arrangement prevailed; though the method was (slightly) different. Those people, at (he time of need, got oriented to the Ultimate Being (Zaat), and brought Its State into dynamic action. They had a correct estimate of what was needed at a particular time; and asked for Nature’s help just in accordance with that need; and the Power concerned worked directly, as such- The times went on to deteriorating; and those capacities and powers progressively went on fizzling out, so much so that the system itself withered off. Then Nature vibrated in another way, and the system of Sufism started descending into people’s consciousness; and its roots were established. Saints and seers remained coming to impart glow to this progress, off and on. This is, however, a fact that the heights of spiritual eminence, attained by ancient Hindu seers, are now impossible affairs. Their approach was directly to the Ultimate Being; and very often this also happened that through fission of particles of individual existence, direct flight of Self to the Ultimate Being and taking work from It was made possible. Sufism, in comparison to that, is of second order. As the proverb goes, ‘it is better to work without payment, than to remain without work at all.’ Now Nature has taken a turn in that direction; and, as such, that is to be taken as standard. If you ask me to tell you the reality,

I am describing it to you thus: the progress (in spirituality) achieved by Hindu (Vedic) seers has no other example.”

The dictation continued:

“MI had mentioned just now that I have stated somewhere that God does nothing. The condition referring to that statement has been revealed to dear Ram' Chandra; and he has been granted mastery over that condition. He has also been instructed not to reveal plans of this sort in the heart of all and sundry. However, it can be revealed to those who already possess this (capability). Ram Chandra already possessed it; so, it was brought to his comprehension. It is also a secret. To mobilize that element, which is there in Nature in the form of vibration, only that one can be effective, who in himself is endowed with mobility. Many secrets of Nature, with which I was unacquainted during life-time, are now being revealed. To you I have revealed even these. Ghous-ul-Aazam appeared rarely by chance after long periods of time. I had prayed to God for quicker manifestations of the waves of Omnipotent Nature's Grace, which usually took a long time to appear. After lots of reflection and deliberation, I could come to the illumination that it was even now in the hands of such devotees, who have got themselves entirely sacrificed to Him. At that time, this status (Ghous- ul-Aazam) had set in, in my Case; and my heart had got over brimming with love for God's creation. I started enquiring into ways and means; and my Revered Master helped me, to bring me to this day of the emergence of God's Grace.

Only I know the (meaning of) Reality of this status, or else those who have sacrificed themselves unto me. I did not find rest even there; and my courageous steps remained ever-advancing, so much so that the condition even better than that (Ghous-ul-Aazam) came within my control. My heart was pining that all would come to that state; but 'only that occurs, which is in accordance with God's Will' (a half-couplet in Urdu).”

“Dear Ram Chandra also has not been able to grasp the nature of the Reality of this status, on the whole. The reason for this is that this poor dear chap (Ram Chandra) has no spare time to dive into it and collect the pearls to be presented to you people. He is not able even to comprehend his own absorption with work,

which is all for other people's benefit; nor can people conceive as to what pressure is there on his mind to counteract the ills, perpetrated by his rivals (and enemies). I very often have to remove the tiresomeness of his brain. He is doing such work, .as can never be performed by material force. However, I know that he has been brought to physical existence only to expend his heart and mind for the welfare of the same. Nobody except myself can reward him for his work. These are the troubles, connected to being a Master. This status, which people are hankering after, is not something comfortable and easy. At K., permission (to work as a spiritual guide) is available for two hundred rupees. If somebody may perform the above-mentioned job, I am prepared to give many hundreds of rupees to him. Whatever natural good points were found to be present in somebody, I would go on developing these, while N1 went on stifling these. You should adopt my method alone.”

18th August, 1944:

Revered Master's instruction:

“It is human etiquette to consider oneself as devotee and Him (God) as the object of devotion. People forget this status, and treat God as an instrument to serve their ends. This same illustration can be applied to the gods and guides. I have already told you about this. Take the example of people starting to offer flowers to my photograph and decking it with garlands, or your clerk starting to worship the wooden footwear of his guru. These examples fall under the category of slavish animal-worship. In fact (in such cases), the attachment does not remain oriented to that, whose shadow or symbol is taken as concrete object; and Reality goes out of view. With passage of time, worship of just such concrete objects comes into vogue. Discriminative capacity is that when the current that connects Master and devotee is attempted to be comprehended. This is the crux of the matter. This constitutes the definition of the refined form of discrimination. Everything else is subordinate to this.”

19th August, 1944:

Revered Master said:

“It is my ardent desire that you have one more person like M1 (to help you).”

I suggested respected K1, whereupon Revered Master remarked: “He is not worthy of it. He has a peculiar brooding nature, due to which he does not feel inclined to do anything. As such, he will prove to be useless. If, however, he promises to be active and takes up the work (quite willingly and respectfully), there is no harm (to have him as your helper).”

Revered Master’s dictation continued:

“Whatever works, I have committed to pen, I have expanded such topics therein, as are beyond comprehension for the common people. When the publication of these works may be intended, and taken up, I will tell (you) everything one by one-wherein my originality may consist, and where I had merely expanded some point: both will be beneficial, anyway, if somebody puts them into practice. I had intended to publish them; but could not do that due to shortage of funds. Publications that have come out posthumously, are against my heart’s liking. The intentions at the back of bringing out these (few) publications was something different: it was with a view to enticing people, and demonstrating their own self- importance and so-called capability. The right to publish it, and to make all other necessary arrangements, belongs only to you. I have prepared very precious notes, on seeing which people will feel bewitchingly astonished, these are all in possession of J1.

In this regard, my experience was so sharp that I never failed to eke out the real thing in the right way: no trace of doubt or fault remained thereupon. M1 did very well to obstruct publication of those manuscripts; and he should remain doing likewise, so long as the ripe time for their publication is not arrived at. I have pushed down (worldly) wealth also along with spirituality towards you. As such, you will face no trouble in publishing it; and this expenditure will be met with just through minor income (from unexpected sources). For this job, I cannot think of anybody better than M1. He may consider it as service to me. God will recompense him for it.”

“The first thing required (for this purpose) is that your dear brother JI come? under your control. Then this (publication of my works) will become possible. I understand that you are quite ready to sacrifice not only money but even your own being for my sake. But I have brought so much of burden (of responsibilities) on you, that God will fulfil it. A single person cannot do all the work. It is necessary that he: should have helpers. The work that nobody can do has been assigned to you; and the work that you are unable to do, should be allotted to other people. Just now, I am not able to demonstrate my open heart as to show how much affection I have for Ml. Other people did not cooperate (with you), Of else this same position had been there in case of them also.’ I understand that he (Ml) is old and age-worn, as well as troubled over family-affairs; but along with this, I also say that these conditions are proving to be beneficial for him.: I have made provision and am making arrangement for him:) he should not feel depressed at all. Time is a prime factor for all that happens. Does not the biography of Shri Ram Chandraji (hero of Ramayana) bear out that propounders of an era (in human history) are not spared of misery (during life-time)? The case of dear Ram Chandra is a special one, which cannot be taken for comparison everywhere. If Ml requires wealth, I can bestow it (on him), although I have made provision for his maintenance, which will come to light quite soon. Just possible, it would have already come to light. I repeat that both kinds of wealth (worldly and spiritual) are not available together. My own example is there: While God bestowed on me everything by way of employment, I could not earn a fortune to leave behind, and even was in debt at the time of leaving the world. For Ram Chandra, our Revered Master had ordained that he be made full with both kinds of wealth. The reason for. this was that in spite of having everything, he considered himself poor and without resources.

He never paid attention to wealth; and considered me alone as his own. Whatever God bestowed on him, and whatever more shall be bestowed on him, was taken by him for the service of others. I remember, he once was in such strait circumstances that he could not arrange for even clothes for his wife and children, but he did not pull away from helping others, who needed it. The question here is not whether he was right or wrong. Together with

spirituality, his wealth is also improving. I have not just stated all this; but have also transmitted, as was my wont to do. To bring it home to M1, I am telling that it is rare to find a person, among wealthy people, who' would make progress in the transcendental sphere as well; and if such one is available, that one would happen to be so full (of spiritual wealth), that a like example would be hard to find. This is God's gift: 'Being the chosen one, he has come to be grand and great' (a half-couplet in Urdu)."

"Now I am telling you about crookedness of (world and) times, which is a matter of experience. Ram Chandra considered everybody as his own, but the poor fellow was never given anything in return. If something was given some time, it was soiled with personal selfishness. Nobody had love for him in the real way; and everybody made him a beast of burden: I leave out the person of M1. He was ready for every kind of service in accordance with his capacity. Nobody appreciated (even) this; and it is so entertaining to note that inspite of his sharp comprehension (of everything) he did not allow any (adverse) thought (against those people), and considered himself to be weak. The example of my son J1 itself is there before us: he (J1) did not love him (Ram Chandra) to the extent that he deserved. I can say with full authority that even if the whole world may leave him (J1) in the lurch, lie (Rani Chandra) will not get away from him: this he (J1) also feels. This (demeanour) does not behove J1's dignity. He is my son; so, I have the right to tell him by way of an advice to bring him to the right path. All others, I have left to themselves."

"Now tell, why a person of such a condition would not get Nature's help! My purpose is not to indulge in useless flattering entertainment, but to enable them (all) to benefit from the knowledge of the characteristics of a rare person of highest cultural attainments. One thing, left out of the subject, under reference above, is to be noted, that, while going through all these practices, he (Ram Chandra) had rendered his senses so much dormant, that he had no impression even, with regard to these (senses). This is a very special point. My purpose, here, is not only to praise him - though in reference to considerations of his praise, however much may be said will remain insufficient. My purpose is,

that people may try to become like that, so as to attract and orient Revered Master's Grace towards them.”

“About following the principles of life, already dictated, only one method is best, but it is very difficult as well. That (method) consists in silencing One's entire passionate orientations to the extent of having no one's concern with anybody (and anything). The taste of this (condition) will become available sometime in the company of dear Ram Chandra; and it has already been available (with reference to Ml, I mean).”

During conversation between Ml and myself (Ram Chandra), there was reference to the view expressed by respected Ghaffar Saheb that the soul (and world) is the Command of God. Revered Master pointed out: “Your thought is perfectly correct, that with regard to these two words, it is wrong to put the word ‘Command’ prior to the words ‘God’. If in ordinary conversation the expression ‘God's Commandment’ be used in place of ‘Commandment of God’, then this knotty problem will get (automatically) solved. The dictionary meaning of God (Khuda in Arabic) is That which has come of Itself, and everything else has developed afterwards. When something, containing Royal Power in It, is manifested, what issues from It for the first time to run the whole business, is Command. Mohammedans have named it (in Arabic language) as ‘Kun’. Hindus have termed this Power, following just after God, as ‘Maya’ or ‘Mahamaya’. That ‘Kshobha’ (stir), which appeared in the Ultimate Being, can be said to be motionless movement in itself. Vibrations started just on its appearance. This is the final (or initial) state of Maya; and then, there appeared Powers for maintenance, growth, mergence and creation etc. The topic is becoming lengthy; and I am putting it briefly thus: the Power that manifested first of all, just after God, was the very Command of Original Intent (Will at its base or root). What do I say beyond this. Your thought recorded what had never struck anybody's thought, thus far. May God provide you with the opportunity for service of God's creation! May you keep my name alive!! Be it so !!!”

Revered Master's dictation continued:

“I jumped out of joy to hear this; and felt like sacrificing myself on this subtle point. You will be instrumental in solving

such tangles as would make people stupefied. Develop the habit of expanding points. Go on reading; that will bring about everything. I permit you to go through any literature, whatsoever. There is no restriction on you regarding reading newspapers. You will select only those topics in it, that will be of benefit to you. But this permission is not for everybody; nor should you give permission for it. Your worship is following my way; and this thing has been there for quite a long time. You have the effect of your father's (intellectual) capability also, in you. From him you have acquired not only this effect: you have inherited a few of his shortcomings as well."

"Alas, nobody gave a fillip to this element in you ! If I had not been the Guide, people would have brought you down to the nethermost spheres. If this would, per chance, have happened, I am unable to express, what feeling would have sprouted in my heart. This element was attempted to be solidified. The fools did not comprehend that if my successor acquired a better shape, it meant a good reputation for them as well; and this was their duty even to structure him so as to make my name shine. This is what they have given me in return for my services. This major sin can never be pardoned. To whom shall I wail (and weep) for what has been done to me? There is no example of this in the world. The branch of the genealogy of our Revered Master was to end by you. They (of K.), anyway, did not leave anything unavailed. This dictation you bring to the notice of my adopted son (Kl). I just remember a proverbial quotation used by ladies - 'Bring me up, bring me up; I shall be death to thee' (Hindi proverb). This came perfectly true in my case. Whoever may like would verify this. It was God's Grace that He kept my name alive. My principle in life remained - 'God's Beneficent Grace is for those who patiently depend on Him, and rest contented in Him' (Arabic)."

"You openly throw a challenge at the annual function, and let me see who has the mettle to face you. I shall set you up at that time in such a state, that nobody will be able to stand the force of your single glance. It is that force, from which I brought you down at your request. If it had continued in that state of progress, then nobody would have the capacity to stand it. Even now, it is in your hand to move on to that state; but I do not- let such thought arise

in you. At the time of need, however, there is my force as well with you, always, even beyond that condition. May God give no opportunity to me for the demonstration of that Power. I promise to amply recompensate Ml for his labour.”

“Write to SI and CI that if they do not improve their attitude within a week, I will snatch away their entire spiritual sublimity. The content of communication to them should be like this: ‘Your actions are becoming burdensome oil the heart. Now patience has got exhausted. So, you are warned to improve your conduct within a week’s time. Else, I have orders to snatch off your entire spiritual sublimity; and will do likewise. Thereafter you will become deserving of more punishment. Take it as a strict warning. Your permission (for preceptorship) has got snapped; and this is outcome of your actions. Diplomacy is effective in case of one, who has no eyes. (This last sentence is to be written to CI only.) Sign it : Servant of Master - Ram Chandra.’ Both letters are to be sent per registered post. If they do not behave (and improve), I will order you on Sunday to snatch off (their spiritual sublimity).”

“Prophet Moses had seen Divine Lightning; and there is a lot of praise in anecdotes about it. To a keenly observant eye, however, fit was the superfine state of phenomenal reality (Maya). It has acquired so much praise only because a prophet had experienced it. It was the Lightning Flash of that point where the Ultimate Being gets reflected at the point of para-phenomenal reality (Mahamaya). If one would proceed further to observe the end-state of vales and dales, one shall get refreshed. Here all subjects come to an end: Only a sort of flow remains, which is the gateway to the Ultimate Being. ‘Delhi (Destination) is yet far ahead’ (proverb). You had an intense desire to have a vision of this Divine Lightning, and since you had the desire in a very special way, I was compelled to bring it to your view, even though you had already gone ahead of it. My intention in dictating this to you is that you come to comprehend that this thing is of no significance as against what you have already acquired. This is the fact that I have described. Beyond this, the tongue becomes inadequate to narrate. This topic, I have dictated from the status of Ultimate Being: the purpose was only to bring it to your comprehension. Ml has also stepped beyond it. No other disciple has reached this point yet. You can get orders

directly also, but there is no capability to grasp that. Such capability will develop after leaving the physical body: it is impossible just now.”

“My being has always remained free from religious bigotry and partiality. To tell the truth-, there have been so many Moses in India. One special reason for the downfall of Hindus happened to be the development of liking for miracles among people, which had come to be the only Reality for them.”

22nd August, 1944:

Revered Master’s dictation:

“Your connection with the Ultimate Being has gone very deep; and' your steps are going still ahead. Now you are coming up to my own state; and have (almost) come up to it. If the earlier condition, had continued, it would have been difficult to bring you up to the present state.”

“Among present people, there are some good people also; and some will side-track you as well: you will have no concern with them. M1 may continue his prayers for R5; otherwise, I will issue orders to you at last. I am advising you about one thing: when a thought about some good work comes to you, do it immediately, without waiting in the thought that there is still much' time, and the work may be completed later on.”

To my submission, by way of inquiry, concerning Lord Vishnu (God of maintenance and preservation) sleeping, reclining on the Shesa Naga (thousand-hooded serpent coiled to form the bed) in Kshira Sagar (ocean of milk) and Lakshmi (Vishnu’s wife and Goddess of wealth and prosperity) massaging the Lord’s feet to relieve Him of tiredness, Revered Master replied: “All this is a metaphor. Ocean of milk refers to the ocean of spirituality, and serpent symbolizes carnal desire. The phenomenal reality (Mahamaya) is the Goddess of prosperity (Lakshmi), who is massaging the Lord’s feet. One who acquires control over carnality, finds Maya as slave. On your request, I have given meaning (to the prevalent artistic expression); and all else is the machination of the priests for establishing their prestige (among masses): there is no form like that even anywhere in Nature. As the times degenerated,

grossness went on increasing to the extent that stones crushed the intelligence of the people, who started treating these stone to be everything. That is the sign of degeneration. The root of mind can be taken to be Mount Kailash (abode of Lord Shiva, the God of destruction, and even of the entire drama of this world and that), wherefrom carnality (source of all creation) derives light.”

“Cl has taken all the wares as carrying the same price-tag. I remained helping him, when (his) opponents were at their zenith. Even if he had no knowledge of anything special about you, he ought to have regard for what you had to say, at least by way of your being his brother, and treat it as an opportunity to be happy. He should have looked upon all associate brethren, with an affectionate eye, and rendered help to enhance their merits. If there was any special merit in somebody, he (Cl) would have better tried to develop it through prayer to God; and if that somebody was telling something for his benefit, he ought to have (paid heed to it and) accepted it. There is no question of importance here. All are equal in my view, or in other words, I look upon all with an affectionate eye. He (Cl) should have followed just this. I have stopped going to him; and it is a matter of great regret, that even my own people come to create obstacles in (the progress of) my work. If somehow these people (SI and Cl) had availed of an opportunity (o be in your company, they would have derived the fulfilment of their life. If they had the heart, and had no chance of coming (to you), I would have ordered you even to go to them.”

Revered Master answered a query about the condition of Ml:

“Everything tries to merge in its reality. If a person is of an adequate level of progress, he will have the experience. His condition is of high approach, and is bringing the tidings of his relation to the Ultimate Being. However, this is a shoreless ocean. This (condition) should not be taken to be adequate. There is no limit to progress. Even after covering the entire way, there still remains (possibility of progress).”

23rd August, 1944:

Revered Master’s dictation:

“I had raised you to the status of fixed star (Qutub or Dhruva), and taken you still higher up, in my life-time; but had not made the feel of it available to you. The discerning eyes of people also remained blurred. Now there is a start for M1. Complaint is undue, for else, it will be thanklessness for the gifts. There is a whole mountain concealed (from sight) behind a dried blade of grass. The condition of fixed star is very close, in contact with man. This is a secret, which nobody knows. I have already told you about it. It needs being kept confidential. Learn from my experience.”

“Are you now happy that I have accepted (and fulfilled) your request! His (M1) step is going ahead. The doorway to progress has opened. The height of status will be attained in accordance with the degree of self-control, he will impose on himself. However, do not make such recommendation anymore for anybody. It is a matter, here, of things going out of hand. Everybody is not deserving of this status. Even for M1, I had to adopt so many devices, so that he may not be out of control. There is no complaint concerning love; I have just a complaining sort of nature: and that is all! B1 is not at all fit for this status; and you should never waste your efforts on him. Even to R2, if he comes on the right way, this status should not be conferred in haste. There is need to work after a lot of due thought and consideration. The world is very crafty. You consider everybody as clean of heart, which is not the fact. I repeat: powers are not to be conferred, unless I issue orders. Sometimes you become out of control. Give up this habit.”

I prayed, whereupon Revered Master continued: “I shall look to it, and will not let you go out of control. At present, there is nobody, on whom these powers be conferred. Take it as a strict warning. When somebody is there, I will tell you. If you sometimes suspect someone (to be deserving), seek my verification. In this circle there are persons, only to be counted on fingers (very rare), who may be able to make good progress on the way to God. The rest are there just in a routine-way. The (rare) few ones will be those, who will be inclined to you; and they will have no personal (selfish) purpose. Experience shall tell; and I shall also be telling you. This duty, assigned to you, is not an ordinary job. Those

having exceptional status, have exceptional troubles (in store) for them.' (A half-couplet in Urdu)."

"My times were good; but yours are not so good. That is why you have been filled up with every power; and every power is at the zenith, at its own respective level. This has not fallen to anybody's lot until now;' and there is little hope even in future. For you, Nature had compelled me; otherwise, this thing would not have come to your lot. I have little hope that you find a person of this much culture. Difference will certainly be there. I have mentioned somewhere that my Revered Master found me, and I found you. This only means that there is hard hope of finding someone to this extent in future. Bad times are approaching; restlessness of mind (in people) is waxing: there is need for a very cautious approach. There should, however, ~be no pessimism with regard to God's Grace: He can do everything.

This alone was my principle. The people have not learnt loving as yet. Some little progress is being effected through forced stuffing alone. There is no need of admitting a large number of people in our fold (Satsang). Those coming in, should be right ones, and they should not cause a bad name to you. Whatever I did was done in obedience to my Revered Master's commands. You should obey my orders. You had the thought that you would not initiate people as far as possible. This thought is correct to some extent, because responsibility is enhanced in such cases. I appreciate the thought that only when a person has sufficiently advanced, and the apprehension of a fall is overcome, then alone he (or she) should be initiated. I have felt very happy to comprehend this thought; and for the rest, this alone is my will as well. However, in case of those, whom I have already initiated, you consider it your duty to take care of them. That remains service to myself.

However, I order also along with this, that those, who are worthless, should be excluded from this circle, so that they do not prove to be the cause of ill fame; and that (exclusion) will relieve me also of the burden of my duty to them. (This is to be written in the notebook with red ink, so that it should strike the eye immediately when needed.) Some, among these, have already gone astray; and some others have fallen victims to Nl. Have little expectations from them. I shall give hints, so that there is no

mistake. These, that I have already pointed out, are not needed to be included. In case I feel the need, I will have the announcement made at the annual function as well. You keep all the notes ready. During the annual function, attempt will be made to keep you free from difficulties; and if, per chance, some (difficulties) come up, there is no need of getting upset. I shall take care of everything.”

“About bad company, you have mentioned just now of hearing the sound of the particular musical; instrument (Tabla) while sleeping today. It was really (the effect of) an impression, which I have cleaned off. Here, you have seen the effect of company. What do I say about those, whom an idea about it does not strike even! In most cases there is no sense at all of discrimination about good and bad company. Any company, which is against one’s idea (concept of good) on minute observation, is harmful. The atmosphere of the place (A.), where you had been, was very bad. Every particle was affected by carnal force. However, it is also my assertion that another person would not have recorded (got influenced by) the impression, as quickly as you did. It is another matter that you did not submit to that impression; and extirpated it. To be away from bad company as far as possible, is a matter of duty for everybody: helplessness is another matter. In fact, there is no prohibition for you about going to such places, because your power shall annihilate that impression from the atmosphere; but just think, how harmful it would be for others, if they follow your example. You, I had purposefully taken through that place, on your way to the wholesale market. The atmosphere of that place was extremely obnoxious, and I liked to get it cleaned. If others, who are just beginners, were with you, I would not have issued this order at all. This means that everybody should take care to avoid bad company.”

An essay, (dictated by Revered Master)

“The world is a place containing narrow and dark ions, but there is a flicker in them, which means that Maya (principle of gross activity) and Purusha (inactive witnessing agent) are present together right from the beginning of creation till now. The wise far-sighted people, desirous of progress on the Divine path, have in their view only that part of the ions, which contains light; and they derive benefit. As against this, those, involved in worldliness and

useless intricacies, remain in touch with the dark sphere, present in the ions; and continue admitting effects concerning the darkness, in themselves, causing their entanglement from top to toe in a sort of darkness, which condition gradually rises up to acquire solidity. One admits impressions in oneself in accordance with one's thoughts, and imbibes power accordingly, to the effect that one gets enveloped in that darkness, and slowly the Mayavic impressions take hold of him completely. Now these particles, which one has accumulated in oneself, go on developing on getting a favourable climate. The impression of this material, which affects the particles of one's body, gets focused on that fine covering of the brain, known as membrane in the English language. When this effect is started, then that part of the brain, wherein the kernel (of intelligence) is lodged, gets influenced, and reflections start getting imprinted. When these acquire sufficient depth, and the victim of this process, on account of habit-formation, begins acquiring external influences with rapidity, then these things start becoming impressions (Samskaras). When the in-flow of these things continues, and no such association is available, as may obstruct the pulling on of this thought, then one's condition grows still faster, and one goes on regressing from bad to worse. If, somehow by good fortune, one may come across a perfect Master of highest calibre, He would start illuminating, through His transmission, the state of utterly blind darkness, which one has accumulated in oneself. Then, the aspirant's thought starts getting transformed to light instead of darkness, which results, from the very beginning, in the power, busy attracting darkness thus far, now starting to admit light into oneself. Thus, one's improvement is effected (and the goal achieved) by and by, which means that one starts moving from darkness to light; and that one's own power commences to work in that direction."

Revered Master continued:

"This is Nature's secret, described to you, so that you avoid things, which are harmful; and adopt what is beneficial. This essay be noted down in my notebook also, to make people know, how I continued instruction even after the end of my life. In this essay, the initial few words are mine, but the rest of this whole subject is his (Ram Chandra's) alone. The words used for ordinary persons,

should not be used in respect of the reverential address to Master; nor is He to be comprehended to be of that status. Such comprehension will be an indication of one's being a slave (animal) of Master (Guru pashu)."

26th August, 1944:

Revered Master's instructions (with regard to the fatal illness of His son J1 at Fatehgarh, who expired on 28-8-1944):

"Ml should go to Fatehgarh; and tell them that he had been there under (my orders). Send him with Rs. 150. I did not consider it proper for you to go there. Whatever amount of money be needed there, should be brought to your notice. You do not be perturbed. While living in this world, miseries are bound to come; and the results of (ripening) impressions (Samskaras) are essentially to be suffered (Bhog). An advice: 'that person is superior who keeps himself free from every work, even while performing every job'."

Revered Master instructed Ml:

"Tell J1 that Ram Chandra was not permitted to come, due to pain and weakness. This has been done under the consideration that one worry (for J1's illness) is already there, and a second one concerning his (Ram Chandra's) weakness be not created. Even though he (Ram Chandra) was ready to come, the attack of (acidity) pain being severe, I have stopped him (from taking up the journey). I (Ml) have been instructed by Lalaji Saheb to come to you (J1); and He (Lalaji) has further instructed that about money, nobody except Ram Chandra should be notified."

Dictation to me (Ram Chandra) continued:

"Cl has got his head so much upturned that he does not consider man as a human being; and is assuming himself as the god of spirituality. What treatment he has meted out to you, has caused displeasure of even the elders (of yore). Now, he should beware of the danger to his well-being. I have granted that power to you yesternight, which will make his intoxication wither out, when used by you. Now you have the power to snatch away, in one second, the spiritual condition of any saint of even the highest approach. Let me see, on what basis he can now retain it (his spiritual condition). Now I do not like to see his face. The

impertinence, committed by him is not of an ordinary nature. Whatever he has written, has been written to me. I do not like to retain such person, in my chain of connection, anymore: I have to say only this much about him; and I wait for the second one (SI).”

28th August, 1944:

Revered Master's instructions:

“During the night you transmit to associate brethren: this may occasionally be missed. You also are oriented to me for transmission to them individually: this too is not needed every day. One day in a week is sufficient. If you like to transmit to somebody sometime, however, there is no prohibition for that, as well. “To my inquiry (about individual associates), Revered Master continued: “S6 is a good person, but has no penetrating intelligence. He is akin to S2. S5 can develop well, if he may find your association. M5 is obliged to C1 for permission (for preceptorship); but there is no effect on him of his permission. If he comes to have faith in you (i.e., if he believes you to be my representative and successor), and acts on your instructions, he will make good progress. Wait just now for granting permission to him: it will be looked into after the declaration. R3 is one of the better persons. He is simple, as well as having good faith. About permission (for preceptorship), I have become a bit strict. I am feeling hesitant to grant permission to him, just now: if sometime permission will be granted to him, it will have to be conditional permission. You will have to be strict with people. What strictness is to be dealt, I shall tell you. Events are occurring with rapidity; and opposition to you is increasing. They will suffer the consequences of their doings. C1 is not a person of good pedigree (Plan came to view): the real one does not commit a fault. Just on account of this (principle), the elders (Masters) of yore regarded the people of the priestly class as deserving to impart this (spiritual) training; but now, amalgamation has started in their fold as well. This is the trend of the times.”

On inquiry from me (Ram Chandra) Revered Master said: “Let the time come: all this will settle down alright. Go on with whatever you are doing. Now, I am going to J1. Take care of your health.” (J1 expired this very day; but the news arrived later.)

30th August, 1944:

Revered Master's instruction:

“Snatch away the spiritual condition of C1 totally today. (The method is given) I do not like to retain such a person in line of my system. Cut off the connection, and remove his name from the list of the initiated persons; and make a declaration of this at the annual function. I have disclaimed him. I shall tell you, what more may be needed at the annual function. He has committed mistakes time after time, and I have been pardoning him; but this mistake is not worth pardon. I will withdraw all prosperity, bestowed on him by me. Finish this work today.”

To inquiry concerning J1, Revered Master ordained: “Don't be perturbed. Only pray.”

Revered Master continued the instruction:

“Write to S2: ‘I had sent a letter on 3-7-'44. You have not paid attention to it. I understand, that what was written, was for your good. The times are now different. There has been quite a long period of inattentiveness. Now our cries (of grief) have reached the high heavens; and the required result has found expression, bringing about a favourable wind. If at this opportunity, you fail to act cleverly, there will remain no occasion to complain. The letter, sent earlier, deserve^ (proper) action. Now, please, make a start. If one who strayed away in the morning, returns home in the evening, he is not to be branded as lost. One more opportunity is being provided (to you). God knows, what has happened to our spiritual circle (Satsang), that beneficial things too are taken to be unpleasant! The reason for this can be either that people have considered themselves to be all in all, or taken their brethren to be insignificant. One should adopt the quality of the swan (to have milk and leave water). If this characteristic does not develop, one has not obtained training from one's Master in the real sense. It was His benevolence and mercy to have made you a representative; and this is also within His right to pull you down from that status, whenever He likes to do this. I want only this much to say. Further, it is for you to decide. There is benefit in accepting; and something beneficial should be accepted by everybody.’ I have kept SI still apart. He has not yet advanced his steps to that (intolerable) limit.”

Revered Master's dictation wants on:

“Whichever side my eye goes, it meets regret alone. I feel puzzled as to what should be done. If I come to be strict, it is not my wont. As a matter of helplessness, anything may come to be done: that too through your agency. R2 has no doubt come up well, but he is not to be trusted yet, as he has promised to go once (more) to the satan (Nl). On return from there (K.), you weigh him. Change of events is occurring in such a way, that it is not possible to form any definite opinion. That day, you told R2 somewhat more (ban what was necessary. I did not take it ill. The occasion was just such. Do not reveal your secret; and maintain pretence.”

Revered Master went away, after intimating:

“For some days, I could not go to the higher world. Events are taking shape, somewhat producing pessimism. I feel and understand that I become oriented wholly to you alone, and be contented that I could construct only you. I shall wait upto the time of the annual function. Thereafter, I shall obtain Revered Master's permission, and do just like that. The labour that you have put in during this period, is sufficient to turn even stone into wax. Tell M1 to enlarge his nursery after due consideration. I have had a lot of experience. No need of filling up (the folds) with cotton-cleaners and yarn- weavers (uncultured crude people). He (M1) should admit lions. If he is able to build up even one lion, his responsibility is over. I permit you to set up your world (circle of practicants) separately, but remember the instruction, I have tendered to M1 (just now).”

To my query whether I start this work after the declaration, Revered Master continued in reply: “I have doubt about the declaration even. May God bring success to you. I understand, even your aunt (Revered Master's wife) will not like this thing (declaration and work). The times are not those of beneficence. Alas, nobody understood your heart. I am just transferring to you all that I have, and all that I received from elders (Masters) of yore.” Revered Master asked me to sit with closed eyes. I obeyed. It was 2.15 P.M. The instruction continued: “Today, in the evening, you forego meals; and take only milk with candy (Misri). I have decided your fate today. Whoever may like to derive benefit, be oriented to

you. The entire responsibility is now on you alone. I have prepared you today for everything. If this same state of affairs (in my fold) continues, you snatch away (the spiritual condition) from all, and cut off (their) connection; and inform (them) that they may now search out some other home (fold). Those people, who come to have faith in you, are an exception to this (general instruction). You snatch away (the spiritual condition) from those people also, who happen to obstruct your work. No need to have any mild consideration in case of anybody. I promise that the connection, cut off by you, will not be capable of being restored by anybody (else), and the elders (Masters) of yore shall be in agreement with this. I have included B1 also in this, so that, in case it is needed, this same action be dealt to him as well. Even his Revered Master will not be able to restore the connection, cut off by you; nor will any power be capable of saving him from (his spiritual condition) being snatched away. You are (now) in possession of the Power, that cannot come to anybody's comprehension; nor is there anything equal to It. People have thought it all to be a joke. Eyes are needed to see you; and such eyes have not been available to anyone as yet. Moreover, people are getting deceived by your simplicity as well."

Revered Master's dictation went on:

"You have developed M1. Try to develop one more person like this. Two persons will be adequate to carry on my work. All of my representatives have come out to be worthless. One among them (referring to M1) has, anyway, improved; and that was the effect of your company. Moreover, he (M1) also has affection for you; and you should feel obliged for this affection. He (M1) has come off very well. May God bestow such progeny on none, as mine has turned out to be!"

I (Ram Chandra) submitted: "I shall try in every way, so that my brethren may improve."

Revered Master said:

"Your intention is good, but what shall I do about their not getting oriented to you. For this reason alone, the declaration is needed even more, so that people may not remain in the dark. All this is an arrangement just for their benefit; for otherwise, you

have already become structured. Your condition of health; and your labour of this sort inspite (of health)! can give only this in return!! Alright, I am going now!!! Finish the work concerning Cl just today. If anything, be needed, you consult me.”

2nd September, 1944:

Revered Master's dictation:

“I left no stone unturned to remove the feeling of regret (for the supposed lack of progress) in Ml's heart. For the whole night the same condition (of regret) continued, and even now, there is the same condition in him. The tide of power has been demonstrated. Now hear about my experience. In spite of possessing all powers, I considered myself as an insignificant servant (of my Lord). I remained subject to the wave (of His Will), happy in every state, whatsoever; and offered gratitude (to Him for all of it.) This resulted in every work getting automatically completed, even though I did not have to give my thought (or attention) to it. This was an instrument, which I had adopted after a lot of experience (trial and error). In this, there remains no apprehension of error.

Moreover, it is human culture to be subject to the wave (of God's Will): this is real service (to the Lord). Is it not a worthy example for you people? I achieved such great results out of this condition, as was a difficult matter for others. Is it not worthy of preference and emulation? Ml himself never looked for the cause of regret, or else he would have found the answer, just there!”

“Whosoever rises to some height, he has lowness within his sight to the same extent. This is the secret of Nature. If a person, glued to his Master, makes high advancement and feels low, is not this a state? The cause of this, I have just stated. The passion should be, that whatever is there, is Thine! And when it be thus, where is an occasion for regret!! When somebody gets satiated with something, he does not derive pleasure (from it) in the same degree (as earlier). By and by, he comes to treat it as something ordinary. Just this is to be known as the state of regret or fallen condition. Apart from that, lying low is better than a perch up. Herein lies devotion: and therein rests the idea of perfection. What more than this is there for me to tell! - It is a secret, told to Ml. I have already

given the definition of courage, which is there in notes, jotted previously. What happened to be his (Ml) complaint, if it was not connected to regret, then that condition alone would remain. Is not this a Divine Gift? When one has lost the sense of one's significance, and is devoid of one's ego-consciousness in any form, direct or indirect, then whatever one does, happens to be just what one ought to be doing.

This condition, if bestowed by God, is the best of all conditions. Everybody ought to try to arrive at it."

"When somebody moves on from one condition to another, there is an experience of a kind of non- movement. You can understand it thus (by a simile). Suppose someone is standing on this side of the bank of a river, and has to cross the river to reach the other bank. His first job, to cross the river, will be to find a boat. Then he will sit on it. Now, so long as he remains sitting, he will not have the experience of that sharpness of movement, which he had experienced while running to reach this side of the river-bank. This is also known as the intervening state (Barzakh); and it is occurring at every step (in the course of progress) in our fold. There are some people who cross this (intervening) river immediately, and they have no knowledge about it; while there are others, who take time. Anyway, if faith is firm, and love is increasing day by day, all arrive at the destination, some day or the other. Lack of maturity, occurring there, is just in proportion to what remains here (on this side). There are innumerable subtle points in this system; and I give this assurance also, that whatever comes to be faced by a real seeker, is all optimistic. Progress is in accordance with one's love for and faith in the Master; and the stages (of progress) too are in accordance with the same. One person reaching point B from point A, does not develop in him, what another person acquires in traversing the same course from A to B. Apparently, both may be said to have reached the point concerned, but the difference between their conditions will remain there, to the extent of the lack or excess of love and thought (remembrance) in them. Master performed His duty equally well in case of both of (hem, and brought both of them to the destination; but the disciple suffered a lack to the extent that he remained deficient in self-abstinence and performance of his (own) duty. All

may measure themselves as against these principles, and know their stage to be in proportion to the quantity of love, faith and self-abstinence, existing in them. These things, I have mentioned very clearly today, so that people do not hurl objections at their Master in times to come. The best method of all, I am telling you today, viz. that one leaves everything to one's Master. This is the best method: faith and love, all may get lost in Him, and the seeker has no knowledge as to what he may be doing. This means his perfect dependence (to be wholly under Master's care). This is called complete surrender.

There remains no complaint against Master; and nothing to do even with one's own progress. Master may take him, where Master may like; he (disciple) becomes unconcerned with everything. There is one more method, less meritorious than the above-mentioned best one. That consists in considering everything good or bad, whatever may come, to be from the Master. "I tried, who knows how much, to remove MI's weakness and lack of courage; and bestowed the status on him, which does not fall to everybody's lot. I told him even to offer gratitude for this, in order to avoid becoming ungrateful for the gift from God; but he (MI) did not move a grain a way from his habit. By habit, I mean to refer to the complaints, he remains making about his condition. As such, I have put before him all the subtleties that may be possible, so far as my thought goes. Now, I will be sorry if he makes such complaints in future. Making such complaints is, so to say, lack of comprehension of one's condition. Frailties are no doubt there for every human being at each step. He should himself try to remove those frailties: he possesses will, which has developed adequately. Yes, I also assure that an example of (his) will shall be difficult to find, not only in our circle, but even elsewhere (as well). He should know himself to be in a special state. His status is known to him: there is no need of repeating it, again and again. When I was at that stage, I earned such visible achievements, that people would feel puzzled. During the annual function a declaration of his (MI) status be made, and it may be told that anybody capable of doing so, may examine him. I assure that there is nobody of this status in our circle (to match MI)."

“I am also very sorry for the death of dear J1. There is no help against God’s Will. My dear one (you) should also have solace. I deliberately did not communicate this bad news to you, even though the word ‘passing away’ (Inteqal) had descended very clearly in your heart. My intention is to give comfort, and not trouble: so I kept it concealed. Keep it in mind that some bad news or untoward happening should not be communicated unless confirmed by several people. Your idea is correct: ‘Do not rely on bad news from the owl and the crow (ominous birds)’ (a Persian saying). Helplessness is, anyway, another matter. Do not be worried about the care of the children. God is the source of all provisions.”

“About K2, your idea is correct that his brain does not open up. The reason is that the entrance examination was passed somehow, depending on rote memory for preparation of the prescribed syllabus; and no opportunity was provided for the extensive growth of mind. The (proper) development of mind (brain) takes place during childhood itself; and the labour, put in at that time alone, serves ahead.”

“It will be better, if you yourself take Up (the job of) the arrangement of the annual function (Bhaodara). This year you may let it proceed on as usual, since ‘who shall listen to the voice of the she-parrot in the drum-house’ yet! You may render monetary help. In future, you arrange Bhandara in my name, considering yourself as the chief person at it.

This year, it will be obligatory to inform everybody by letters, that Bhandara will be organized at its fixed time this year, and remain being organized in future also (annually). This is in my commemoration, and should not be given up. It will be better if, this year, correspondence is carried on in the name of my adopted son (K1). M9 does not have the capability for this. He should be included among helpers, so that it does not lie heavy on his mind. A little before Bhandara, somebody should go to your mother (aunt, i.e., the mother of J1) for consultations in this regard. That should be early enough so as to enable the letters to reach people sufficiently ahead in time. In your circle, you are no doubt better for this work, but you can do nothing without (proper) help. As such, I prefer M1; and he has time (for the purpose) as well.

I shall tell you where invitations will be required to be sent.

I like you to take this whole thing in your hand. I assign this job to you two (Ram Chandra and Ml).”

4th September, 1944:

Revered Master’s dictation:

“Swamiji (an advanced recluse) has been stuffed (with a spiritual condition) in a very crude way. Now, if training is started, after snatching away that (stuffed) condition, then it will be training in your system. The condition of K2 is improving. You had the thought in the morning that his understanding may be made to bloom; and you made an attempt also, to that effect. I have completed that job. Now, to maintain it, remains in his hand. If he pays attention to it, and goes on developing it, he will come to be observant of subtle points.

New method of training.

Revered Master’s dictation continued:

“Just how, I transmitted to you; and you experienced vibrations together with a state. This is real power. Particles of this (power) can be stuffed in (an aspirant).”

In response to a query from me (Ram Chandra), Revered Master continued:

“This technique is to be applied only in case of someone, who has crossed the cosmic region (Kubra); and it is considered desirable to penetrate power in his state in the para cosmic region (Ulia). Application of this technique, in case of a person of a status lower than that, will be wrong. I had brought this thing to your experience at the beginning. This is only for the para cosmic region. Beyond that, there is another method. The particles which are penetrated in the cosmic region, are less luminous than these. The five happy conditions spoken of as belonging to the organic region (Sughra) require a different method of training. That also I have brought to your experience just now. To explain these is difficult; and these can be brought to comprehension only practically. You may make a note by way of (brief) indications.”

- (1) Hridayah or Heart (Qalba): The particles penetrated at the point of heart have a little darkness in them, but not grossness. If there is grossness, then those are material particles.
- (2) Atmah or Soul (Rooh): Here, only the outer cover of these particles drops off.
- (3) Agnih or Fire-point (Sirra): The particles at this point (plexus) are in such a way as though a large part of the heat and radiance of bright fire be drawn out. If (the condition of) this point be desired to be sharpened, the brightness is allowed to remain, i.e. it is not drawn out, or so to say, it is not touched.
- (4) Apah or Hydro-plexus (Khafi): At this point, the shape of the above-mentioned fire-element gets changed, to yield only apprehension or just an inkling of fire, which words fail to express.
- (5) Vayuh or Air-plexus (Akhfa), also called Kantha Chakra or Throat-plexus: Here the particles become somewhat bluish like electric light. Only this much was to be told. (The Arabic words used in Sufi literature, given here in brackets, in case of the last three points, refer only to the secret or esoteric nature of the points, literally).

“This too is a method, which is not (to be) applied everywhere. Very few people are deserving of this: they are to be counted on fingers. Herein, all powers develop. So, its application is, in general, prohibited. Small parts of this may be applied here and there (sometimes); but the discretion, about where it is to be used, is a difficult matter. As such, it is better that it is not used. I applied it only at one plexus in the case of N1; and the result is there (before us). I carried man/ such things enclosed in my breast. There was no help, as I got nobody, to whom I could impart (everything) unreservedly. In your case, this technique^ was applied on all plexuses at the time of my end (of physical life). This is secret; and there is no need to speak about it. Moreover, everybody cannot use it: much capability is required for that. Instruct M1 to keep this secret only to himself. The demons have acquired mastery over it.

Ravana was the master of (these) five happy conditions; and this power had filled him most strongly.”

Revered Master replied to an inquiry:

“In case of N1, I had taken up only the heart-plexus. That fellow remained confined just to that single point, and enhanced his power to a great extent. You, however, remained so much attached to me, that there was no chance to develop by yourself. As such, it became my duty to develop it. You are not experiencing that condition individually, because you have developed into a very superior Power, wherefrom all these powers are derived. The experience can be there, when some conflict with somebody possessing these powers may arise.”

Revered Master later remarked:

“Not haying the heart in talks (and conversation) is called silence, i. e. when conversation may go on as needed, and one would have no interest in it. When I went to my Master, in the evening, after leaving you, the problem of the children of J1 was under consideration, there. Revered Master has these children very much in His thoughts. Since you ate in my place, it is your duty also to take care and look after them. The children will come up nice. You should see to it that your mother (aunt, i.e. wife of Lalaji Saheb) is never put to hardship; and take her always to be your respected elder. She will also develop attachment (and closeness) to you.”

5th September, 1944:

Revered-Master's dictation:

“I feel that people hardly understand the state of stability. Just now, this problem is good to have come up. Stability really means staying, i.e., what Master has bestowed would come to stay. Besides this it has no meaning. The actuality of the state, which M1 wanted to describe, is that Reality would come to be experienced. Can he (M1) say that this thing is not available to him? People are taking Reality also in a wrong sense; and connect it to terms like glamour and sharpness, which is entirely wrong. The condition that comes to experience, while Reality remains there, has its form or example like the sun and its reflection or shadow. State is subservient to something, and does not have stability. This condition is beyond description; and can be understood through

experience, which is also something special that can only give an indication of Reality. M1 has sufficiently swum in the condition of fixed star (Qutub), but I shall be happy, if he structures outward expression as well. His temperament is somewhat wanting in softness. This capacity is there in him. He may just turn the direction of his will towards it. By this I mean that there should be no harshness in voice.

Since he has to work, it should not happen that his disciples start imitating this thing, and that this chain goes so far as to make people consider this thing (harshness in voice) as standard. Those who have a higher status, 'have more difficulties (to face).'

"The technique of developing softness is to create extreme humility in temperament, so that it is filled up with such a sentiment of love, as to have no inclination to cause any hurt to anybody's heart, and the words are also such as may not hurt anybody's heart in the least. If he (M1) is able to do this, it will be imitating me, which is duty for everybody. This is called 'following the Guide'. This was my special, way, which has not been emulated by anybody. I, however, would not have permitted you (Ram Chandra) to copy it. This would make harshness wither away. You do not as yet understand my quality of perfect poverty. As such, very often, you remain confused. This thing is as follows. I used to remain in attendance as a slave (servant) to His (Master's) presence, in such a way as to treat myself as insignificant. I had no concern with outward glamour. I considered all belongings, including my home, to be His alone, and was happy under any circumstance, whatever. You too consider whatever God has bestowed on you, to be His alone (or mine alone) and remain ever-grateful. The example of Shivaji is there. His Master (Samartha Guru Ram Dass) asked for alms, in response to which he (Shivaji) surrendered everything he had-wealth and riches, throne and crown etc. - to him; and started treating all of it, thereafter, as belonging to him alone. This example is worth appreciation; and expresses my meaning very exactly. By saying this, I do not mean that, like N1, you go about screaming (to proclaim) that all this is of Lalaji alone. There should be this sentiment, and a real spirit of renunciation in temperament. This is the superior-most form of Vairajna (renunciation). You do not feel perturbed: your condition

shall be just this; and this sentiment is already present in you. Its height is not visible due to thorny-bushy growth all around. This thing, I have told you today, is the sum and substance of the entire training; and is very superior. Somebody may just try to follow it in the real sense: he is sure to enjoy the finest, that spirituality may have to offer. The best way to it consists in attaching everything good to God, and abstaining from evil conduct. I have referred to this in my response to your diary'. Just this practice will be sufficient: do not take it as something ordinary. Make a note of those sentences from your diary: it is better to copy the entire letter (here).”

**Copy of Revered Master Lalaji Saheb's letter,
dated 27-11-1929.**

Dear mine,

Be always happy and unharmed.

After blessings for development in status, be it known that with respect to the conditions of attainment of height and progress concerning stages, written by my dear one (you), may God's congratulations be with you. These are not (expressions of) pride (egoism), but rather encouraging. Gratitude is to be offered (felt) for them: thus pride (if any) shall not be there. If these are related to God, there is no place for egoism, since these are from God, and nothing of one's own remains therein. A couplet (Persian): 'This fortune is not capable of being earned through the force of arms, if it is not bestowed by the bounteous God.' The condition of non-enjoyment is good; and this is long-lasting. It is nice to suffer torments. Home (family-life) is the school for tolerance and forbearance. In our system, dealing with these very things with patience is termed as 'penance' (Tapa); and is superior to all other forms of penance. As such, bashfulness (Ghairat) rather than grief and anger (resentment) are to be adopted. Ghairat is the term for that sentiment, in which one, on being rebuked and chided by others, feels that one alone is really guilty, and as such has to resort to patience and self-control. For others (banishment to the) forest, solitude and seclusion are the means for tolerance, forbearance and release from the tumult and babble of the world, while for us, scolding and chiding, taunting and tormenting,

rebuking and scoffing, received from members of the family, circle of friends and people of the world, are the real penitence and penance. As such, give up irritation and adopt patience. Submission and surrender shall follow thereafter through God's Grace. »

With blessings from (Revered Master Shri) Ram Chandra of Fatehgarh, 27-11-'29.

Dictation continued:

“I had also revealed you, after my departure (from the world). Power and revelation had become effective all at once. However, on realizing that the opponents may notice it, while the purpose was not to reveal you (at that time), I closed that condition; and this happened to be the advice of my (own) Revered Master as well.”

“I have started taking R2 up since yesternight. Tell him to be penitent and take a vow not to commit such a mistake in future. Take the promise in my presence. When he has made the promise, only then tell him anything further.... Tell him that I am never away from Ram Chandra. Whatever he says, will be my order. There is no need of revealing it anywhere, or else he is to be a victim of my wrath. Tell him frankly that I have surrendered all of my work to him (Ram Chandra) alone. Submission to him will be submission to me. The time of sloth is over. I have got his uncle (N1) wiped off spiritually just through him (Ram Chandra). Further consequences will come to view later. Tell quite clearly that I have already made him (Ram Chandra) my representative, but this is not to be revealed (for the time being) anywhere. If there may be doubt, he (R2) may examine you in whatever way he may like.”

“My opinion is definitely against this person (R2) to go to K... You are my perfect living record. From now on Satsang (meeting for a spiritual purpose) will be at the place of M1. R2 should also derive benefit from association with him (M1). Inward turbidity is to be cast out. After all he (M1) is an elder brother; and I have made him my own. Moreover, this be also known that his condition is that of pole star (Qutub). He (R2) should not remain in darkness (about M1). If R2 comes out to be faithful to his promise, and obeys me, which is to be through Ram Chandra, I promise to make him perfectly fulfilled.”

“Tell him that I have snatched off the permission (for preceptorship), given to him, and have done the same in case of others. Now, whomever Ram Chandra will grant permission, that will be authentic. I have given all instructions to him (Ram Chandra); and will give more, as and when needed. All of this is just for their (disciples’) good. He (R2) was entirely under the influence of R1, and was just ready to be the murderer of Ram Chandra. If my Power had not been with him (Ram Chandra), he (R2) had almost made me ‘light-less’ (Be- Chiragh). Whatever I am dictating at this time, is all for him (R2). Just possible, what I have said may be repeated. This thing is not such, as to be revealed everywhere. During this period, I had also to diminish my power (working with R2), so that together with it, the power, given to him by his uncle to murder someone, would not acquire strength, - Tell him again, that all this, that has been done to him or is being done to others, is all just for their good. R2 should give up becoming an extremist. The period of my lifetime was different, in that I dealt with (this characteristic of R2) duly. Whatever doubts he may have, he should get these cleared by Ram Chandra. I am also present here; and he may ask whatever he may like, whether by way of examination or otherwise. I am waiting”

“For one month he (R2) should be made to pray to God to show him the right way. During this period, M1’s greatness and his being elder be brought home to him; and Ram Chandra need not be revealed in any way. If I tell him (R2) about the work and achievements of Ram Chandra, he will be surprised more and more. I have prepared only one, and just one shall remain. I consider it sufficient to tell just this much about him (Ram Chandra). This does not mean that others will not be able to make progress. My meaning is just that I have merged with full Power in one and only one. Now I like that those who are connected to me or those who love me, should remain only with me, without any need of going anywhere else. There is no harm even in persons, connected to someone else, coming to receive benefit (from Ram Chandra, who has been structured by me). For those who do not like to come to persons, structured and developed by me, I have no need at all. They are free to go whichever way they may choose to adopt.”

Later dictation by Revered Master:

“I am coming from Fatehgarh. ‘There is twofold grief and sin to the poor life (soul) of Majnoon’(Persian half-couplet). Do not go there yet. Postpone the plan (of going there) today. I have left J1 there to watch the situation. I was in need also of such a person as J1. (Tears welled up in my eyes.) Many times, I have made you comprehend this. Call R2 immediately.” Dictation from dear brother J1: “The condition there is very bad. Play of individual interests has started increasing. The insight of respected elder brother (M1) was very good. Even I was unable to comprehend the situation to this extent. I thought of turning everything upside down immediately, but Revered Lalaji Saheb checked me. He has bestowed everything on you. I am also giving you one thing. Accept it as a regardful gift (Nazrana). Sit in meditation before me.”

Dictation continued after meditation

“I have filled you with power. Take service from me also sometimes. Continue to treat (me) as you have been doing hitherto. Lalaji Saheb had surrendered me to brother B1, due to helplessness. Now his curious game is becoming apparent.

Respected brother, if I had had an inkling during my life-time, of this degree of your love, I would have sacrificed my whole being (to you). It was my mistake, certainly. I gave preference to close kinship. I have (now) one intense desire: that you upturn that entire area, where such rogues are residing. This is my heart’s desire. I shall also be always with you, and help you in every work. I have already said that you upturn that area. From amongst my disciples, whenever you consider it proper, you can give permission on my behalf. I shall stand guard to you, when you will be engaged in destruction. Tell R2 on my behalf that he did very well to obey Revered Lalaji Saheb. If he had got entangled with those people, there could have been no freedom (liberation).”

Revered Master’s dictation:

“The (proper) opportunity for what J1 has told you, is not there yet. J1 told me something just now about you; and I have accepted it. No disciple of J1 was yet capable enough to be appointed as his representative. As such, I consider it alright, from

every angle, that this status is conferred just on yourself. That was his desire; and I have accepted it. You act on his behalf also, just as you do on my behalf. You can initiate also on his hand. He has transferred his entire power to you; and I have accepted that.”

7th September, 1944:

Dictation from Revered Master:

“Say ‘Bravo’ to R2 on my behalf. He came up right and fine; otherwise, in JI’s words, he would already have come into the grip of Jamoga (the evil spirit, considered to cause fatal tetanus to a neonate infant, in unenlightened Indian circles). I have made much precautionary arrangement at Fatehgarh. Don’t let your heart be perturbed. Ask M1 also not to be tortured. My principle has always been to kill the serpent and yet save the stick from being broken. The purpose needs to be served. He (M1) gave a lot of trouble to me last night, but that was (after all) due to his love. He had gone to sleep, taking this idea (of tormenting his heart) with him. You remove his perturbation. Your transmission has worked (well) on your respected mother (Revered Lalaji’s wife). Her mind is now at ease. JI’s wife should not be touched more than this.”

Question by R2: “Why was I prevented- from being present at the physical passing away (of Revered Lalaji Saheb), and at the internment of His ashes in the Samadhi?”

Revered Master replied:

“Tell R2 that this alone was the right course at the time. Many of his ways would have been resented by K.. people. When you and R2 had been to L.. to pay a visit to me, and reached K.. from there, it was night-time. N1 was sitting on a cot and sermonizing. K4 was also present. Looking to my agony, the thought, that ‘it would be better if my body was dropped off’, arose in that fellow’s (N1) heart. Although, this was on account of my agony, it was against love. He (N1) had no shock about my illness. It was his duty to be at my side and try to relieve me from the trouble, since he had (blood) relationship with me. Instead of that, service to me was assigned to others. This is not a proper manner. This is something to be kept into consideration by everybody. When my condition was critical and I was in serious agony, that

fellow (N1) was whining that he alone would be doing the (spiritual) work thence onwards. People were enamoured of him already. As such, this stage became quite easy to cross for him. For the future, I permit you, that in case such a person comes up, you deal complete destruction to him, before he is able to raise his head. There is no need of mildness in this regard. Capture his soul: I have given you the method just now.”

Revered Master explained:

“This, he had said quite right. N1 had snatched off M1’s energy; and as against this, he had stuffed his energy in R2. But what that energy was, cannot be expressed in words. Everything is quite clear to you (Ram Chandra). You may just tell.”

Submission by me (Ram Chandra):

“He had turned R2’s sublimity into grossness. As a result, R2 was feeling himself somewhat filled up.”

Revered Master’s dictation:

“He (N1) had to establish faith (for himself). That caused harm to R2. Now, he be instructed not to sit with anybody belonging to the other (opposite) fold; and I say this for everybody. In this regard, if instructions be needed, these are to be obtained from Ram Chandra. The path (of progress) in case of R2, has now opened up; and a better time is there. He may try to progress. I have also love for him. If R2 had not obeyed me, and would have obstructed my work, I would have ordered destruction. Tell him that I have reserved just this weapon as the last resort for the non-believers. It was your love to have protected R2 from the operation of that weapon, otherwise that work would have started automatically. Since the effect of the object of love alone goes to the subject, it was natural that whatever I have been doing for N1 etc., might have reached him (R2) as well. I am applying my special power to check the condition meant for him (N1) from affecting his disciples, who are innocent.”

8th September, 1944:

Revered Master’s instructions:

“Tell M1 that the deficiency, found in M2, has been set right. Now he (M1) may continue imparting training to him (M2). This year, he must join the annual function. It will be good to increase the number of participants (at the annual function) to the highest possible extent. He (M2) should act in accordance with the instructions contained in the letters, sent to him; and give his heart to one and one alone. Everything shall be coming to him, just out of this. All these instructions, which are for his betterment, should be taken to be from me. The night-time is good.

He (M2) should sleep in remembrance of his guide; and leave everything to Master’s Will. He should hold on to the idea contained in the Persian proverb: ‘Hold on to one, and hold fast.’ He will not get from anywhere, something better than what he gets from M1. He should remove the thought of anybody else from his heart. The initiations, effected by persons such as SI and CI, or someone else in the supposed name of the Master, will have to be transferred to your (Ram Chandra) direction.”

“Accord conditional permission (for training others) to M2 just now. Accord it yourself on my behalf. Your respected brother M1 should also testify it; and accept it. There is no need to delay it. I confirm it and grant conditional permission to him (M2) on this date, 8-9-'44 at 10.00

A.M.” (Signatures of M1 and Shri Ram Chandra).

Revered Master’s dictation continued:

“Tell R2 that the grossness has been returned to the gentleman, who had stuffed it in him. Now, I have cleaned R2 for you; and you (Ram Chandra) may transmit to him (R2). Tell M1 to continue with what he has been doing with LI. This does not mean to get discouraged that he will not be of use any further,”

Revered Master’s dictation:

“Tell R2 that I have structured him (Ram Chandra) with great labour. It was just my courage to take him out of such a dangerous valley. Everything that has been done, is just for your benefit. I do not like now, that anybody be oriented in the direction of the dangerous valley, out of which I have brought him (Ram Chandra) safe and sound. (My reference to the valley is concerning the

satans of K..). There are robbers at each step: nobody who reached there, could return without being soiled (with black spots).”

Brother J1's remark: “I too agree with this!”

9th September, 1944:

Dictation from Revered Master:

“I am coming from Fatehgarh. The state of affairs there is as usual. Lots of garbage has been collected at the Samadhi. Write to D2 to have it cleaned. M1 should rest contented. Call R2 sometime today. I like that he comes to you (off and on). He may give some revelation about you, in your home (to your wife). Tell M1, that the spiritual brotherhood shall increase. Those who comes, should be welcome; and he (M1) should give his time to them. The method need not be told to everybody. These same instructions are for you (Ram Chandra) as well. The grossness of those who come, should be cleared. The newcomer is to go to M1.

(M1) should not introduce terse academic subjects from classic texts in the general Satsang openly. Such matters should remain confined to special gatherings. The atmosphere is changing. You two worked well during the night. Permission (for imparting training) be not granted now, unless ordered.”

Question: “Should transmission to people be given, when work for destruction has been assigned (to me)?”

Answer: “Since you become oriented in a single direction, and your power and transmission get concentrated fully on the object of assigned work, it is prohibited for you. When such an occasion may arise, you send people (coming for transmission and training) to M1.

The approach of R2 is not beyond the point of heart. J1 has transferred everything (he had) to Ram Chandra. Fulfilling M1's request could have been possible before the transfer by J1 to Ram Chandra. There should be no insistence in this regard (now). He (M1) does not realize his condition, inspite of so much emphasis, put forth (by me). He may just have trust (in my words) that the state which happens to be his fortune, is difficult for anyone else to attain. Now, proper utilization lies in his hands. I feel like

showering praise on M1. My happiness consists in his making one person more like himself. I like just to see this, since I will have no concern after the physical veiling of Ram Chandra with this (process of making or developing someone to be like oneself).”

Revered Master replied:

“This knowledge is not there with anybody except myself, or the one, to whom I have given it. This is Nature’s administration: everybody is not acquainted with it Initiations should be as few as possible.

There is no harm in distributing benefit: that can be made available to anybody of your choice, or to one, who gets oriented to you. That is your (M1) privilege. One or two persons are there to be initiated by you (Ram Chandra). I shall tell you. You may initiate R6 on my hand. Do not, however, initiate or give heart-rending transmission to anybody at the end of his/her life, in case the impressions (Samskaras) are still remaining, as it may be possible that such remaining impressions get transferred to you and you may have to undergo their effects. It will be proper to adopt this practice in case of those initiated persons who are especially devoted to me. It was just my courage to have sent people unsoiled and to have undergone the effect of their impressions myself. I do not like to put you to this trouble. Impressions can be burnt up also. That, however, is against the law of Nature. You did wrong to have burnt up the Samskaras of your father last night. Now, if you like, you can, according to the thought arising in your mind so often, bring him up to that state, where you are actually established. You have paid off your debt to your father. You saw him in a dream last night; and what he said, was the deformed shape of real bliss. That was his very last impression. He has not yet come to a new birth, hoping for the benefit, which he was opposed to all the while (during life-time). He had carried with him some effect from you at the time of his death, as well. The last Samskara, which I have pointed out to you, is a matter of his thought only. It will wither away simply by casting it off. But this, you do after three days. Remain transmitting Grace to the rest of the departed elders. There is no need of indulging in such practice (as you did in the case of your father). If your mother may have trust in it, you may tell this to her.”

Question (by Ram Chandra):

“Does (respected) B1, present at Fatehgarh, really want to give benefit to people?”

Revered Master replied:

“B1 has good intentions, but, alongside, he desires self-praise also for that (good intentions). Moreover, he wants to make provision for his expenses, by becoming a guru. He also possesses the thought of increasing his respect. He desires respect for his children as well. To say the truth, that entire family is expert in this regard.”

“When you have become revealed at the Bhandara (annual function), the information concerning your representativeness be carried to every nook and corner. When somebody may ask some question about it, then you alone should be mentioned. The more people come to know of it, the more benefit will accrue to them. I give your (prime) minister ship to M1: he should be conscious of his duty. R2 can do good canvassing, but you do not need that. I like that kind of relationship between you and M1, as happened to be between me and A1. If he (M1) is able to give up sharpness of temperament, the same thing will develop. M1 should not initiate K4 at any cost. Regarding other children, he may do as he may like. K3 should not be got oriented to worship (Puja), as he has not come for that kind of work.”

10th September, 1944:

Revered Master's dictation:

“This is a new kind of initiation, which I got effected by dear Ram Chandra: it's being effected is prohibited. Only that person can effect it, who has the capability to burn up impressions, and is ordered by Master: one cannot do it oneself. Dear Ram Chandra effected his father's initiation on Master's hand, nearly twelve years after his passing away (date of (father's) death is January 7th, 1933).”

“Tell M1 that he should not permit his disciples to sit on deer-skin, so long as all of their mental tendencies do not become

internalized. This is an ancient system, which I do not want to be given up.”

“There are some persons in the higher world, worthy of being initiated. There will be a separate list of such persons; and your father’s name will be there in it. The inhabitants of the (spiritual) Moon-region are getting oriented to you; and are desirous of your Grace. Be oriented to that side sometime. Its incitement has reached other’(spiritual) regions also. I shall give you a method, through which (spiritual) benefit be reaching them continuously. The boundary of your work is very wide.”

“As a result of your transmission to Ml last night, he has advanced beyond the state of Qutub. Now at this stage, he should wait. That will be beneficial. The state of Qutub has been left behind. It is necessary to practise what you had told (him) in the morning. This is mentioned to him for his satisfaction. There is no decrement in the condition. This (particular) meditation (concerning) ‘watching’ is his own prescription.”

11th September, 1944:

Dictation continued:

“R2 is now all right. Attachment to you (Ram Chandra and Ml) has started increasing. Today again, you do not transmit to anybody. Only milk is to be taken. Just possible, there may be need to continue keeping you on this diet for some time. I shall tell you today, as the need may arise. Do not sleep today during day-time.

There is no harm in taking soda. That will prevent the development of (a particular) defective tendency in the intestines. This keeping you on a milk-diet is with a view to some great purpose. You have got some indication already; and you will have further more. Your mother (Revered Lalaji Saheb’s wife) at Fatehgarh is now at peace, although grief is certainly there.”

The method of transmitting to the inhabitants of higher (spiritual) regions (worlds) as, given by Revered Master: “Encircle all of them through thought, and have a firm supposition that He (Revered Master) is transmitting to them.”

A second method, which is given by dear J1:

“One’s subtle body be established there, and ordered to remain transmitting, and indicate when the estimate of transmission being completed has developed. This method can be used in case of some particular higher spiritual region. The method given by Revered Lalaji Saheb forms part of your duties, and you have to take it into account all the time. If some soul gets oriented to you in a special way, then you have to be oriented to that soul accordingly. An elder, belonging to the spiritual Moon-region, has prayed to the Ultimate Being (Zaat) that someone be designated to bring spiritual benefit to them (inhabitants of the spiritual Moon-region). As such, Revered Lalaji Saheb has appointed you (Ram Chandra) for the purpose; and informed them to that effect. Now you be conscious of your duty. The range of respected brother M1’s work is increasing.”

Dictation concerning R2:

“When R2 turned his mind’s orientation towards him, the fellow (N1) felt overjoyed that he had now got the instrument to have his wishes fulfilled. The first thing done to him (R2) was to turn the orientation of his heart’s attachment from me (Lalaji) to himself (N1). This was just the greatest harm (dealt to R2 by N1). When N1 had performed this trick, and it started producing its effect by way of increasing R2’s affectional interest in N1, the enticing thread of permission (for preceptorship) was introduced, which (adversely) affected my permission also. N1 intended to advance that permission (granted by me to impart training in case of need), in an imaginary way, and then to band over its every stage to R2, so that he (R2) would develop a group, favourable to him (N1), and thus deal a blow to M1 and isolate him. This is the description, I have given, of N1’s politics. He (N1) filled up R2 with grossness, which contained the material particles, sufficient to arouse sharpness in him (R2). Since these material particles (stuffed in R2) contained worldly effects mainly, these crushed the particles of refinement. Due to residing long enough in that condition, his (R2) mentality acquired strength, and (his) thinking developed affinity with it. Just this gross state (of R2), which was forceful, I got snatched off by dear Ram Chandra; and the elements designed to cause harm were snatched away by myself. Would R2 have

preferred to remain under deceit, and extinguish the lamp of my spiritual genealogy (by putting an end to the life of Ram Chandra)? It was his (R2) very great mistake, and even folly! Tell him (R2) once more on my behalf to swear condemnation (to N1's name)."

12th September, 1944:

Revered Master's dictation:

"I have completed in the case of dear Ram Chandra, during these last three days, what the elder saints of yore used to complete in forty days, very often requiring the subject of the practice to observe perfect fasting. All the powers, that are possible, have been stuffed (into him) during these three days. Bravo, at dear Ram Chandra's sensitivity to have come to realize what my intention was. I had prohibited to reveal it; and as such, (he) refrained from expressing anything about it. Convey the tidings to M1 that from now onwards such acts of will shall be issuing forth from dear Ram Chandra, as are befitting to Maha Parshad (Ghous-ul-Aazam). I have warned him not to be oriented to that direction. His Annamaya Kosha (outermost physical or material sheath) has been shattered. When this state is to be developed in somebody, he is to be restrained from taking salt for the specific period, required (for the purpose). As such, I had prohibited the use of salt in any form by him, during that period. With regard, to health, he was permitted to take soda water only on the last day. It is a day of great happiness, that I have perfected dear Ram Chandra this day in all respects (and in the real way). He has also the authority to snatch away the spiritual powers of any elder saint if harmful miracles start issuing forth from him. Now you (M1) can say open-heartedly that whoever may like, can examine (and observe) dear Ram Chandra in whatever way. Write again that I have perfected dear Ram Chandra today. There will be no harm in telling also that dear Ram Chandra has remained in association with you for a long time. M1 is to pay attention to the benefit as well, accruing from this (fact), viz. that Ram Chandra has benefited from association with him (M1). This note I have dictated especially (to emphasize) that M1 shall also be remembered."

Submission: “Revered Master had mentioned on 9-9-'44 that He wanted the relationship between Ml and Ram Chandra to be just like that between Al and Himself.”

Answer: “That is to say, both treated each other as elder, and had regard for each other.”

Instruction concerning LI: “The technique of giving j benefit to LI (a patient) is to keep him wrapped in peace (by j Ml) and bring his (LI) nervous system slowly to a state of 1 calmness. In case of prayer for giving benefit to some patient, it is preferable to keep a soup-plate, made of an alloy of copper, brass, and a kind of white metal (known as Phool in Hindi) full of water, allowing a clear gaze of the patient at that water, and then pray for his good health. However, in case of a patient in his last stage, prayer for his recovery will not be useful. For him prayer for pardon of his bad actions during life-time should be offered. This technique is strictly prohibited in case of a patient of tuberculosis. If however prayer be offered, then it should be done after separating thought (from prayer). In case of contagious diseases, prayer by way of duty should be offered separately, without the need of water being placed there.”

There was conversation concerning the secrets of Nature being all known to liberated souls. Revered Master indicated: “ ‘The honour of headgear (in the form of a turban) is provided in accordance with one’s knowledge’ (Persian proverb). The secrets of Nature become revealed to the person who goes free; but (something) still remains (unknown).”

13th September, 1944:

Dictation:

“Convey the tidings to Ml that the Innovator Saint (one thousand years after Prophet Mohammed) has showered Grace on him (Ml) as well. My Revered Master made a visit here last evening. For some time, my Revered Grand Master too arrived for a few minutes. The purpose was to confirm my work (giving the status of Maha Parishad) All the elders (foregone Masters) upto the Innovator Saint, confirmed (my work). This was communicated to the Prophet, who also communicated His approval. The Innovator

Saint granted His connection to dear Ram Chandra. M1 too has not remained deprived of the Grace. N1 knew now for certain that the wealth has gone out of his hands. I had called R2 for the purpose of giving some instructions to him also. These (instructions) are as following.”

“M1 always had very good thoughts (and intentions) for people belonging to Shahjahanpur. He always remained trying for the spiritual uplift of these people; but people never appreciated and praised him for it. R2 was also one of those for whose high spiritual progress, M1 remained praying. It is the effect of just his efforts and prayers that this day (of good results) has come to my lot. I praise his courage and good intentions; and instruct R2 to remain oriented to him (M1). The permission (for imparting training) belonging to R2, which had been snatched away, was returned to him the day before yesterday, at about 9 00 P.M. He will have to take into account a few things in that connection. One of these is that R2 should conduct the Satsang (spiritual training and individual or group meditation) during M1’s absence; and follow his (M1) instructions concerning it. R2 should try to remove a defect in him, and take help in this from M1. That (defect) is having developed a habit of holding so fast to whatever he takes up, that (self-) importance is created. This defect is harmful for the person, receiving spiritual training (from him). He (R2) should have consideration for this thing; and take up whatever work M1 may assign to him, as his (R2) duty.”

There was dictation from Revered Master, concerning ritualistic offering of water to deceased forefathers (during the period of reverential oblations to them in the Ashwin- month of the Hindu calendar - in September-October of the Christian calendar) : “The best method of giving peace to a departed soul, is the same as described earlier (for patients). It should be done (preferably) with rose-water put in front. The rose- water should be kept in a glass (instead of a soup- plate), so that it is more suitable to transmit its effect upwards. There is no need to adopt this method for J1 by M1. He (M1) should continue doing what has just been told to him for J1. I have made him (J1) peaceful at this time.”

14th September, 1944:

Revered Master's dictation:

“Yesterday, and upto just now, I have performed such jobs, which obviously are beyond everybody’s power. R2 has now come up well. There is need to transmit to him. It be written to B7 that he has no need for spiritual association with G2. This I leave to M1: he may write whatever he may like and choose. G2 has lost his spiritual condition. I was fed up with him since long.”

“Acts of will can be said to be of a high stage, when the person, performing them, has no knowledge of them, and the job is done. I do not permit to perform them intentionally, except in special circumstances. If an occasion for significant encounter comes up, then (my) permission is there (for you). I remained listening to all of your conversations in the morning. There is nothing that may be said to you, which may remain unknown to me. The reason is obvious. There is no need of repeating it again and again. If you like, you can note down that I do not leave you alone at any time. To provide rest to your brain, I get slightly withdrawn (sometime).

The purpose (behind this slight withdrawal) is also to prevent you from developing the habit (of dependence) and giving up applying force on your (own) thought (altogether). Wherever there is a mistake, I shall point it out immediately. This too is a new method, which is my invention.”

“I shall bestow a certain power on M1 sometime. The goings-on in his family are all within my view; and these were being mentioned as well, just now. Let me come a little to my own : I shall see to a suitable management of it all. I have undergone many hardships during my life-time: M1 may take some of these to be there with him as well. Troubles never remain the same: everything has its own time. He (M1) does not have to return (to life, after passing out of it). My heart had got ripened through troubles. I too very often felt a strong desire to fly out of (the cage of) the material world; and it was within my control to fly away at my will. I was, however, helpless in view of (Master’s) orders. In case of dear Ram Chandra also, I have not yet loosened this knot: the reason is quite obvious. He (Ram Chandra) is also prohibited to loosen it in the

case of his successor- representative, when he (Ram Chandra) gets knowledge about it. My Revered Master had full trust in me; and hence He had conferred control of this as well, on me. I had obliterated myself so much, during my life-time, that I never felt inclined to cause harm to anybody. 'I am the ant, whom people would rather rub out under their feet: I am not the wasp, from whose sting, people would wail and weep' (Persian couplet). I followed just this principle throughout my life; and still retain the thought of it: I become helpless, no doubt, against orders (of Master to punish and be strict).

If M1 likes, he can act upon this couplet. In your case, I withhold permission for the time being; and just possible, may never accord it. I have imparted training to you through a quite novel method: I have taken you on and on, bringing everything to your view for a clear comprehension. I desired to adopt this method for the training of others also; but I could not find anyone else as deserving of it. The result of this (new method of training) is that your training is also of a novel kind. Whoever receives training from you, shall develop superior capacity for revelation (Kashaf) in him/her. Thus, this thing (capacity) shall become widespread. The basic thing (capacity), which is there in you, and what I have bestowed upon you, shall go to others; and God willing, they shall impart the same sort of training to still others (and so on and on)."

(A prescription for disorder of the digestive system and gastric trouble is given).

Instructions followed: "This prescription is given after reading your pulse. As such, it is just for you.

R2 suffers from similar trouble. He may try it."

15th September, 1944:

Revered Master's dictation:

"Just now, his (M1)status has been upgraded: now his state is that of Dhruadhipati (Qutub-ul-Aqtaab). I warn Ram Chandra that the higher the status of an aspirant, the lesser time is to be devoted in transmitting to him. In case of M1, whenever I intend to uplift his state, you give him a sitting for one minute. For the purpose of reformation (cleaning) of thoughts, he (Ram Chandra) has the

authority to increase the time of the sitting somewhat. The reason is that the subject (person receiving transmission) will not have the capacity to bear more than that. There is nothing in it to cause surprise. Earlier, I have told already quite a lot about him (Ram Chandra). Whatever thought he shall fix upon, will be sure to happen (in due course). For M1 also, observation of this precaution is invariably essential: he too has to act upon it. Tell R2 that I have prepared one more precious person (M1) to share the burdens of dear Ram Chandra. He (R2) should remain oriented to him (M1). I had promised M1 to bring him to this status of Dhruadhipati, which I have now fulfilled. This (condition) is a vast ocean: he (M1) is just to go on and on. I had the desire that during this period, some more gentlemen may have the heart to come up to you. That, however, did not happen. My coming and going here shall continue unabated until the end of Ram Chandra's life; and those who shall be coming (to him) shall be deriving benefit directly from me. Nobody else has the capability to call me. J1 will also be touring to this place continually, and he (J1) has been restrained from coming here, for the time being; but this restriction shall not remain there for all time."

"Tell R2 to be oriented to his mother off and on; but he should take care that her impressions (Samskaras) should not affect him. If inadvertently such a mistake creeps in, its effect should be got cleaned. Two persons (M1 and Ram Chandra) are present here, who are capable to clean up such an effect. The knowledge about this can be had thus: if after transmitting (to somebody) dirtiness is imperienced, or some kind of repugnance comes to mind, causing lack of happiness, that usually follows transmission, then this is to be comprehended as the effect of the impressions (Samskaras of the person to whom transmission has been made). The condition of R2 has been so degraded due to his uncle (R1), that, having become habituated to it, he (R2) could not be aware of that (degradation). Now that thing has been removed, and he has started having the savour of sublimity. When I came from the Real Source, J1 asked me to convey his regards to you people. Tell R2 that M1 is aware of the condition of Ram Chandra, on account of being in his company. For R2's satisfaction, I am telling the condition of dear Ram Chandra (herewith):

“His (Ram Chandra) every nerve and fibre has got merged in me; and I too have bestowed such upliftment to him, for the comprehension of which, people do not possess the requisite capacity. Nobody is existing at present, who may claim being at par with him. The sphere of his work is not confined to this world; but rather his administration extends to the domain of liberated souls and other realms. I have not left out anything from stuffing into him to the fullest possible extent. Now, concerning stages, people might have read in books (scriptures) the word ‘Ghous-ul-Aazam’, or heard about it somewhere. He (Ram Chandra) has crossed that state. Great elder saints (with the exception of the Innovator Saint (one thousand years after Prophet Mohammed) could not come upto this stage, what to speak of crossing it. This is the superior most and the last stage of spirituality. Beyond that, there is my invention; and just in accordance with that (invention), I have brought him there (beyond the superior most reach of spirituality). His apparent (physical) body only is existing in this world. This stage of Ghous-ul-Aazam is the farthest point of the region of Heart.”

Submission by R2: “An elder saint in the treatise ‘Tazkira-e-Ghousia’ has derided and scoffed (at spirituality) at the time of his end (of life). The meaning of this is not comprehensible.”

Answer: “The condition of the person, referred to in that treatise, had become gross through egoism; and he had started screaming ‘I am Ultimate Being’ (Aham Brahmasmi), due to his inferior capability. When the sharpness of that (gross) condition started decreasing, due to the troubles experienced at the approaching death, then he came to his senses, and uttered whatever came to his comprehension in that condition (of a sort of disillusionment). In our system, this condition, called ‘Aham Brahmasmi’ (I am God or Ultimate Being) comes at every stage; but the (competent) guide does not emphasize it. Whichever sublimity reaches its zenith, this very sound starts issuing forth from it. Whether someone notices or experiences it, is another matter. At long last this condition is arrived at in its perfectly ripe or baked form: that is the real condition (of the unity of self, i. e. I with God, Brahman, Ultimate, or He). On proceeding further beyond that condition, this thing almost drops out of imperience.”

17th September, 1944:

Dictation:

“Convey the tidings to M1 that the power, I had promised, I have bestowed (on him).”

“If a certain point is to be cleaned, give transmission from the same point. In making an aspirant pass through (cross) any stage, transmission has to be given from (the point of) the heart.”

18th September, 1944:

Revered Master’s dictation:

“Write to S1, that due to certain reasons, you are not able to join (the function, for which he has invited you). The heart has become sore as a result of (bad) experiences. Now I consider it proper to let S1 also have the taste (of the fruits of his bad deeds). Instead of trying to unravel the knots, they are attempting to create more tangles. All are lost in their respective intoxication. After much consideration, I have come to the decision that the spiritual state of S1 be totally snatched away. This should be done just today. Tell M1 that he should also, work cautiously, and give priority to the duties. assigned to him. So far as possible, he should remain busy with the performance of those duties all the time. I want to complete those tasks very quickly. Tolerance has reached the breaking-point. I had spared S1 (thus far) due to certain considerations. These people (S1 and C1) were not capable of receiving training of Brahma Vidya (Science of the Ultimate Reality). It was (the discipline of) following the Master, due to which I was helpless. You do not give permission (for imparting training) at all to those who learn (Brahma Vidya) from you: that will be the job of your successor-representative. If some special case is there, you may consult me. Nobody can have a correct estimate of my troubles. I do not experience these (troubles) due to having no (physical) body now. I thought, that having got the permission (to impart training), these people would be able to give benefit to God’s creation, but the experience has brought me to the contrary (conclusion).

When this is the condition of our own (people), what shall I complain about others. May God be merciful, that I may not be

compelled to use the last weapon. The indications are not apparently good. Just possible, that (use of the final weapon) may have to be adopted in the cases of some persons. CI has come to know that his spiritual status has been snatched away. His courage has given way; but he does not let this weakness be revealed to others. The meaning is clear: I am not able to find anyone except two persons (Ram Chandra and M1), whom I may consider as my own and assign work.”

“I am giving a method for work to M1. (Method, together with precaution, is described).”

“Now I do not have my physical body, so it is not possible to imitate me. At present, Ram Chandra is the one example before you. If imitation of his experience is started, there will be immense benefit. His (M1) sensitivity has opened up: practice is needed.” Special instruction followed: “This technique is not to be given out to anyone else, as it will cause harm in so far as people will stray away from the (proper) path, and start miracle mongering, which is prohibited in our fold. In case of imitation, the real (which is being imitated) also remains causing effect unknowingly, like a shadow, so as to strengthen what is imitated. Moreover, everybody cannot be able to use it (technique of work).”

“You have done a marvel (just now). I am puffed up with joy. May God make your name shine like the full moon up to the end of the universe. I can say with full authority that the method, worked out by you, has never struck anybody’s mind to this day. There can be no method better than this, to snatch away (somebody’s spiritual state). Tell M1, that this is called (real) sensitivity. This method, however, cannot be used by everybody. You have performed, at this time, something that was difficult: I remained watching its action. There has come a benefit also out of it; but this method should not be used to derive that particular benefit. However, what you may like (with regard to accumulation of that benefit) through your will power, you have my permission to do that. This is a method through which it is possible to snatch away the spiritual states of a large number of persons in one minute, at will. However, it is prohibited. Warn M1, not to tell this method to anybody, but carry it in his bosom.”

“The method, suggested by you last night, to make me oriented (to somebody or somewhere) is very efficacious. In adopting that (method) there will be no need to appoint a person everywhere to conduct the meditational session (Satsang), and yet the purpose will be fulfilled in perfect measure. You have earned praise for this new method of Satsang; and my Revered Master likes it very much. As such, introduce it immediately. Have no consideration for there being very few persons to accept or adopt it at present. If MI maybe able to practice it regularly, it will be very good. If the time, which may be fixed, falls during the course of routine (group) meditation, this new practice is to be started (by MI) just then and there (at the fixed time). This is a method, the like of which did not occur to the mind of anybody else until this day; and it brought praise for me as well. For you, there is no need of adhering to it (at the fixed time regularly). I feel, this method alone is adequate to make (somebody) traverse all the stages (of progress).”

“People are so busy advancing their claims to my Successor-representativeship. Is there any example (like Ram Chandra) in the whole Satsang (assembly of my so-called disciples)? The pride of (such) people to consider themselves to be my successor-representative is (just) false. I feel that I have found the fruit of my hardships (austerities etc.); and I feel very happy inside to see him (Ram Chandra). Just this is my sole satisfaction. The forthcoming people amongst my (spiritual) progeny be especially instructed to keep this method into vogue.”

“About two or three days back, the promise made to reward you in return for your work, has been fulfilled, i.e. you (Ram Chandra) have been granted consummation. When I informed my Revered Master about your newly invented method, He jumped out of joy and embraced me and exclaimed: ‘What a marvelous one you have structured!’ Then He became oriented to you and transmitted for a few minutes and blessed: ‘May God fulfil him (Ram Chandra) in every way!’ You have come to the extreme limit of progress. I understand that probably anyone among your successors may not be able to come up to this level. You are a model of pure sincerity (Khuloos). Many inventions will be issuing from you; and the chain of this genealogy (system) shall acquire a shine. All elder Masters

are unanimous that recommendation with regard to you is to be made to Prophet Mohammed.

You have achieved such excellence even in your languishment, as was difficult for the great and greater ones. I consider you as my very life. My love has not gone waste. One at least has developed out of it!”

“The permission (for preceptorship) granted to S2 has been revoked; and the spiritual state of SI has been wholly snatched off.”

19th September, 1944:

Revered Master’s dictation:

“The work of you both (Ram Chandra and Ml) during the night, was excellent. A function is going to be orgnized at S.. (place of Si). Ask Ml to be there on those dates, and do the assigned job. J1 has conveyed his regards to you both. My Revered Master has also sent blessings to you. You possess Revered Master’s genealogical relationship as well. Elder Masters are getting oriented to Prophet Mohammed for you.”

“When silencing of mental tendencies is intended, and creation of temperance is desired, transmission should be given from the point of Ulia (Para Brahmanda). (Pause.) This is called ‘Love’! What was my purpose, to give (special) transmission to Ml, Ram Chandra started to do exactly the same, on his own (without any specific directions to him). What is coming to your (Ml) experience just now, that exactly is the condition of Ulia. What can be done to the unlucky ones, who are not deriving benefit from him (Ram Chandra). In him, only those thoughts start rising up, which are desired by me. For example, I had brought the news, concerning Fatehgarh, that predominance of wilderness is prevailing there. My desire was that it may be removed; and RamChandra did just that without (the need of) my asking. Whatever he (Ram Chandra) may happen to do in future, that is to be taken as intended by myself. This is the example of spiritual relationship; and SI was the example of material relationship. Now he (SI) does not possess that: just on my departure from this

transitory world, this thing withered away in him. Man is he, who carries gracefully upto the end, whatever he comes to take up. I cannot say anything about your (Ram Chandra) present status: to say anything more than this will become blasphemy. Wherever you (Ram Chandra) may happen to pass, even the dust of your feet shall acquire effectiveness: this quality was there in case of Hazrat Mohammed Saheb (Prophet). Convey the tidings to M1, that (Ram Chandra) has invented one thing more. You (M1) make a confidential note about it, when he (Ram Chandra) may mention it.”

20th September, 1944:

Revered Master’s dictation:

“Happy tidings! Ram Chandra has become the accepted one (Maqbool). During this period, he brought about three inventions, one after the other. The last one is worth being written in letters of gold: it shall yield benefits after benefits to God’s creation. In this last invention, it will be needed to keep an estimate of the limit, so that all sense organs (and their entire energy) may not be drawn inwards (all at once) in a single stroke. That much should be left intact, which may be necessary. This can be achieved by no one else than the successor-representative, as Master’s Power is always there with him to provide guidance to him.”

“One of these three inventions is more useful in politics, which was suggested by M1, and Ram Chandra thought out this thing with regard to that (same suggestion). Otherwise, there is no spiritual benefit in it. He (M1) is to be given some more time to think over it; so that he may contribute some improvement to it. To other inventions, which are brought forth by dear Ram Chandra, are marvellous. Just now, his amendment, I have liked much. This may be added to the confidential notes.”

“Write to S2 that the permission for preceptorship in his case, has been revoked on 18-9-’44. It is to be written also that dear Ram Chandra sent to letters to him, viz. on 3-7-’44 and 30-8-’44, but he (S2) did not reply, nor did he pay attention to those letters. Whatever was written to him, was my order. If he continues to impart training any further, that will be improper; and just possible, it may cause wrath (in me). Has he taken to his head that

the desired conditions cannot come up in some other person? If so, then his range of vision has not acquired (adequate) width. It will be better that this letter is written by M1 on my behalf.”

22nd September, 1944:

Revered Master's dictation:

“The pole star region (Dhruva Loka) is the place, where persons of high spiritual advancement are present. Treat this region to be within the sphere of your work. Those residing in this region, have no (physical) bodies. Today, I confer on you full control over the sphere of air. (Plan came to view, giving an idea of the location of this sphere.) This plan has come to your view: the sphere beyond this, which remains imparting mobility (special function) to the element of air, is very sublime. That (very sublime) sphere may be designated as the ‘brain’ of the air-element. That will be a proper translation to some extent. This sphere is present in the (physical) human body as well. There is a practice to achieve the state of flight (levitation Siddhi), by merging oneself just into this (sphere), which is not to be given to everybody.”

“The method of inquiring into somebody's condition, is to transmit a little to him, having the thought that whatever condition is there in him, has come up (to expression). After having done this, one is to get oneself oriented to him, and observe as to how sublime is the effect flowing from him to oneself. It is however, essential that the person who is transmitting (i.e. preceptor) should be able to have sensibility to every condition of the person to whom transmission is given, and whose condition is being inquired into. There is another, better method, which is for use by special persons: dear Ram Chandra, has very often mentioned it. It consists in expanding his condition, to yield the knowledge of that condition immediately. I order dear Ram Chandra to think over what has been dictated by me, here, in response to a query from M1. Just possible, he (Ram Chandra) may be able to think of something better.”

I submitted: “There can be one more method, though not as perfect or whole, that the forceful sublimity of the other alone shall cast effect on oneself.”

Revered Master happily exclaimed:

“Just look, dear Ram Chandra has brought forth an invention so quickly. There can hardly be any method better than this, but surely, what is essentially needed in this regard, is the visual capacity for that, bestowed by me on him (Ram Chandra).

This (third) method is akin to the post mortem examination of a deceased person by a doctor (surgeon), who takes out all the inner organs of the body to discover the exact cause of death. Just like this, the condition of the person (aspirant) being observed, be taken out (in the vacuum), and then expanded through transmission, which should be given from the point of heart. Thereafter it should be observed (minutely) to find out which particles in that condition are (still) gross, and which ones have (acquired) sublimity, capable of emitting the condition. The particles which contain the capability for emitting the condition, are to be taken to have come up to the awakened state of the sublimity, (residing in them). Just this technique can be of use in Brahmanda (Kubra) and Para Brahmanda (Ulia) regions as well. Dear Ram Chandra’s theory of spiritual particles (quanta) is marvellous, and very effective. Nobody’s insight has ever penetrated into this aspect; nor has anybody ever utilized it. If you enquire of me, this is the entire sum and substance of spiritual training. The desired result can be achieved immediately through this. It is possible to climb up to (the state of) God just through this. This is simply the one method (to achieve the goal).”

“I put a question to dear Ram Chandra to make his intelligence penetrating; and he answered it in the modern terms.”

“Dear Ram Chandra has permission (for imparting spiritual training) from the Suhrawardiya family also. As such, it will be very beneficial for the person, who likes to join that fold. This too is a new method, which consists in connecting a person, whose condition is found to be confused, from head to foot, to superior particles (quanta), instead of doing anything by oneself (for him). This will bring him up to well-being slowly; and this will be something natural.”

“I have approved and accepted dear Ram Chandra’s suggestion that his reverend aunt (wife of Revered Lalaji Saheb) be

permitted (to impart spiritual training). She cannot initiate: permission is only for Satsang (conducting the meditational session and transmitting). She alone shall impart training to women; and an announcement to this effect be made among women: M1 shall testify this. If some special difficulty may arise, Ram Chandra be consulted. If he (Ram Chandra) also likes to transmit (to women), he can do so, making (them) sit behind a curtain, as was my wont: all others are prohibited (to transmit to women). If people belonging to Fatehgarh be desirous of Satsang (transmission), they can have it with their aunt; but such people will be those with whom she does 'not observe a veil. There is no need to give a declaration about this in the general assembly: people of Fatehgarh may be informed individually. In her work of training and Satsang, B1 or M3 shall not interfere; nor shall they have anything to do with it. M1 may possibly have to go there a little earlier. He is to decide all (about) this. Women will not be granted permission in future. D2 also can have transmission from her."

24th September, 1944:

Revered Master's dictation:

"One, having the heat of his body at peace and in moderation, possesses the capability of sensitivity.

Simplicity together with a special sort of flexibility is also a necessary condition. This is mostly there in children from the very outset."

"Before admitting (somebody) into the system (for training), the extent of an aspirant's capacity for grasping the the training in Brahma Vidya (Science and Discipline concerning the Ultimate Reality) should be assessed (and estimated). This can be found out from his nervous system and mental make up, with which he has been endowed by Nature. This is something general, which should come immediately to a trainer's view."

"The amount of heat, which is not in keeping with Nature, but present in the nervous system, should be taken to be the measure of a strong effect of spiritual illness in the aspirant (under observation). Release through the principle of the tub-bath is good

in such cases. The pus, present in the body, is called heat by Naturopathic physicians. This is cleaned off with the help of water through the proper channels, which are effective for its quicker release. This concerns the experience of the person who imparts training, to put in effort for the removal of the illness, in proportion to its severity. There is need of a special precaution in this regard, which requires a capability to clean off the heat only to the extent that it may be an obstruction to the progress on the path of spirituality. Care should be taken not to clean off the natural heat, endowed by Nature for the maintenance and preservation of the body. I consider Ram Chandra as possessing perfect expertness in these matters; and he is an example as regards subtle observation (and precise insight). When some trainer may happen to feel unable to clean off an aspirant's illness, under reference, he should send such a case to him (Ram Chandra). He will never commit a mistake like that, mentioned above. This practice is prohibited for use by all and sundry. No better method than the one suggested by him, just now, for removal of such illness, could come to anybody's comprehension upto now. It is a natural gift that is present in him (Ram Chandra)."

26th September, 1944:

Revered Master's dictation:

"I mentioned this new invention to my Revered Master. He was very happy, offered congratulations and asked me to introduce it for practice. It is a unique method and is very effective. This had not come to anybody's comprehension earlier. It is to be included in confidential notes, and not to be made available to everybody. Those capable of practising it, can be counted on fingers. There is no need of any amendment in this method. It is perfectly alright. MI will benefit from the practice of this method. The suggestion concerning amendment cannot be suitable for the winter season (and in colder climates). Your most important invention is concerning the earth. This (other invention^ is to be considered as second in importance." Question by MI: "Mind in its state of single-pointedness structures (visualizes) clear shapes of gods and goddesses as well as elder (Masters); and elders and incarnations may also reveal their (real) forms to the mind. What is the method of discrimination between these two?"

Answer: “If the mind brings the (departed) Master to vision according to its power, then the distinction of the Master’s kind Grace from the shape structured by the own mind will consist in that the connection to the Master will start to acquire force in the case of the Master's actual arrival, while this thing will not be there in the other case of mental construction. When the Master will be really there before you, pure sincerity (Khuloos) will come up in the heart and lightness will appear (automatically) in the flow of mind. As against this, nothing of this kind will appear in the event of mental structuring by oneself. In case of gods and goddesses arriving to somebody at their own accord, the particular characteristic of the god or goddess concerned will start to rise up in the heart, and the mentality will also be framed accordingly.”

“People have been very much deceived in so far as they have taken the shape structured by their minds to be myself; and when I did come before them, just none had the discernment to recognize me!”

7-10-1944 (10.15 A.M)

Revered Masters dictation:

“Convey congratulations to R2 that all points of his organic region (sughra or pinda) have been opened. The region of piety (Qudas) of M1 has been brought to the state of awakening. H3 is to be left to his fate: there is no need of goading him anymore. What R2 has told him sufficient. If R2 likes, he may speak to him (H3) once more. There is no need of provoking him much. About C1, the duty which I have assigned to M1, he should continue to perform without interruption. He need not be perturbed much about L1. I have thought out an arrangement concerning M1, he should continue to perform without interruption. He need not be perturbed much about L1. I have thought out an arrangement concerning M1. Let me be free from the annual function (Bhandara). I shall prepare field for him (M1) also. I tell for his satisfaction that what I have thought out cannot be put off. For the time being, only the topmost opponent has been crushed down.

8-10-1944

Revered Master's revelation

“S5 has stepped today in the cosmic region (Kubra or Brahmanda)”

9-10-1944

Revered Master's dictation:

“R2 has stepped today in the cosmic region Dear Ram Chandra's method of training, just now, is quite new, which I have liked much. This method can be applied in general, but not in the case of somebody, who may not be considered reliable. This invention, written down in the confidential notebook, is not an ordinary invention, nor can it occur to an ordinary intelligence. Whoever may have claims should just have a look at dear Ram Chandra's inventions (to know his capability). I do not mean that the inventions are to be demonstrated: it was just an expression of my happiness. I have started already somewhere that such novel inventions will occur in this system.”

Dictation from Revered Master:

“One matter for consideration is that you be made absolutely free after your physical veiling, and saved from these intricacies. One precaution is needed, viz. that you never give transmission from this stage to anybody. This is Prophethood.”

Revered Master's dictation:

“No one is a greater enemy of mine than N1. Clear expression of the effect of your working has started (New time 1.50 P.M.). Transmission be regularly given to R2. He should take due precautions, concerning diet. He should not transmit to anybody during this (special) period. He is to be made to traverse those points by way of reflection, which are necessary for the status of Qutub (Dhruva or fixed pole star). He (R2) will work in subordination to M1; and also follow whatever further orders (and instructions) be issued by me. He should take a vow that he will not allow bigotry to come close to him, and will do as ordered to – (without any thought or will contrary to it). You may assign the

work of destruction to him also according to the need. Before creating the condition, an oath to that effect will have to be administered to him; and there will also be a condition in this regard, that if he does anything ever against the orders, the power granted to him shall be drawn back to where it came from. Get him (R2) advanced beyond the cosmic region within a week. Beyond that, I will tell you later. During this period, he (R2) should practice observation of his condition most minutely so that he derives help (from such observation) in imparting training to others. He is the first person from the particular (priestly) class, whom I have ordered to be established in the status of Qutub today. Nobody from that class ever reached the status of Qutub. There is no doubt just one example (more. The reasons are quite clear, one thing I am telling for giving rest to the mind of R2. When he goes to sleep, he should establish a circle around his mother and have the firm supposition that it is connected to her body inside and outside. There should be no care for life or death. Death cannot occur before time. I had established R2 in his present stage (cosmic region). His uncle pulled him down. Now I have created capability in him (R2).

Two long dictations with detailed descriptions and instructions from Prophet Mohammed followed.

Instructions from Revered Master:

“These dictations and instructions from the Revered Prophet must have to be kept strictly confidential. Gabriel is the name of faultless intelligence. Your revelation at your office occurred at 1.15 P.M. according to the new timing (as effected in India during the second world war).”

At 7.00 P.M. R2 was to the para cosmic region (Ulia or Para Brahmanda); and at 8.20 P.M. he was made to cross it and arrive at the point of humility (Ibd); and light was cast from the point beyond that also.

10-10-1944

Revered Master's dictation:

“The light for this kind of work concerning the change of system was given first of all to Revered Master.”

At 10.55 A.M. on Tuesday (today) permission (for training others) from the point of humility was granted to R2 on orders from Revered Master. It was verified by M1.

Detailed instructions and description for confidential work of destruction work of destruction assigned by Prophet Mohammed were received, and were acted upon.

Dictation from Revered Master:

“Before the start of creation certain conditions were present in the form of mere supposition, in the Ultimate Being (Zaat). At the beginning of Kshobh (original upsurge or imbalance or stirring desire) those conditions (in the form of mere supposition in the state of perfect motionless balance of Ultimate Being), received a mild jerk (plan came to view). On the side having greater push of the jerk, those (conditions) assumed the form of a thick current, or, you can say, the particles (quanta) therein, which are needed for running the processes of the universe, were thick and throng. In other words, it can also be said that those powers, that I have just described, were there to stimulate various characters (bases of right conduct). Just these forces came to be designated as powers of discrimination (Vivek Shakti). In some of these (powers) there was a greater part of intelligence; in some others there was more material for boxing and wrestling; in still other ones there was the dark state of ignorance. When these currents came down, they started attracting such light particles (atoms) that a state little denser than sublimity came to occur. When sages studied this philosophy, they gave these (original currents) different names. All these have connection to the human body. Just now the references to (the stories of) Ganesh and Swamy Kartik (mythological sons of Lord Shiva and Parbati) are all imaginary constructions only. Just a story has been structured to establish the prestige of Ganesh. It is (in fact) that force which is connected to the anal plexus (Muladhara) (in the human’s body); and this main current reaches upto the brain. In Hatha Yoga, just this is the first (rung of the) ladder, and the last one in Raja Yoga. Though this point is very dirty, so to say, yet on it getting awakened (plan came to view), all these (other points or plexuses) are opened and powers are created. Times kept on changing; darkness continued to prevail; solidity kept on increasing; and Reality got progressively more and more

forgotten. There was search for the waves, without having any concern with the water. Intelligence continued being covered with more and more veils. In consequence, novel stories were structured for establishing one's own prestige and capability, so that those who read these stories may have the proof of their creators' flight of imagination. The result was that only stories remained; and the same started being worshipped in changed garbs. Reality lost its identity in the waves.

12-10-1944

Revered Master's instruction:

“The destruction is essential. Finish this work just today. Keep only one system intact for the time being.”

Revered Master's dictation:

“I cannot desist from saying that although you committed impertinence and rashness, yet love for me was included therein. This is the first example of a disciple who stands unprepared to accept the greatest reward (sublimity or delicacy) in the face of one's own Master. People will pine for this state; and this will remain just your share. I got you to observe the rules (of regard), which was necessarily binding as duty. You take my form to be the form of Lord Krishna. Can it be possible for dear M1 to find such an example as may bid goodbye to the greatest divine gift (delicacy or sublimity) as sacrifice to his own Master? Your name shall live for ever. I am telling you a very great secret, viz. in a way you possess Lord Krishna's mergence in you. This came to your knowledge only today. This thing had got transferred by itself. I am very happy.”

Dictation from Revered Master:

“I had given you permission (for training) in the various systems. That (permission) I am now withdrawing, as those systems have suffered destruction. Permission in only one system now remains. Regarding permission granted to M1 on behalf of various families, I am withdrawing these also, with a single exception (as in your case). Only one system shall remain. The

permission granted to B1 by A1 on behalf of many families, also stands withdrawn.”

Dictation from Revered Master:

“If someone initiates against these instructions, it shall be ‘contra-initiations’. You issue orders (to that effect). Elders of yore have praised your faith (in your Master) quite a lot, even though (your) style was impertinent. If I had not made you beware, there would have occurred a conflict concerning leadership of spiritual guidance; and the purpose would have remained only half realized. Your permission from Kabir-Panth (sect) is intact. I had got permission from Kabir-Panth, Dadu-Panth and other sects: all those permissions shall remain intact. All initiations shall be effected on my hand; and their connection shall be (invariably) with Lord Krishna. At the time of initiation, a promise will be made to the effect that all that Lord Krishna has enjoined as matters of principle, shall be observed (by the initiated person). This I am laying down for the future. Make an enquiry from me, when the opportunity may arise. About the genealogical tree, your tongue uttered the right thing. It is exactly like that, even though a little before time.”

Revered Master’s explanation:

“There was delay because, on your submission, He (Lord Krishna) wanted to orient that current through me.”

13-10-1944

Revered Master’s dictation:

“Incarnations descend from the levels of Destructional Time (Kala) and Super-Destructional Time (Maha-Kala). When more strictness is required, then the emergence is from Maha-Kala; and when lesser strictness is needed, then incarnation is from the point of Kala. They possess summary-powers. Both powers are within their command. Their form can be devotional as well as destructional. They possess a sword in one hand and a book in the other. Those coming from the level of righteousness (Satpad) do not possess such rights. Their natural power does not help during war (and conflict). Revered Prophet Mohammed was the store-

house of kindness. The incarnations famed to be in sub-human (animal) forms are mental constructions and gossip- Rama and Krishna are the only two incarnations.

“Matsya (fish) incarnation: When the times turned against the Hindus, their seers also suffered gradual deterioration from the state, which happened to befit them (earlier). As deterioration set in, there arose thoughts concerning honour and respect. By and by, things came to such a pass that every one of them started writing his own book, cooking up some story that may bring an honourable and respectful remembrance of the author to his successors and posterity. I am telling you about the gentleman who laid down the foundations of the Fish-incarnation. He performed lots of austerities, thereby developing his inner prowess (plan came to view). His reach was not upto the thought, where the idea of development gets evaporated. Whatever was there, he considered in sufficient. He was very fond of bathing, and was in the habit of catching fish. He used to catch fish and throw them in the river. This had come to enter the very structure of his blood and marrow. One day it occurred to him that something strange (and peculiar) may be cooked up to remove the defective character (of his habit) in the general view, so that the people forming a bad opinion about him may come to replace it with a good idea, and the coming generations may forsake the defect and look upon him with respect. Thinking over the problem brought about the jumping of the same fish in the river of his thought (and imagination). In consequence, he put a small fish in his bowl (Kamandalu).

Then he caught a bigger fish, which could not get accommodated in the bowl. (As usual) he returned (to his hermitage) after throwing all those fish in the river, and started writing the book. How fine is the evidence of it all that the same hermit (sage) writes that the fish not accommodated in the bowl was thrown in the river, and when it outgrew even the size of the river, it was thrown in the ocean; and when it was incapable of being accommodated even in the ocean, it started talking to that hermit. The flow of the river is always in a zigzag way. As such, the fish on growing up would have taken, only God knows, how many turns (in its body); and who would be the person of such strength that he could have thrown that fish in the ocean? People did not

use their intelligence; otherwise, this story in itself is evidence of its being cooked up.

“My position was different; and your status is something else. I never used to cross (and contradict) any book, written in times of yore. You must say what is right and reasonable. I am telling you something very secret; those, who have a casual body, are not incarnations. “Do you know why (the hermit) Durvasa is designated as the incarnation of Rudra (temperamental God of Destruction – Shiva)? He made gradual progress (through austerities) to connect himself to that sphere (Mandala), wherefrom destructive powers come down. He did a lot of swimming there, and absorbed a large part of that power into himself. As such, wherever he went, the same power, which had got stuffed into him, found expression through him. This power being destructive, caused pain to others, brought sorrow and grief to them, and made their tears flow. Since this power, having been absorbed to an almost perfect extent, had come to belong to him, and had descended into him, he happens to be designed as the incarnation of Shiva. He never attained liberation. Since it was a (destructive) Godly power, petty sages and other people gave him respect out of fear. There was no answer to this (destructive) power.

A prescription for mental illness is dictated

14-10-1944

Revered Master’s dictation:

“Dear Ram Chandra has brought about one more very effective invention. The Western people (scientists) mostly oriented ‘matter’ towards destruction; and some shortcoming remained even in what they did for the general good. He (Ram Chandra) has brought about such invention as may enable material power to cast effect on spirituality. I permit him to think more in this regard.

“This invention is concerned with using various colours created by making electric light pass through a glass-prism, on the particular practicant in accordance with the colours of different spiritual regions. I am making an amendment in it, viz. the intensity of the effect on the practicant of the coloured light passed through the glass-prism will be proportional to the intensity of

electricity. The dark grayish colour will be suitable for the cosmic region; and yellowish white for the para cosmic region. For the organic region the right colour will be reddish pink. If somebody may possess a bad character., there will be a good effect of (appropriate) coloured light together with similar transmission. Just this training was obtained by Revered Prophet Mohammed from Lord Krishna, viz. moral behavior (Sulook) tinged with very light absorbance beyond selfhood (Majzoobiat). It was just this amendment introduced by Lord Krishna. In case of the incarnation of Lord Rama, there was emphasis on moral behavior (Sulook) alone. This is a very (important) matter. You have to introduce complete destruction.”

Revered Master’s dictation:

“There is no need for broadcasting all these revelations being brought to you; or else people will develop animosity to your life. If, per chance, these secrets fall to somebody’s ears, who may prove to be an enemy, then you have to do away with it through a particular (spiritual) practice. It is just possible that you need to live in the world (physically) for quite a long time. It will depend on the need: Whatever is proper will be done. I like to confer some special powers on R2, so that he may work in that (particular) sphere.

“Not even one generation of this fellow C1 can earn liberation. Never call him to your place. I can pardon S1. I grant you the right to be as relentless to that person as you may like; and M1 should also not be sparing in this regard. There is no need to consult me (any further) in this matter.

“N1 had no idea even in a dream as to what personality dear Ram Chandra was going to be. What power could have stopped it from coming into being! I have prohibited him (Ram Chandra) to use that power. He can use it only to serve the purpose which he (Ram Chandra) has come to fulfil. If he now invites the (Sudarshan) boomerang (powerful destructive weapon of Lord Vishnu, the God of preservation), it will start its action immediately. Since I was aware of these conditions, I had restrained him much earlier concerning these matters. He should never invite the Destructive Time appearance (Kalarupa) of Lord Krishna. N1 had referred to this sometime in his gossip-mongering. His impression that a

special personality had come into being was correct, though he had no knowledge about his whereabouts. What elder sages have written about him (special personality) is rather metaphorical. One thing more has been mentioned as a secret about him, viz., his origin from a virgin (mother). That was an expression of their conceptions.

Revered Master's remark:

“The darkness you have seen in this plan, preceded by innumerable armies, is the same plan that was brought to Arjun's Vision.

Dictation from Revered Master:

“Whatever Lord Krishna has revealed is correct, word for word. The five husbands of Draupadi are in invention of the left-way (Vama Margin) priests.

“Intuitive comprehension of the Vedas had descended (on seers) exactly as it is coming upon you just now. Only the shape (of it) was somewhat different in accordance with (the difference of) the times. If your connection had been turned after that (old) way, you would not have been able to comprehend (anything). Due to the practice of celibacy (Brahmacharya) generation after generation, people possessed such a plan quite naturally, as (it) used to be identical (to and) in harmony with the voice of the Nature. It just needed to be touched off. Simply on account of this, intuitive comprehension (Shruti) has adopted a different shape now: What is coming to you is also the voice of the (unknowable) Transcendent.”

In response to a question from R2, Revered Master explained: “Every action of a human being leaves an impression on the mind, which remains in touch with the casual body. When one departs from one place and is reborn at another place, that material (of accumulated impressions) persists and is carried over by oneself (from the past life to the new one). If, in the present life, one has not performed good actions, the impressions brought from the previous life will start their fruition (Bhoga) i.e. being enjoyed (or suffered) when a favourable climate (for their fruition) is available.

The actions performed in the present life, whatever, will mostly bring immediate punishment or reward in their trail; and a few shall be carried over for fruition ahead. This chain shall continuously go on upto the final dissolution (of creation). Impressions will be coming one after the other for fruition (enjoyment or suffering); and this chain will continue without being broken, unless it comes to an end. Now the question arises as to how this fruition (of impressions) may be brought to an end! The device for this purpose, which is most superior, is to surrender oneself to somebody and have no concern with the fruition of impressions. There is no book of accounts (balance sheet of actions and their fruition etc.) in Nature: a human being structures his own fate; and creates by himself the shape of the fruition of the impressions.”

To another question, Revered Master continued to reply: “I have already replied to this query, i.e. the condition of the fruition of impressions takes shape when the climate is favourable to it. There is no question of compound interest. There is no third or fourth place realization in it. Everything germinates and grows through warmth. Just this is to be comprehended, that the ripe condition for the fruition of the impressions brought (from earlier life) shall develop quickly to the extent that these remain in touch with the warmth of love for the Real; and that and aspirant’s (immediate) potency for fruition (of impressions) restrains their being carried over (for fruition in the future. In our fold, formation of the impressions of present actions gets stopped if the real form of love (and attachment) is developed. Only fruition (suffering) of (impressions of) past actions remains. This is a philosophy and it can be detailed out, which, however, shall need pages after pages being scribbled on; and the mind of the person, through whose mediumship (the knowledge of) all these things is descending, will not be able to work continuously in revealing these (mysteries) for that long period of time. Moreover, there is also not much need for grasping all this. I have brought a lot (of knowledge) for comprehension, in a few words. If you (R2) like to see it practically, it can be possible. That will take less time as well. However, one thing is certain, viz. if an impression is brought down, the shape of its fruition shall start immediately. That is not to be quite congenial. Dear Ram Chandra has referred in his diary to a mass of impressions descending on his heart. He has been suffering that for thirteen years now.”

15-10-1944

Revered Master's instructions:

“Snap off all connections above me. There can be no order other than this; nor any other device (other than this) comes to comprehension (for the fulfillment of the purpose). I am helpless in view of God's command. Those who are initiated on my Revered Master's hand, will have to be initiated on my hand. In other words, the initiation of all those, who have not been initiated on my hand, shall get snapped off. I am utterly helpless in this matter. Those, whom I have initiated myself on my Revered Master's hand, shall retain their connection with me without the need of a fresh initiation. I shall draw that power or effect (o initiation) to myself. The difficulty arises in case of those who have been initiated by my Revered Master on the hand of His Revered Master (and so on and on). Enlighten K1 of J.. that this system has now got reoriented; and all systems, which were earlier connected to it, have come to an end. This work can be certainly done by way of indication; but you do it actually after the annual function. When you give permission (for training) to your respected aunt (wife of Revered Lalaji Saheb), then you establish her connection with me, before granting permission. Whatever difficulties may arise in that respect, you consult me about all of them.

Revered Master's dictation:

“Revered Lord Krishna has reserved a huge treasure for you. I have been a pointed (to work) after your physical veiling (as well). This is God's command. As such there can be no escape from it. I have given indications earlier also, that proposals are under consideration (to this effect). Your perfect merging will not be found in anyone else.”

The dictation continued, in reply to a query from M1: “Disciples will be able to acquire merging in you to the limit just short of prophethood. Do not transmit to anybody from the point of prophethood. This has been made reserved for someone else. The knot (of this secret) shall be unravelled later. Nobody has understood you.”

16-10-1944

Revered Master's verification:

“All that Lord Krishna has told you.

17-10-1944

Dictation from Revered Master Lalaji Saheb:

“Warn R2 that if he ever goes against my orders. I shall snatch away (everything from him). Those who have performed initiations on my hand and whose connection to me is not direct, i.e. those who are not initiated by me are all cancelled. N1 has done this quite a lot. Initiations on my hand (performed by N1) all stand cancelled. In the future, all initiations to be performed, will be done in the new system. Whoever enters these new systems viz. Sant Mat, shall be required to recite the Gayatri incantation (Mantra) as compulsory.”

18-10-1944

Dictation from Revered Master (8.30 P.M.):

“Move sage Agastya for effecting political change just today. Thereafter, work shall be assigned to M1 by me. Just now (the angle of) my eye on B1 has undergone a change. This fellow is creating complexities. You are dealing concessions. If I had not possessed this capacity, those people would have finished my spiritual assembly (Satsang). I have done away with complexities.

At 9.30 P.M. Revered Master informed:

“The status of Qutub has been bestowed on dear R2 from God's Almighty Court. May God's benignancy be always with him. ‘O brother, thine is the great sepulchre of worship (a Persian half couplet).”

Revered Master's dictation directed to M1:

“I am feeling so happy today that a person like dear Ram Chandra came into being through me. If I permit him to apply full force, he (Ram Chandra) can turn up the whole earth. I, however, have not structured his tendency so as to entertain thoughts to that effect. Such a personality shall not come now. If somebody may study his earlier life and circumstances, many such things will be found therein as will be noted in the biographies of some great personalities in some form or the other. He has been dealt to such harms through thought, as are dealt in a manifest way to great personalities. His initial condition which he is often able to remember, and compare also with his state, is what came to the lot of sages after traversing all stages. The times, however, did not retain that state. Here is the person whose biography needs to be written down. I have deliberately removed him from the work of destruction; and what has been assigned (to him) is Nature's command, so that he may not in his usual way be (unduly) hasty, which may happen to be against (the course of) Nature. “Tell R2 that this is a high status. He should remain careful.”

19-10-1944

Revered Master's dictation:

“I was in high spirits at the time. I had ordered dear Ram Chandra to awaken the condition of Qutub-Ul-Aqtaab in R2 immediately. His opinion, however, proved correct. I called R2 and observed him to find that he was really not yet fit (for that status). He should remain hopeful. I could not form a proper estimate out of love. I found myself in such high spirits today that I could not contain myself. R2 was granted the status of Qutub-Ul-Aqtaab (Dhruadhipati); and M1 was raised to the status of Ghous. May they enliven my name. When nobody else was available. I helplessly had to cool my heightened spirit with dear Ram Chandra. Now I am calm. Now listen to what I have to say about the status of dear Ram Chandra. Imagination and supposition is incapable of forming an estimate of it. His status has been raised further yesternight by the power of the Lord of Preservation (Vishnu Shakti). He has been permeated; and the power subservient to that has been ordered to work in accordance with his (Ram Chandra) instructions. Just this had been communicated

to him last night by sage Agastya. Dear Ram Chandra correctly grasped the cause of my heightened spirits. The reason was that I became full of enthusiasm to observe the status of dear Ram Chandra. This has been my condition since yesternight. VI committed a mistake by going away (early yesternight).”

Revered Master’s instruction:

“In the genealogical tree, ‘Om Tat Sat’ will be written to start with.”

21-10-1944

Dictation from Revered Master:

“The above-mentioned principles (dictated by Lord Krishna) are concerned (mainly) with practice. God’s entity should be taken to be one. Useless kinds of worship should be abstained from. Religious bigotry is to be detested. God alone is worthy of worship’ and as such God alone is to be worshipped. Guru should be honoured (and respected). Such principles are to be adopted as may cause benefit to others. Living should be made so simple that on seeing it, people have an impression of good thoughts. I have always been, and am even now, opposed to idol-worship. Its grossness spoils the heart. A promise to this effect should be taken at the time of initiation. Otherwise also observance of all these principles of good conduct is essential. Idol worship is to be strictly prohibited. If the Ghous of Najda (Arabian plateau) may like to join the (new) system, he too should be required to accept observances of these principles. I think it will be good if this (new) system be named ‘Sahaj Marg’. I do not like any adulteration of Mayavic (phenomenal) elements in it, which may create upsetting trends in it and cause sectarian (or fractional) conflicts (and quarrels). As regards designation, the name suggested by M1 viz. ‘Satpad Panth’ can also be alright. However, there is no need now to change it. Let it (Sahaj Marg) remain, just as it is.

“The method of transmission will remain unaltered. In case of ritualistic practices (like reciting incantations etc.) changes may be introduced according to particular mental tendencies in keeping with ancient Indian (Hindu) traditions. This will be known in

proper time. I shall be telling these sorts of new methods also to dear Ram Chandra. If somebody may need some special practice for some special purpose of warding off (or correction) etc., he may consult him (Ram Chandra). If proper care is not taken of such a tremendous personality (as that of Ram Chandra), who knows what may come to happen (all of a sudden). I am telling the event of the previous night to M1. Since dear Ram Chandra has an inventive temperament, he entertained a thought yesterday as to what effective method costing least labour may be there to have a large number of sages divested of their spiritual status. As such, he could comprehend the method in a dream yesternight; and he immediately started its application. I immediately introduced the antidote and compensated the harm. The method is worth nothing and quite unique. (It is, however, to be strictly confidential).”

24-10-1944

Revered Master's dictation:

“Today VI is brought up to the region of Kubra at 10 A.M. Sughra is called Pinda Desh (organic region). Kubra is called Brahmanda (cosmic region), and Ulia, para Brahmanda Mandal (para cosmic region). Beyond that starts Satpad (region of purity of being). Qudsa (region of piety) is the top condition of Satpad. For the reply from the Ghous of Najda, a waiting period of three days may be allowed. Your method for snatching off (spiritual status) is best.”

Revered Master dictated the basic principles concerning aspirants under the system of Sahaj Marg:

1. In our fold much emphasis is laid on faith (Aitaqad). That is the first step (of the staircase). To ripen it is every aspirant's duty. Without this proper benefit is not derived.
2. Every aspirant must first decide in his heart whether this particular method shall do him/her good; and this will be evident to him/her through (his/her own) experience. Then there should be an orientation to ripen faith; and compliance of one's guide's orders should be considered as duty.
3. It should be made comprehensible to the aspirants that what is being done to them (through transmission) is not mesmerism

(hypnotism) but the way of connection (the aspirant) to the Ultimate Being; and that this is the main thing (under this new system viz. Sahaj Marg). So long as an aspirant does not decide well in his heart and comes to have trust in the guide, there is no need to make him/her start.

4. The consideration of character is the main thing and Brahmacharya (celibacy) is also strictly essential. This is the way of devotion (Bhakti), and whatever else may be achieved along with.”

25-10-1944

Revered Master’s dictation:

“The merging of myself in you, that I have brought about, has never been done by any elder (Master) in his successor-representative till now. Your movement has gone still further. The matter is settled. The (proposal) for movement ahead is that you be made completely rid of Samskaras (impressions of past actions); and in order to maintain physical existence, Vishwa (universe) may be taken (to be your form). This matter has, however, been left (entirely) to me. I am worried most about my work. Your age is just nothing yet. I am, however, telling something to be noted for future reference, that it is all the miracle of Master’s love. I understand there has been never such an example on earth to this date.”

Dictation addressed to M1:

“You (M1) have no awareness of your state. Excepting dear Ram Chandra, yours is also a unique example. The knot of this secret shall open afterwards-may your life be long by God’s Grace. I have brought a very happy tiding for you. From this day onwards, whomsoever he (Ram Chandra) will transmit to, he/she will get connected to Lord Krishna. This is the very first connection, that will start with him (Ram Chandra). This condition contains a somewhat grayish green hue in it. I liked both of you (Ram Chandra and M1) to be benefitted; and hence gave orders to you.

“The condition of dear Ram Chandra has undergone a metamorphosis, the zenith of which has not been arrived as yet. The source of transmission (to him, at the roof of this

metamorphosis) is to be kept confidential. In him the connection combining me and Lord Krishna has started.

“During my life-time, I have very often been taking (my) representatives to my side. Today I took dear Ram Chandra to my side. Nobody can have the power to tolerate my taking him to my side in this free state (of myself). My taking somebody to my side means something. It means that I have left no wealth (with me) that has not been bestowed to him by me. He is over flooded with (divine) wealth from head to foot. I had once said that there is effect in the dust of his feet. Now I shall say that the dust on which he happens to tread, shall acquire the characteristic of the burnt powder of the Tur Mountain, as the proverb goes (about the mountain on which Moses had the vision of Divine Light, turning the mountain to burnt ashes and throwing Moses into unconsciousness). This (dust tread upon by dear Ram Chandra) will have the effect of awakening the vision of the Ultimate. This (however) is not to be taken to mean that the dust on which he treads be thrown into one’s eyes. This narration is meant to express the idea of piety.

“A new kind of transmission will start with dear Ram Chandra, which is to be designated as ‘Ganga Jamuna’ i.e. a combination of my and Lord Krishna’s transmission.” [Revered Lalaji Saheb belonged to Fatehgarh in the district Farrukhabad of Uttar Pradesh – northern state – of India, which is at the bank of the river Ganges, while Lord Krishna’s place of birth and chief activity is Mathura (and its vicinity) in the same state of India, situated at the banks of the river Jamuna. As such the combination of the names of these two sacred rivers is designated as ‘Ganga Jamuna’.]

26-10-1944

Revered Master’s dictation:

“He (Ram Chandra) has brought about a marvelous invention; and made the matter extremely easy. But this work can be possible only by him. The method is correct and people shall derive best benefit. There is moreover no harm in adopting it.

“The new method is like this: First of all the points of the organic region be all cleaned through force of will. Then the points and areas of the cosmic region upto where the aspirants is to be taken, be cleaned. Thereafter the points of the organic region be opened in the natural way’ and just like that the points ahead of that (in the cosmic region and beyond) be opened in the natural way. If transmission is oriented to both at one and the same time, the perfection of the organic region will also be achieved, and the stages ahead of that too will be getting perfected side by side. The (application of this method, however, certainly needs celibacy (Brahmacharya); and the brain (mind) must be sufficiently strong.

“The second technique that can be used consists in opening points and stages in accordance with the stage of the strength of an aspirant’s heart and brain. But this estimate can not be there in every person. As such, everybody should not start using this (technique). It will remain in his (Ram Chandra) lot alone.”

Dictation addressed to M1:

“Can such an example be found anywhere else? He (Ram Chandra) has something still more in his mind viz. enabling the aspirant to traverse all stages side by side. But there will be nobody to take up such training. For all these things the instructions are (to be noted): love is the (main) condition for the aspirant, since he/she is certain to develop (perfectly) but the danger of going against (the guide) shall persist (unless perfect love is there).”

The dictation, as usual, continued:

“Only I know your status (and capacity). Your training since the very start has been just like this, viz. you always grasped everything; and your assessment was ever correct. I also never concealed anything from you, nor shall ever hold back anything. As such, I am imparting this (very special) instruction to you: ‘Whatever terrible hardships you may have to undergo, you should not open that eye (i.e. activate that power), which Lord Krishna had done during Mahabharat.’ That power is active to this extent automatically; and that is Lord Krishna’s gift. If Lord Krishna orders for some work, you should open (the eye); but it must be for that work alone. It is not to be used for any other work. I have

bestowed immense power on you for destruction: You can use it (anyway).”

Dictation addressed to M1 at 9.00 P.M.:

“You were getting too much worried and worked up about the idea that some such invention be possible that whoever is made devoid of spiritual condition, be aware of it immediately. He (Ram Chandra) has invented something like that, viz. the purpose be served without the need of snatching off (the spiritual condition). The technique consists in stopping and solidifying through one’s will wherever the effect of spirituality may exist (in the person concerned) even upto the sound or vibration (effect)-technically called Shabda. This will turn the concerned person’s inner state to something like stone, which may be made as solid as desired. This technique is for teaching a lesson (to the person concerned); but this should not be used unless one has no other choice. (Pause) Just now he has introduced a modification, which has made me bounce up (out of joy). May God bestow upon him yet higher status and make my name live (for ever). The modification is something quite natural and I have mentioned about it also earlier somewhere. It consists in solidifying (the condition) from one’s left side, and retain the power of one’s right side for reopening it. Now this technique is perfect (Pause) He has made this system., viz., Sahaj Marg, so easy that the labour of huge time is saved. But alas! Where are the aspirants (to reap the benefit)!! If somebody is trained through these methods without creating capacity, he/she cannot appreciate it, nor can proceed on through the strength of the trainer or guide.

“It is more than twelve years since my physical veiling. During this period, the harm suffered by our brethren, i.e. disciples, is known to God or to my heart alone. The reason is that during my life – time, my ‘subtle body was present in every body which ensured their security and brought about their spiritual progress. With my physical veiling subtle bodies also went with me, and they became devoid of this blessing. As such, during this period (of more than twelve years), whoever liked, dealt harm to them (disciples), and misguided them one way or the other, trying to keep them away from me. When that (gap) period came to an end, and the Omnipotent Nature boiled up to come to Its own, a (suitable) personality again came into being, whose subtle body is now

present in them; and security is ensured (again) in every way. As such there is always need for the controlling agency of the Master, and just this is the meaning of the successor-representative (Sajjada Nashin).

“If something remarkable may happen, one should immediately get oriented to the (Master’s) controlling agency.”

27-10-1944

Revered Master’s dictation:

"I am telling something very remarkable. If some time there is an occasion of difficult conflict and confrontation with someone, who may be really perfect, then one should merge oneself in the controlling agency. Then my own power itself shall start functioning. There is no difference between the guide and the successor-representative. Someday I had referred to you as Vasu in some form. These are powers of Nature; and the entire solar and terrestrial order depends on them. There are eight Vasus. Now I am telling something about him (Ram Chandra). He is controlling the Vasus. This status did not fall to the lot of anybody except him since the beginning of creation. This is a matter of great secrecy, that I have revealed. I am also surprised that this stationary residence is nowhere. Whatever step is there, it is forward.

“You (Ram Chandra) have been granted a place among prophets (Nabi). Angel Gabriel has just brought that same message. Yours is the second place after Reverend Lord Krishna. This is the beginning. The end is still far off. God willing, my dear one is to be honoured even with further prosperity. Your words shall function as commands. The status of Prophet starts with religious leadership (Imam). The condition starts earlier than that. That is also called the condition of Prophethood (Nabooat). I was in that condition, and had transferred it to you upto that state in my life-time.”

Dictation addressed to M1:

“Nobody understood me during my life time. If people had appreciated me and taken work from me, I would have survived further on. I had compromised (myself to the fact) that people did

not need me. All of my capacity and whatever gifts. I had received from my Master, was all transferred by me to him (Ram Chandra) and put in a dormant state. Mark the fineness of dear Ram Chandra's brain: he has grasped the technique immediately.

“Revered Lord Krishna had arrived together with me, and transmitted to dear Ram Chandra. M1 has also derived benefit to some extent. He (Lord Krishna) has blessed dear Ram Chandra to be filled up (fully) with spirituality; and also made provision of butter and candy (which Lord Krishna is reputed to be very fond of for his own consumption as well as distribution among playmates) for him, and to whomever it may reach through him (Ram Chandra). There will be no dearth or scarcity. Dear Ram Chandra remained linked only to me in thought. It was disrespect to some extent. It has been pardoned. He should take care in future. There has been some more progress occurring in him. Lord Krishna has put Kuber (God of wealth and prosperity) under his (Ram Chandra) charge; and this prosperity shall increase on and on beyond him in the system. (Plan came to view.)”

Submission by M1 (time 9.00 P.M.):

“When Master got located in one disciple, others remain frustrated (and unfulfilled) Etc.”

Answer: “You might have studied geography. The sun's rays fall directly and sharply on the equator. Beyond certain angle the sun's rays, on account of the distance etc. do not create that (amount of) heat, but remain providing light to that region continuously. Just this is the reply to this thing, viz. why my current has become located on and is going straight to someone. In other words, it can be that if one who has acquired closeness to me to a certain degree, my ray falls sharp on him/her to the same extent. The shining power remains one and the same, i.e. my eye is the same for everybody and I consider everyone as my own.”

28-10-1944

Revered Master's dictation:

“It has now become very difficult to stop dear Ram Chandra from climbing up in the (sphere of) the Ultimate Being, where is

real residence is located. One device comes to comprehensive viz. he may start transmitting to me when such a condition should arise; and I shall immediately control and situation. He has carved out his position sufficiently there, and tremendous expansion has started.

“I have just revealed the state of Ram Chandra at birth to both of you (M1 and R2). It was the same transmission which condition came down with him. This condition was purely of Zaat (Ultimate Being), without the least touch of Maya (phenomenal materiality) in it. I too had come own together with a state, which was akin to it.”

Revered Master’s instruction:

“At the time of the destruction of K..., you should throw a ring all around, so that nobody (needing destruction) may be able to escape. The blood of the martyrs of K... is even now calling for its destruction. The sight of their restlessness and pain at their last moments is live before my eyes. At such sacred places, there was (organized) bloodshed. The blood of kings has also been shed therein. They have shed the blood of such persons as were responsible for the maintenance of an entire world.

“The sight (of happenings) at that particular temple is passing (like a reel) in front of my eyes. Dishonouring of mothers (and sisters) there has brought bloody tears to my eyes (even) on my being free (from physical bondage). Such cruel persons have to be dealt with (there) as may not be present even amongst tyrants. The race, which consists of elements that assign to themselves no job except sucking the blood (of others), deserves being entirely ruined and destroyed. It was the race whose flag has flown over the whole world, which has satiated the biggest and best people with the nectar of its spiritual attainments. Piety was (developed) to the extent that every ion of air was emitting its fragrance. And now this day of (degeneration) is here! If our observe with intuitive vision, you shall find every particle of these (persons) filled up with that condition, which has its pull towards hell. One great secret, I am telling you: in case of someone, whose condition, which has its pull towards hell. One great secret, I am telling you: in case of someone, whose condition does not indicate any possibility of improvement,

and whose actions are to take that person to hell, her plan (to this effect) starts developing in hell during his/her life-time.

“The work of Brindavan be assigned to M1. He should do it with full force. R2 should remain drawing out life of everyone, making exceptions in case of those who are good and God-worshipping. The work of P... is to be done by you (Ram Chandra) and M1 together.”

Revered Master’s instruction:

“What Lord Krishna may tell you, you should get verified by me, so that the possibility of missing it may be removed.”

Revered Master’s orders:

“Destroy the temple H.G. just today. An event just now has been prevented from happening there. A pious lady (devoted to her husband) happened to reach there. An attempt was, made to infringe upon her modesty. She immediately prayed to God for protection of her honour. Nature waved up at once; and no harm could be caused to that lady. She was the wife of a crippled person, who would not have been able to protect her. This work is essential above anything else. That temple should group in flames. Make use of the special powers of your present state. Even if you have to sit awake for the whole of this night, this work is not to be stopped. Until I issue some other instruction, this work (of destruction) should continue unabated; and this work is assigned to you only. All other work is to be left aside (for the time being). One thing more is necessary: The homes of all those who were a party to the infringement upon that lady’s modesty have to be made devoid of light (to continue the genealogy of their family-line) by the morning.”

29-10-1944

Revered Master’s dictation:

“I have not bestowed powers on you to remain sitting, after absorbing them. These are for use at the time of need. Man becomes free when the question of envy and ownness get

obliterated one's life. It requires a lot of time to create it. On (careful) thought, all will be found to possess the same force, which produces their movements. The customs (and traditions) differing from time to time, are to be adopted (and respected). This thing was at its zenith in me. Lord Krishna is the current of Real Ultimate Being (Asal Zaat).

“By designating ‘Ganga-Jamuna’ transmission, my purpose is also that both of these elements will proceed together; or you may say that my and His (Lord Krishna) current, will remain mixed up, and the whole world will be lighted with you. Its appreciation shall reach people after your physical veiling.

“At Mathura, if you like to stop the spring of Yamuna somewhere, you take help from sage Agastya. Love means automatic inclination of the mind to perform whatever may be ordered by the Master, i.e., no hesitation at all in following the order. In case at Mathura your secret is somehow out to the priests (playing host to pilgrims to fleece them) and they oppose you, then you pray to call Lord Krishna together with His well-shaped boomerang (Sudarshan Chakra).”

30-10-1944

Revered Master's dictation:

“Today at 9.45 A.M. K2 is perfected in the cosmic region, and dear Ram Chandra has pulled up to the para cosmic region. Now his area of stroll is the spiritual kingdom of that region. I have never seen a better vessel (i.e. capacity) than yours (Ram Chandra). To digest the transmission of such a Great Personality and of such a state, as was given to you yesternight, was just your job! As the proverb runs” ‘digested it even without a belching, even once’. It (transmission) penetrated so as not to leave its trace anywhere. My dear M1, at that time I felt an urge to have an estimate of dear Ram Chandra's vessel (capacity). I remained filling him continually for fifteen minutes, but there was no indication of any filling of the vessel. I can say with full confidence that in any other case, such transmission for even half of that time would have resulted in the heart being torn asunder. He remained almost unaware of such a tremendous transmission from me. It appeared to him as

something light, as it is during routine Satsang (group sitting). To fill up this vessel is beyond my control May God grant him a yet higher status!

“At 10.35 A.M., I arranged transmission to him from Lord Krishna for seven minutes. The vessel has not even now got filled up.”

Dictation from Revered Master:

“Whatever is snatched away by him (Ram Chandra) from various persons is stored up here. If it needs to be returned to somebody, it will be from me, i.e. I shall need to fill anew upto the limit of that person’s condition.

“The method to enlarge the vessel is this: First, transmission is to be given a little more than what the aspirant may be able to absorb; then it should be got digested, and this method is to be continued on and on, to create a high (capacity) vessel. Sometime when the state is enhanced beyond (capacity), there also arises the need to help in digesting it. There should not be pressure on the heart in any case. Otherwise, the aspirant’s courage will get (adversely) affected.

“At Mathura, make four to six miles along the bank of the river Yamuna illuminated (spiritually); and it will be better that all of that (area) gets the touch of your feel. At Brindavan also, your work will be just the same. That is a very holy place. The priests have spoilt it. Make a start with their total destruction. The work that you bring (unfinished) there from, will have to be continued in the home as well. The sight of the river Yamuna at Brindavan is in my view. It still retains the effect (to some extent), because it has not been a place of general approach by common people (like Mathura). Just possible, some order may be received for the place where the brother of H4 has given up his physical frame. He died under enthusiastic intoxication for Lord Krishna.”

Revered Master’s dictation continued:

“Here is a wonderful invention. The heart has a connection with every point. It is the way that takes (the aspirant) upto the highest point (Dhura). In view of this thought, dear Ram Chandra has brought about a tremendous invention. All difficulties are now

made easy. The apprehension for a fall has diminished. Holds and hurdles have been got rid of. The method is this: While transmitting to the heart, the thought be taken that the cosmic or para cosmic region is being brought to awakening. The reach of the heart being upto the highest limit, the sublimity of whatever point (or region) be taken in thought, shall blossom, and the path will be clear. For example, if the thought for opening cosmic region be taken, the thought shall reach upto that limit, shedding light on all points below it; and this will keep the path always clear. This is the method which every trainer should write on the first page (of his manual notebook). This method can take (the aspirant) upto the higher point; and the method for ahead of that, which is my invention, shall be (kept) confidential. He (Ram Chandra) has comprehended it; but I have not allowed it (to all and sundry). It is a method which can be helpful in opening every point fully. The person, using it, must from a restrictive thought in his/her heart, so that the awakening beyond the (fixed) point does not occur. It will help upto the limit of the approach of the trainer. Whatever structurization of dear Ram Chandra has taken place is the fruit of not only my work but of his labour. (Pause) I had (acquired a special) efficiency, viz. I used to carry over work from the wakeful to the dreaming (state of consciousness) for completion. (This is to say that whatever work I was not able to complete during my wakefulness, I used to complete it in the dreaming state.)”

31-10-1944

Revelations by Revered Master:

“Today at 9.25 A.M. K2 was made to cover the para cosmic region and his point of (prayerful) humility (Ibd) was opened. At 10.35 A.M. the light at the point ahead of that (Ibd) was stimulated; and at 10.50 A.M. permission (for special work) was granted. At 11.55 A.M. the status of Qutub was bestowed on him. May God shower benediction!

“The Ghous of Najda got his spiritual condition totally snatched off yesternight. It was the result of (religious) bigotry that he came to see this day. K2 be instructed to avoid associating with women folk. If somebody comes to him for training, he should tally with me whether training (in that particular case) is to be imparted or not. If my words fail to reach him, he should inquire of dear Ram

Chandra. There is no need of filling up every Tom and Dick. Just this instruction is for R2 also. I am telling this for everybody who has authorization.”

Dictation at 5 P.M. addressed to M1:

“Yesterday I had mentioned that I carried over work from the wakeful to the dreaming state. I was really an adept in it. However, at that time (of mentioning about it yesterday) I desire to test dear Ram Chandra; and it was the first (such) occasion. I wanted to assess how much (sensuous) craving was still remaining. He got through the test successfully; and the merit of the case is that he comprehended also that I intended to test him (while narrating about my own condition). To keep something secret from such a person, is difficult for me. This matter was something very deep, but it appeared to him as floating on (the surface of) water. That is his personal capability; and God-given. He is simple to look at (only). What is it and why is it so, dear M1? (Pause for M1’s reply.) Yes, you are right, but there is one thing very subtle (and secret) about it, i.e., he has gradually progressed to acquire such adeptness as makes him glued to my remembrance all the time. Just on account of this he misses nothing. Something may possibly be forgotten due to mental weakness.

“These five sublimities, assigned to the chest-region, remain included at every stage above that (organic) region. The shape goes on changing. These drop off beyond the region of piety (Qudsa). Therefrom starts purity (Khuloos).

“Today at 5.35 P.M., I have shattered dear Ram Chandra’s last knot; but I do not yet like to tell what it is. Praise unto his comprehension!

He has grasped it. It was just this. He has acquired the capability today to cast aside his body and reach the Ultimate Being. I desire to delay this; but my inward inclination made me helpless. That is his fortune. However, he cannot leave the body. This much I have even now kept under my own control. That I will reveal at the last moment. If the inner tendency makes me helpless, that will be another matter. This state remaining, he shall not at all leave his body before time.”

1-11-1944

Revered Master's dictation at 11.35 A.M.:

“Reverend Lord Krishna has asked me to let him (Ram Chandra) be free for work at Mathura. As such, I transfer all the powers needed for that work to him.

“There is no example to match the tyranny perpetrated on the wife of Mandan Mishra by (Adi) Shankaracharya. He could never be rid of the effect of that sin. She was a housewife perfectly faithful to her husband, and entirely firm concerning the performance of her duties. After a discussion with her, he (Shankaracharya) prohibited education for women. This resulted in their (Hindu) progeny being misguided (and going astray). Mothers could not impart proper education (to children). All this heavy burden (of sin) is still weighing on his neck. He has committed murder of a whole people, and closed the door for future progress. The religious code (and system) that he established was of his own making. There is no order for it in Nature anywhere. In a way, the quality of colour is opposed to the quality of Nature: Its reflection on one's own body comes to be colourful, which is injurious to colourlessness. He (Shankaracharya) had used his will-power to degrade her (Mandan's wife), but he could not deal an harm to her. This is the condition of the crown of the Hindu community, opening one's mouth against whom shall make people turn furious. Saffron garbs are good only in their own (limited) sense: Shankaracharya was undoubtedly celibate (Brahmachari) and also very learned, but he was devoid of spiritual wealth. Mandan Mishra's wife was brought to the state of liberation; and he remained unacquainted to it. Do not force me to reveal more!

“The real service has been done by Swami Dayananda (founder of Arya Samaj) but his life did not last long enough, and he carried away his entire scheme in his breast. His plan had not (properly) got revealed, when he died.

“Shankaracharya has also introduced interpolations in sacred books. I am, anyway, telling one thing to increase your (general) knowledge: The extent to which Tilak (Bal Gangadhar) was capable. Shankaracharya was not (the interpretation of and commentary on the Gita by both Shankara and Tilak is considered

significant); Shankaracharya did not have the capacity to grasp the text (of ancient treatises) better than Tilak. He (Shankaracharya) interpolated such material (in sacred books) as may enhance the prestige of his community. By community I do not mean the Hindu community, but the caste wherein he was born. Ascetics (Sanyasins) will be rarely found to be capable; and in those rare case also, it will be their personal culture and capability (instead of being due to the system of asceticism). The reason is that the foundation on which this structure (of asceticism) has been raised was weak. For example, sand be covered with blotting paper and a building remains concealed (from view) due to the blotting paper. I order you not to rely on anything written by Shankaracharya, even if it may be correct, because on account of being unacquainted to the Sanskrit language, you cannot form an estimate of right and wrong (correctly). It is also not essential to know Sanskrit in order to be an adept in the Science of the Ultimate (Brahma Vidya). My example is (already) there. This does not mean that Sanskrit be not studied. The meaning of this whole sentence, stated above, is that one does not remain devoid of Brahma Vidya due to not having studied Sanskrit. So far as prayer is concerned, it can as well be in the language prevalent at the time. What is needed is the proper feeling (and attitude), so that it (Prayer) be accepted.”

Revered Master’s dictation continued:

“Nature has two principles – one positive and the other negative (Asbaat and Nafee). Nafee is the designation for ejection or elimination. When pus is increased, it is eradicated through this power. Asbaat is the name for (the process of) compensating the loss. These very principles are continuously operating since the very start of creation. Whatever comes to be really lacking gets recompensed by devotees; and what happens to be in excess is also brought to normalcy just through them. Nature does not have hands and feet. It is a machine continually at work. You (man devoted to the Ultimate) are the one to weaken, as well as the one to strengthen the machine of Nature. When the machine of Nature is very strong (and functioning well), that period is designated as a good time. The times are said to have suffered a degeneration in proportion to the extent of the machine (of Nature) going weak. Satyuga, Treta, Dwapara and Kaliyuga are all divisions (of time) with respect to the same (characteristic of strength or weakness of the machine of nature). At the present time, this machine is

running very loose; its various parts have gone very weak. As such, Nature's attention is getting oriented to this direction. The result is clear. There is really no secret in Nature. It is something very simple, which is the proof of Master's perfection. The ability to observe (and grasp the relevant and real) in the servant (person of the Master of Lord) is the (necessary) condition. Instruct every Qutub (under you) that whatever difficulties may occur during Satsang (spiritual get together) be solved from here, i.e. through dear Ram Chandra; and whatever order be issued is to be taken as God's order and acted upon.

“Dear Ram Chandra has suggested one method to me which is extremely fine: it has brought the solution of many problems concerning lack and excess of transmission. Every Qutub or a person of a higher state should take the thought (firmly) that whatever has been bestowed beyond (an aspirant's) capacity is transferred to Ram Chandra; and if it has been bestowed correctly, (then) it is being absorbed by and by in the aspirant. Both these thoughts should be there together. Every Qutub should try to increase sensitivity. I jumped up (out of joyful surprise) at this intuitive insight. Really this too can be the method, which dear Ram Chandra suggested. While snatching away (the spiritual state of the Ghous of Najda) the Great Entity with which he (Ghous) was connected has power for absorption as well. Whatever dear Ram Chandra suggested, he improved it also. This thing is perfectly correct and exact, viz. establishing the connection of his Master where the state of Ghous opens, to obtain the desired result (automatically).”

2-11-1944

Revered Master's instructions:

“Distribute your work at Mathura so as to allot the lightest work to R2. If the need may arise for help in some heavy work, give power to him (R2) concerning that (work), and withdraw it after getting the work completed. Allot the work concerning the Jamae Mosque to M1, and instruct him to consider himself involved in that work, even as I shall remain busy in Mathura. For the rest of the work, I shall remain telling you as developments will be taking place in due course. You get the whole of Mathura illuminated. There is not much work at Brindavan. The biggest work is at

Mathura proper. About Nandagaon etc. carry the memorandum with you, and make a note of whatever instruction may be issued. Altering the course of the river Yamuna may be essential. Near the railway bridge (hidden) geyser originates from the river. When you get one work completed, only then take up another work. Take care of your health. There is no need of finishing all the work in a single day at the cost of strain to the (physical) body. You have plenty of time at your disposal. I shall feel happy when you return getting one or two buildings pulled down. R2 can also partake in this. Just sharpen him a little. If you concentrate on some building for six hours, it cannot remain intact. You shall get light at each step. Your idea to enter Mathura after finishing work at the suburbs (and surroundings) is right.”

Revered Master’s dictation addressed to M1:

“I have just now awakened dear Ram Chandra’s point of the anal plexus (Muladhara chakra), which is the spot of miraculous powers. It has nothing to do with spirituality. I had left it out for emergency, but this point was reverberating in his thought for several days and he knew that it was not in an awakened condition in him. He was weighing it from a spiritual point of view and was desirous of knowing to what destination it was connected. (Generally) there is no need at all to awaken it. The plexus of the thousand petals (Sahasradal Kamal) has opened and come to its real state. This point is in the head and is connected to the anal plexus. Sushumna (midway nerve) goes from the anal plexus through the spine up towards the head. I have set it straight. Now both ways are clear. He (Ram Chandra) can give training according to his choice (through the Hatha Yogic way of nerve cleaning etc. or pure Raja Yogic meditational way, progressing through the organic, cosmic, paracosmic regions, etc.). For this people have devoted austere practices for many years without achieving the desired purpose. This knot is not loosened by a (competent) guide in any case (almost); and I instruct you (Ram Chandra) also not to do this. Dear M1, everyone transmits from (various) points, but to dear Ram Chandra I have given expertness to achieve the desired result through gesture of any part of the body, i.e. he can transmit from any hair root on the body, apart from the (traditional) chakras to have the same effect that may be there in case of transmission from (fixed) points. The reason of this is that he has become the source (of transmission) from head to foot, and his heart has

spread to every artery and vein (as well as nerves). This is something very special, present in him. If he makes a gesture with a finger, the flow of transmission shall start. How much to say (in praise of him)! As there is a purpose in revealing his states, I just say something. It is for the coming (generations) to take him as ideal and be proud of him.”

The dictation, addressed as usual, continued:

“Shankaracharya has sown such thorns whose shape has now acquired the hardness of spears. Just he is the person to have spoiled the caste of the priests. He laid the foundation of grossness. Idol worship flourished most in his (Shankaracharya) period; and he adopted it from Buddhists. He made every possible effort for the uplift of one particular castes (Brahmins) among Hindus. The result was that they developed the (mis) conception of their own piousness; and wise people started regarding them as fools. They established the supposition of their piousness in their mind to the extent of seeing everyone as low (and degraded). Habitual pursuance of this presumption resulted in their minds getting solidified; and the substance that clears the way to approach God became ineffective. What complaint you assert against the Ghous (of Najda), when many fold sin was present in a person of your own community. He established the priests (from among Brahmins) at such posts as may provide for the worship of their bellies without (any hard) labour, and he brought down their importance in the minds of other people. The so-called Vedic incantation that your priest recited (like a parrot) developed just in his (Shankaracharya) time or near about. Brahmin born of mouth etc.- an absurdity of such dimensions cannot descend in the Vedas. There was a Vedic aphorism, which has been twisted to be brought about in this way.

“If I am asked to speak the truth, Buddhism was a thousand times better than present-time Hinduism. He (Shankaracharya) has destroyed everything (totally) through introducing novelty. This whole system will require being upturned. Going to Mathura stands postponed for the time being. The reason for this is that the field for work could not be prepared. The work concerning the Jamae Mosque will remain assigned to M1 as usual. You shall, however, not be staying at Shahjahanpur for long. R2 and dear Ram Chandra should keep ready to go anytime. Very great importance has been given to this work; and it is the most essential

of all sacred duties. For the time being start the work concerning (the destruction of) priests (there); and assign this work to R2, because several important jobs are assigned to dear Ram Chandra and we are faced with dearth of (capable) persons. Some permanent duty, which is comparatively less important, can be assigned to K2. This job, viz. assigning duties to Qutubs (working) under him, is really of R2, Lord Krishna has gone away to survey the situation at Mathura.”

3-11-1944

Revered Master’s dictation:

“Just now, I have done something, knowing which will baffle the wisdom of elder sages of high approach, who will apprehend it as impossible. It is a technique that nobody ever applied in the case of one’s disciple. Nor was there capability to do this. It is the last thing. I have brought down the impossible to the realms of the possible. All get one to the Ultimate Being. I made the Ultimate Being with full force oriented to him (Ram Chandra). M1 has also derived benefit. This thing will be hard to describe and listen to. It is a unique method, with which only I am acquainted.

I feel the condition of my heart, and the restlessness causes to it due to dear Ram Chandra’s love, even in my (state of) freedom. There will be no example available neither of mine nor of his (love). The felt for work at Mathura has been prepared. The departure (for there) is to be effected tomorrow.”

Instruction at 8.00 P.M.:

“The field at Mathura is perfectly ready. Now there is no need for any delay. Lord Krishna has Himself given orders for (your) departure (to Mathura) tomorrow; and bestowed His special powers on dear Ram Chandra.”

5-11-1944

Revered Master’s dictation:

“Every place at Brindavan will need to be illuminated. Radha Kund is a (special) spot in Brindavan. You must go there and make it holy. Take help from R2 also in this work.”

Revered Master’s dictation:

“There is no estimate of your status. Do not transmit to anybody during this period, unless order so. Remain patient (and tolerant). So long as you have not completed this work, you cannot leave this place.”

Regarding the condition that passed at the well of Kubja...

Revered Master’s dictation continued:

“When both of you (R2 and Ram Chandra) were squatting at the well of kubja, the condition coming to experience is the effect of that spot; and gives confirmation of the correct discovery of the spot. It was an emotional condition and thoughts all became oriented to a single direction. The heart was over brimming with love. That place is good for meditational practice. There are many spots like that, about which people have no knowledge as yet. There, at every step, Lord Krishna’s Grace is overflowing. The earth has started emitting It.”

Dictation addressed to R2:

“Just now your brother (Ram Chandra) produced such a fine invention as to bring immense joy to me. I could not contain myself and came (almost) running. This invention is like this: If somebody has a special liking for something edible, then its effect, viz. the essence of the liked taste be brought down touching the tongue, so as to be absorbed into the person concerned. Repeating this several times will remove that (liking) from that person. He (Ram Chandra) structured several individuals during this period (in the meantime), but nobody as yet could come up to the level to enable me to relieve dear Ram Chandra of some of those jobs which remain duties for his subordinates. They need dear Ram Chandra in some form or another. The capability has not developed as yet (in subordinates) to catch orders directly through me or dear Ram Chandra in absentia; and start work. I wanted to reserve him free for those jobs that happen to be just for him. I wanted to keep him free for unraveling the knots of this system (Sahaj Marg) and make

it easy (and simple). Anyway, what has been possible is to be treated as a matter of satisfaction (and gratitude).” [See map no. 1, Appendix.]

6-11-1944

Revered Master’s dictation:

“There is a place at the backside of the D.D. temple. Start its destruction just now. Lord Krishna has mentioned it as a den. Just pay attention to this place (where you are present now.)”

Revered Master’s dictation:

“You made correct research about the place. The point indicated by you with your stick is quite close to where Revered Lord Krishna’s umbilical cord was buried; and a treasure is still lying buried very close to it. If some occasion for discussion comes up, I shall tell you exactly where the treasure lies. In Mathura there are a number of places where treasures are lying buried; and nobody knows about them.”

Dictation addressed to R2:

“How much praise be showered on dear Ram Chandra! The work that is difficult for bigger than big ones, is completed by him in minutes. I ordered just now to purify the mount; and if someone observes it attentively, (he shall find) it has got illuminated. Some effect of demoniac nature remains. That too shall get removed. It shall take just a few minutes to finish. (Pause) The atmosphere has started reverberating. This work is completed.

7-11-1944

Revered Master’s dictation:

“Lord Krishna has already allotted work (to you) concerning the temple of L.B... You should go to every prominent temple here. Go to the bank of the river Yamuna without fail. First read the situation of the temples. I shall give orders later just now you have a heavy working schedule.”

Observation concerning the R.J temple:

The eastern part, where the (residential) quarters of the priests are situated, was dark. The middle portion, consisting of the temple building, was somewhat desolate. On the north side of the (main) temple, there is a small temple, behind which there is the place for reverently going around Parikrama): The was extremely dark. The western side of the temple, where the tank of the elephant and the crocodile is situated, was quite glamorous. The idols were all without any glamour. [See map no. 3. Appendix.]

Observation concerning the temple of L.B. at Brindavan: The whole temple was full of showering pompousness. Carnal thoughts were prevailing.

Observation concerning the temple of G.K.: It had glamour.

Revered Master's instructions:

“The tour (of Brindavan) is over. Leave Brindavan tomorrow. Have observation of two or three temples on the side of Gwalior. It will be good if you touch some places with your feet. Those places will require to be illuminated. The best place is this, where you are sitting, viz. the temple with curling pillars. There is the temple of G.J. near Kali Daha, where danger to life prevailed. The bones of (murdered) pilgrims re still existing there.”

Question: “Do the places, observed, require to be illuminated?”
Answer: “Every nook and corner here will have to be cleaned.”

8-11-1944

Revered Master's instructions:

“Consider yourself as in charge of all the main temples. Continue filling them with Grace. Try to remove corruption. If there is no success in that, start destruction of those persons (responsible for corruption). The more places you are able to visit (personally) at Brindavan, the better it will be. The earth will also absorb the effect. That part, where the bones of (murdered) pilgrims are still lying, will have to be destroyed. Those (evil persons) who still exist there, have to be made devoid of light,

together with that temple. All the area from G.J. temple towards the west along the old Yamuna bank is dilapidated and entirely worth destruction. When you were sitting at the bank of the big current of the river Yamuna, I told you that people had been murdered there.”

Revered Master’s appreciation:

“Bravo to dear Ram Chandra’s courage. Now, the whole of Mathura is in a saintly condition. But alas! There will be extremely few people to see (and appreciate) it!”

from the (invisible) sage in charge of the maintenance of the divine order of Nature (Abdal) at Mathura. “Just now you have filled up entire Mathura with Grace. Something like this had happened once more at the time of the centenary of sage Dayananda (founder of Arya Samaj). This condition is beyond anybody’s comprehension and imagination.”

Revered Master’s dictation addressed to R2:

“Just now dear Ram Chandra had brought the gross and subtle forms of Lord Krishna to your vision. The reason is clear; see the earlier notes. He (Ram Chandra) is filled up with such powers, as may hardly come even to the apprehension and imagination of people. He has, however, absorbed and digested it all. To the extent of his control, he has obliterated fervor and enthusiasm. If some of it is there, it is just my own. One thing special in his life-story is that whatever powers have been bestowed on him, he has merged all of them. This is something that never came to the lot of anybody as yet. This is something inborn in him, i.e., the substance for grasping is present (in him) at a high level. That substance, I have taken up to the highest extent. May he live long!”

The usual dictation continued: “Kadamba tree was certainly there; and this is the old spot of Kalidaha (deep cavern in the river Yamuna where the great serpent Kali Nag was conquered by Lord Krishna in his child’s play). At the place where you are sitting at the bank of the river Yamuna in Brindavan, the traditional indigenous priests killed a Marwari businessman, who was a very

simple person, travelling all alone. It was a conspiracy, hatched by temple-priests. Their destruction is to be effected.”

Abdal of Mathura (invisible sage in charge of the maintenance of the region) intervened: “I have been assigned another duty. I am stopping my work (concerning you).”

Revered Master’s instruction:

“Order the Abdal to protect you for three months, wherever you may be. In case of something contrary you tell him that I shall snatch away everything. Removing all obstructions, clear the way upto Shahjahanpur (for him). This (arrangement), however, will be only temporary. Issue the order just now, (while) I am present.

Revered Master:

“I am just rubbing his ears.”

Revered Master:

“The order once issued is irrevocable.: (Abdal was punished this way because he was assigned the duty to protect me and R2 from cholera for two days, which he had forsaken before time.)

Revered Master’s dictation continued:

“I have set the Abdal right. If he had faltered even a little, I would have ordered you to snatch away (his spiritual status). The work at Mathura has almost come to completion. Only little remains.

“The plan of destruction at Brindavan. I shall reveal to your thought. I did not allow you to go to several dangerous places. There is no need of going to Barsana (Radha’s village). All places, however, have got to be illuminated. You just go to the other places that have been indicated. The particular place (concerning S.J. temple) which is in your thought, has to be destroyed. Time allowing, you may just go there. Going to Nandagoan is necessary. Some of the places, about which no one else can conduct research, have been allotted to you. One thing I am telling you as a matter of great secret. When Reverend Lord Krishna disappeared from this

world, there was nobody capable of carrying out His orders. Now when the divine current has taken a turn, it is necessary to make a start in that regard. As such you consider yourself as His representative, that approaches the status of His heir apparent under the present circumstances. In another sense, you treat yourself as such; and in this matter you can take light from Him also. Due to my being included, there has been a lot of convenience to you; otherwise, it would have been a very tough job facing you. You will receive light at every step; and the (spiritual) genealogical connection of Lord Krishna will commence with you.

“I am very happy with your work and shower affectionate praise on you. Consider yourself as in charge of Mathura. Whoever comes to be with you in this (work) is to become dear to Lord Krishna to the extent of his/her assistance. Concerning the note about changing the course of (the current of) the river Yamuna, I do not hold a favourable opinion now, because that place has come into the orbit of destruction, and the persons concerned (viz. hotelier priests) are to be devoid of (genealogical) light in their homes. There is no need of illuminating such places. Just avoid these (places). As regards changing the course of Yamuna at Mathura you have already done the needful before the commencement of the present conditions.”

9-11-1944

Revered Master's dictation:

“I like you to roam on all places so that in case some work may come to your lot, the particular site (of work) shall be within your sight (while working at it in absentia). You are going to Govardhan (hillock which Lord Krishna is reputed to have used as an umbrella to save the habitat and inhabitants from the wrath of the rain-God). Illuminate the spots there, as needed, after observation. Sinking down of the hillock shall get checked on its own.

“You have committed a mistake in wasting so much time. Roaming about Govardhan is needed. Going to Radha Kunda will consume much time. Time allowing, there is no harm (to visit Radha Kunda): I leave it to your discretion. The place is certainly nice. Wherever you pass along, go on making it full of spiritual

effect. The better course will be to climb the hillock and sit somewhere to make it full of effect.

“Order R2 to make Radha Kunda full of effect. The spots seen by you thus far are all artificial. There is no reality in them. The temple of Hardeo is still in a better condition; and the temples you have seen here, are not completely devoid of grandeur. If you desire to see a real place, go about three miles from where you are sitting. There you shall have the view of Nature. That is a holy place; but there is only forest all around. [See map no. 4., Appendix.]

“Just now dear Ram Chandra has done such work., as will have no example. The effect of this work can never be exhausted. It requires eyes to see. I am pleased with R2 also. Now it is disrespect to tread over this hillock with shoes on. If somebody may observe it attentively, he /she is to find the sight of divine lightning like it occurred to Moses on the mount Tur. Whoever likes to observe the phenomenon of the mount may stroll over this mount Goverdhan. To tell the truth, this hillock is filled up with that electric power, which is to be associated to the Ultimate Being. I am puffed up with joy. This is prophethood that does not fall to everybody’s lot.”

Revered Master’s instruction:

“Do go to B.J. The unique peculiarities of that place, of which pilgrims continue to be enamoured, shall all come to light (to you). That place is not worth being visited b women folk. There is no harm in visiting with you. I have ordered this under pressure. However, after visiting it, on return from there, you should warn not to go there in any way. You will have to upturn this entire region. Many homes will have to be made devoid of (genealogical) light. That will, of course, take time. You are carrying away a very huge work from here (for you). Distribute it amongst your own ones. Construction work shall remain only with you. That duty cannot be transferred. Leave aside the Yamuna bridge for the time being; it shall be looked into later on. Remind the Abdal of Mathura, by way of precaution, that in case he shirks the duty assigned to him, he will get just what punishment has been decided upon. At Mathura, you had filled up the bank of the river Yamuna with (divine) effect earlier already to a sufficient extent.

Just do not fill it up (more) with (divine) effect, as you have done in case of mount Goverdhan today.”

The order to illuminate Radha Kunda was there. I (Ram Chandra) wanted to get oriented to it. The instruction from Revered Master descended to take work from R2, who got oriented to the work. The place became illuminated. There was instruction to me to wash my feet in it so that the effect of electricity from the extremity be absorbed in the water. There was no need of washing the mouth etc. In accordance with the orders, the Abdal of Mathura was informed, and asked as to why he had stopped the work. He apologized; and started looking after my safety.

10-11-1944

Revered Master's dictation:

“I inspected your work on Goverdhan. You have hypnotized it a great deal; and the place where you sat has also become illuminated. There is a lot of praise (among sages of yore) for the work that you have already completed. Some more work remains. Return (to Shahjahanpur) after finishing it. Have rest for two days. If you had become oriented more than this, people would have started fainting on reaching there. As such, I had stopped you. I can say with (full) authority that this was just your work (alone). If one looks up (with a discerning eye), one will not find this in anybody (anywhere). Each stone has absorbed the effect. There, divine light has found a home. This is to remain a memorial to you.”

Revered Master's dictation:

“Pleasantness has started reigning at Mathura. You have performed a number of superb acts here. The bank of the river Yamuna has become very well illuminated. The atmosphere has become purified. Remain filling the earth at Mathura has become purified. Remain filing the earth at Mathura slowly with fragrant Grace. Postpone the journey (fixed for) tomorrow. Your disposition is not suited to the journey. There is no harm if further postponement for one or two days more be needed. Take care of your (physical) health.”

13-11-1944

Revered Master's revelation concerning Mahaban:

“It is the place where Lord Krishna used to rest with His cowherd playmates and companions. The cows used to form a (circular) ring around them. I presented your work to Lord Krishna. I earned praise.” Lord Krishna's comment: “Mathura has become illuminated.”

Revered Master's instruction:

“Start for Mahaban tomorrow. You will have to go to many places of pilgrimage; and illuminate places. After this (Mathura etc.) there is (a plan for a tour to Naimisharanya (Neemsar). Draw out the entire life from A...,”

An event: This evening somebody transmitted to me (Ram Chandra) for the sake of testing (me). It was a scorched condition. When his trial was over, I started work under orders. I administered a number of rounds to his heart (Qalba) and under orders from Revered Master introduced fire into his heart from the third point of the organic region in the chest (sirra). At last he apologized; and stood with folded hands. At the time of (my) transmission to him I could hear his cries ‘I am dead. I shall die...’ Revered Master's revelation. “This gentleman is a householder, who has started donning saffron robes (of recluse sanyasins). When he observed the illumination of Mathura, he began to feel itchy; and started transmission for the sake of testing you.” Thereafter the Abdal of Mathura, who was under orders to safeguard me, asked me for my orders concerning the person, who had indulged in disrespectful behavior. I told him (Abdal) that the person concerned had got his testing completed, and had tendered apology.

14-11-1944

Revered Master's indication at Mahaban:

“This is the mound, where Lord Krishna used to sit with the cowherd boys. This mound where Lord Krishna used to sit with the cowherd boys. This mound was much bigger then. The field

measuring about six Biswas (about one fifth of an acre) south of the mound at present, was part of it.” Dimensions of the locality:

East - road
 South - field
 West - field toward the river Yamuna
 North - field

When I went up on the mound, I had the feeling that Lord Krishna (as a young boy) was (still) sitting on the highest elevation of the mound in the middle, playing on the flute, and the cowherd boys were sitting all around Him. The lower portion was occupied by the cows which happened to be very healthy and robust. The whole perspective here was extremely pleasant; and they (the cows) seemed to enjoy it.

15-11-1944

Revered Master’s dictation:

“I postponed the journey today as you were indisposed. Moreover, your wife was desirous of going to Nandagaon with you. She was inwardly cooking up thoughts (for going with you). As such, I made you alight from the bus.”

16-11-1944

Revered Master’s dictation at Nandagaon:

“Lord Krishna meant exactly the pond at whose bank you were sitting. This is a very sacred place. It was here that Lord Krishna met Radha Ji for the first time. There is a forest close by where they used to play together.

Revered Master’s dictation continued:

“Somebody misguided you. I meant exactly the Kunda (deep pond), from where you have just now returned. Whoever may have indicated the pond used by the washermen: it is nothing more than a mere pond. Do not entertain doubt. You have discovered the place correctly.

Revered Master's dictation on the way back from Nandagaon:

“You will have to go upto Rameshwaram. Time is taking a turn. This duty is assigned to you. It has to be done during your life-time as well as after that. You have not been kept free from this work. I shall remain helping you as a guide. Whatever changes are to be effected in the world, shall all be done through you only. No other personality seems apparently equal to it. All the powers of Nature have been placed under your subordination. Details shall follow at the time of the journey.

Fertility of the earth has declined. The pilgrim places have suffered degeneration. The character (of the people) has got deformed. People are becoming slaves to sensuality. Pride about a birth in a high caste is increasing. Sympathy is evaporating (like camphor). Selfishness is flourishing. Fraud and hypocrisy have found a home in people's hearts. All the defects, so to say, that have crept in, will have to be removed. You will remain receiving hints in this regard from time to time.

21-11-1944 (at Shahjahanpur)

Dictation from Revered Master (concerning some letter received from A1):

“I had all talks in detail with Revered Master; and I placed all events before Him. I am helpless due to (my own) courtesy, and elderliness (of A1); but this is not to last long in me. His (A1) connection (i.e. the system) has got shattered off; but he is not aware of it.”

22-11-1944

Revered Master's dictation, directed to M1:

“Dear Ram Chandra performed such prominent actions at Mathura as were impossible for anybody else. Our respected elder (A1) of B... has no comprehension as yet about what roses have come to bloom. If I allow dear Ram Chandra, he can snatch off his (A1) spiritual state in one second. I have to quote: ‘elderliness is counted by intelligence and not by years’ (Persian saying). During my life-time, I had been treating him (A1) as my elder due to his

being a disciple of my Grand Master. Taking care of him was assigned to me, but I never let it be known. In the same vein, now taking care of him (A1) has been assigned to dear Ram Chandra by Revered Master. Just this consideration that I had formed about him during my life-time, served as a safety valve to him. I am just tolerating; but there is a limit to everything. One more opportunity is being allowed to him to mend. Heaven has already slipped away from his hands: the thought of its (so-called) pleasures still persists (in him). That too is to end sometime, after all. I had a very detailed discussion with Revered Master about him (A1). It was decided in the end to leave him to His (Revered Grand Master) mercy and benignancy. His condition has very much deteriorated. It seems very difficult for him to come to his senses.

“A great mistake is prevailing, viz. considering it below dignity to take a lesson from someone younger (in age than oneself). There is no consideration of age in spirituality. It is a kind of zeal that can conflagrate in anybody it chooses, at any time; and it mostly depends on (accumulated) impressions and love. He (A1) has (no doubt) studied lots of stories of Gulistan (famous book of Sheikh Saadi in Persian); and gained much experience.

“Dear Ram Chandra has distributed work very correctly: I am repeating it. Dear R2 has prepared the maps of G.J. temple. The residents (of that place) have perpetrated many tyrannies and cruelties on pilgrims there. Destruction of all of them shall remain allotted to R2 in addition to other duties. The red mosque is also included in the work assigned to him. To M1, the work of the two mosques is assigned, in addition to other duties. There is no need for destruction of the D.J. temple. The work about that, whatever it is, shall be looked after, when I issue orders. Destruction of the priestly class, which includes Mathura also, shall be done by R2. If I shall need to make haste in this work, I shall include Dear Ram Chandra also. Exclude P2 from destruction. Dear Ram Chandra shall confine himself to a constructive programme concerning Mathura. He is already burdened with two jobs of huge dimensions, which includes the reconstruction concerning Hinduism as a whole. I am making him tour from place to place just for the completion of this very work. He has to engage himself in a very big work. As such I am assigning miscellaneous work to you (M1 and R2). Good times are approaching quickly, and to shorten the time (of its arrival) is in dear Ram Chandra’s hands.

“After going from here, I presented all facts concerning the letter (of A1) to my Revered Master. He ordered the complete snatching away of the spiritual state of A1 immediately. I have kept (implementation of the order) in abeyance for the time being.”

Revered Master’s instructions:

“Upturn the genealogical seat of the Shankaracharya. Start this work just today. Sanyasins have suffered degeneration (of character). Only imposterity remains. Their brains are in high tide just on account of donning saffron garbs. They do not treat human beings as human posing themselves as God-shaped, and considering all wealth as theirs.”

24-11-1944

Revered Master’s dictation:

“It has become a matter of (necessary) duty for you to go to Rameshwaram and wherever else I indicate; and you have made up your mind accordingly as well. This shall yield very good results some time; and you will find this work even easier, after your life-time. I do have consideration for your health; but am helpless in this matter. The order of Nature, which you have come to fulfil, shall have to be done. I shall not leave you alone even for a single minute; and as such it may be possible that I may have to reduce my attendance here. No doubt, I shall remain taking care of the home and children. Now I am telling about some precautions concerning your health. If at some time you feel very tired due to some journey and find a decrement in energy, you immediately open the particles of the body and merge them in cosmic energy. This will not require being done for more than one or two minutes. If there is any mistake in (applying) the method, I shall tell you. In case, God forbid, some disease occurs, I shall provide treatment at once. Keep water ready. Apart from that, I am indicating what you can do yourself.

“If some trouble may develop in the digestive system or diarrhea may start, God forbid, then, having (firm) imagination of the sun, even when you are in the shade, draw red light (electricity) into your digestive system and this practice can be performed upto

five minutes. Practising it for more than that will bring the experience of warmth. If, God forbid, the trouble concerning coughing and catarrh be aroused, then draw in bluish (violet) rays of the sun into your chest; and this practice can be adopted upto ten minutes. If much tiredness is felt in the body, then in the first place I shall myself remove it; but in case you like to remove it yourself, then the technique for that will be to have the (firm) idea that a very soft (fragrant) shower from the cosmic region is falling on every particle of the body and freshness is increasing. If there is need for walking (a long distance), then you have the (firm) idea that the earth is moving backward and your steps are going ahead. This will shorten the distance. The higher the condition to which you have climbed to have this firm thought, the quicker the distance will get covered. These are miraculous achievements (siddhis), and are generally prohibited for common instruction. There is one more technique for walking (long distances), just for you, which I shall tell you at the proper time. For you there is one more method, but it is only for you (to apply). Whatever power you may have to use, just call for the help of the god in charge of that power. The work concerned shall be done by the god, whose duty it happens to be... This prescription is easy.

There can be several definitions of spirituality; and people have given its various definitions at different stages. Everyone has constructed its definition in accordance with one's own condition; but it is that simple path, which having been traversed, all the dust and din, thorns and thistles leave the mind alone; and thoughts take such a turn as to become (firmly) settled so as to be aware of nothing at all. Nothing, not even a subtle point, remains in view: There is neither self-awareness, nor any concern about family, nor even a longing for the Ultimate Being. This is something superb, which is available very rarely in the real sense. This alone is real spirituality, on arriving at which the entire army of the five-fold sensuality gets merged at its posts; and the person concerned finds his/her condition as that of a corpse. All the wealth remaining there, one does not have awareness of it. In other words, it may be said that he/she becomes as one freshly descended (from eternity) at the beginning of creation.

25-11-1944

Revered Master's dictation:

“Now the region for stroll of VI is the cosmic region. Convey congratulations to M1. Elder sages have started work at Rameshwaram. This place is growing so dark that it is essential for some big personality to go there. Dear Ram Chandra will have to go to Dwarika also, as desired b Reverend Lord Krishna. Complete the work of Dwarika during this same journey. Lord Krishna wants to make haste with it. You will need to stay for some time in the dominion of the Nizam (Hyderabad Deccan); and it will be from there that your work for betterment and well-being of India shall start. Just possible you may have to upturn the suzerainty of the Nizam. I shall tell you about this matter at the nick of the moment. If time and circumstances allow, you may return from Dwarika via Sind. There, religious mendicants have created a lot of havoc. Possibly there may be orders for destruction. I permit you to remain established in the state of Prophethood (Nabooat); and take work from the same everywhere during the journey. If per chance there is an opportunity for Satsang, come down (from Prophethood) for that much time. I also permit you to associate with whatever existing spiritual societies or saintly elders you come across or like to meet on your own during the course of the journey, as and when you choose. You have always permission for that. There is no harm in revealing the secret of my succession-representativeship to them if the occasion arises. I can say with full authority that bigger than the big sages will seem like school children to you. Assign to M1 the destruction of the Nawab’s agency at Hyderabad, engaged in the conversion of Hindus to Islam.”

“I transmitted to dear Ram Chandra for a long time yesterday as well as today. The purpose of the transmission was to pack every particle of his being with the full power of the Ultimate Being (Zaat); and I shall remain doing just this upto the time of his going to Rameshwaram, so that every particle of his being may imbibe the full effect of Zaat before reaching there. All these are, my inventions; and whatever is to come even beyond these for him, shall also be my invention. I have made possible in the human body, what, uptil now, happened to be the fortune available after leaving the physical body.”

Revered Master’s detailed instructions for spiritual training of women followed:

“The best method of imparting training to women is in the first place not to have them seated in front of oneself; but adopting a sideways posture when an occasion is there (for transmitting to a woman). Having a curtain will be useful. When the transmission is to be started, have the thought once that God has created Nature as well, and the elements that are present in it (Nature) have got converted to the Ultimate Being. Then transmission be started. Transmission should be very calm, light and fragrant. She should not be kept at the point of the heart for a long period, as in case of a man; but this does not mean that she should not be kept there (at the first point of the spiritual journey) to the extent that it may be needed. As soon as her training may permit, she should be brought without delay to the point of the soul. Sharp transmission should never be given. This should be continually kept in mind, while transmitting to a woman, at whatever stage. They should be imparted lessons for improvement of the household, and for loving their husband, if present. In case of a widow, there should be instruction for developing love for God. If faith is very firm and the trainer is also very strong and of high capacity, she may consider the guide’s soul as God’s body and meditate thereon (which I generally prohibit). Meditation on Master’s form (Shaghal Rabta) should in no case be prescribed. And she should not be at all permitted to adopt it: it should be even prohibited. A wife can adopt this practice in case of having a husband: that is permissible. The spiritual guide should also take precaution that she will not fall madly in love with him. As such their training is very difficult. That is just the reason that Nature has not given them (women) share in these matters beyond what may be necessary. This practice should not be prescribed, except in some very special circumstance, in the case of an unmarried girl. There is no harm in prescribing prayer and a simple method of worship in their case. To my comprehension, it is better to make unmarried girls worshippers of Lord Krishna; but alongside (such worship) their minds should be made firmly convinced that Lord Krishna is an extremely revered and holy Being, and all that is written in mythological literature about His character and conduct is wholly misconceived and false. There is absolutely no harm in transmitting in absentia. The method prescribed by N1 for transmitting (and imparting training) to women is also correct and better to some extent; but he himself could not observe the precaution; and gave the method of meditation on the form of the

guide (Shanghai Rabta) to someone, after all. In case of B1, his mind got deformed after being permitted to impart training. This was not so before that.”

During discussions, there was some reference concerning intuitive capacity. Revered Master intervened: “I am replying to this also. When out of his own experience and due to dear Ram Chandra’s folly, it became evident to N1, that he (Ram Chandra) had nobody equal to him as regards intuitive capacity, he (N1) felt anxious to have it reduced. As such, he (N1) firmly conceived that a heavy, solid stone was set at the end point of his (Ram Chandra) thought process. He (N1) was very often strengthening his conception by repetition; and dear Ram Chandra was also imperiencing that some blockade to his intuitive capacity had been set up. I was continually observing this; and I have shattered that blockade to pieces several times. The purpose of this stone-setting was also to block the onward progress of dear Ram Chandra’s sharp remembrance (Surat). It was just my courage to bring dear Ram Chandra up safely in the face of such a terrible enemy. If he (Ram Chandra) had not acquired a sufficiently fine merging during my life-time, and I had not become pervaded in him through and through, this (saving him) would have appeared impossible. Due to practice, he had a strong thought-force. In our circle, nobody gave importance to love for the Master.”

Further instructions from Revered Master for work ahead; “Take work from the different powers of Nature. You possess the power also to pull them down, if they work in defiance of your orders; but in such eventuality, you yourself will have to do the work, assigned to them.

The forces of Nature are as following:

- (1) Indra (King of the gods): In charge of the East, Provides vital force to the senses during day (working time).
- (2) Agri (fire): In charge of the South-East. Provides stability to the world. Helps to get food digested.
- (3) Yama (God of death): In charge of the South. Works for destruction.
- (4) Nirrita (Rakshasa or Takshaka): In charge of the South West.

(Nairretys). Works to quieten disturbances

(5) Varuna (God of water): In charge of the West. It is the king of water. Looks after rivers and oceans etc.

(6) Maruta or Vayu (air): In charge of the North-West. It is the vital force. Provides consciousness.

(7) Kubera (God of wealth): In charge of the North. It has to manage all the affairs concerning prosperity and wealth.

(8) Lesha (Divine effulgence or glamour. May also be called Shiva): Incharge of the North-East.

(9) Brahma (creative power): In charge of the upper direction (Akasha).

(10) Ananta or Shesha (thousand-hooded viper): In charge of the nether direction (Pataala).

(11) Aditya or Surya (sun): Provides light and heat. Creates colours.

(12) Chandramaa or Nishapati (moon or the master or husband of the night): Bestow the attributes. Increase coolness. Provides cupidity or erotic force to the senses during the night.

Submission by M1: “Mahabharat mention the prohibition of honey.”

26-11-1944

Revered Master's dictation:

“Inform H3 that he has suffered much deception from people B1 etc.) till now. B1 has now got his approach reduced only upto the cosmic region. But in order to establish his supremacy, transmissions have been administered to him (H3) that required not an ordinary force to set it right. Just now I have put him (H3) at the point of the heart, after snatching off all those deformities that were stuffed into him. The merit of this, he can inquire of dear Ram Chandra or M1 in confidence. H3 has prayed a lot to me to bring him as quickly as possible to somebody who is connected

inwardly (genealogically) to me only. I granted the prayer; and also replied once very clearly. I submit him today to that person, in comparison to whom bigger than big sages will appear like school children only. If he (H3) does not turn away from the commands of that person. I promise to bring him up to perfection. B1 and others have been a lot under the spell of deception till now concerning successor-representativeship. Time is coming when this thing also will become known; and I can tell him (B1) also, in case he comes to me once again and promises not to reveal this secret to anybody so long as I do not give an order for it. If he reveals it (without my permission), I shall order some special person to capture his soul. The test for (recognizing) my successor-representative, that may be within H3's capacity, remain of little account. I am throwing a challenge to the whole world; however, much people may give free ropes to their minds, their thought can reach only upto the first rung (of the ladder) of my successor-representative) now, thirteen years after my physical veiling! The reply is that it was opportune to conceal it at that time. It was a matter of danger to his (Ram Chandra) life; and even now if it (fact of Ram Chandra being my successor-representative) comes to be known to those few people (N1 etc.), they will try to have him removed from the world. It is of course another matter that they do not get success (in their designs). They wanted to administer poison to him on just a little apprehension; but I did not let this thought take a firm ground in the heart of that depraved fellow (M3). It was on account of this precaution that I have been keeping the whole thing concealed up till now. Whoever loves him (my) successor-representative) shall be just soaked in my love, because he (Ram Chandra) has merged ever particle of his being in me, and I have merged in him with full force."

Later, Revered Master's very strict instructions descended: "Now I have no tolerance. Start destruction of A1. The lamp of his genealogical light should get extinguished. I assign this work to all three of you (Ram Chandra, M1 and R2). You distribute the work among yourselves like this: M1 should make him (A1) entirely gross, leaving no capability for thinking in his brain; R2 should draw out life from all persons associated to him, including himself (A1) as well; and you ascend to Prophethood and from there start destruction. He has started a very terrible practice (Amal). All three of you should together protect your family and children wherever they may be. I am just now going to M..., and shall go to Kh... also,

where you (Ram Chandra) daughters are stationed (A1 had started the practice of evil mergence).”

Further dictation from Revered Master, after some time:

“I have completed the preparations concerning the journey to Rameswaram (and work there), hinted at yesterday (and the day before). Since brokers for the sale of bullock were there for talks with dear Ram Chandra, cleaning has remained to be completed, which I shall do tomorrow. The power of the Ultimate Being will be found in perfect form in every particle of his (Ram Chandra) being. Try to start by about 10th of December or one or two days later. There (at Rameshwaram) the mendicants have started certain mischiefs, that have made it necessary to bring destruction on them. Just now, on the face of it, I have considered destruction to be the best way, but you start this work on reaching the exact place in accordance with my orders. The Nizam’s state will have to be upturned. This has been decided upon. Here (at Dwarika) I find very strange matters. The priestly people have created peculiar forms of imposture. Pilgrim’s pockets are picked quite abundantly. This holy place has been rendered very impure. Adultery is also going on profusely. Destruction of all this will have to be effected.” Still later, Revered Master instructed: “I have pulled up M5 from the cosmic to the para cosmic region and from there to the region of humility, but: ‘What benefit can someone, devoid of good fortune, derive from a perfect guide! After all, Khizra brings Alexander thirsty-lipped from the pool of nectar!!’ (Persian couplet). [Reference is to a popular anecdote in Persian literature that the angel of guidance to those who lose their way, named Khizra, took Alexander, the Greek conqueror to the pool of nectar in the ocean. On seeing maimed insects and animals pining for death in the pool, but unable to die having sipped the nectar, Alexander refused to drink nectar and become immortal]

He (M5) talked to you in such an unsettled evasive tone that I regretted having transmitted to him. It is not clear as to what was his fate that I did so much for him. No further than this: I had the intention of giving him the status of fixed pole-star (Qutub). No secrets are to be revealed to him.”

27-11-1944

Revered Master's dictation:

“I brought H3 out of the organic region yesterday. Today now, his area of stroll is cosmic region. May God grant him more success. This is the preparation for the journey.”

At two minutes past seven in the evening Revered Master pointed out: “All those who have received initiation from A1, to whatever community they may belong, are disconnected just now: with the exception of B1, destruction shall be dealt to all. In case S8 fails to come up to the right path, snatch off all on November 29.”

Later Revered Master revealed:

“Now at 9 P.M. the region of stroll for H3 is the para cosmic region.”

28-11-1944

Revered Master's dictation:

“M5 has been administered such transmission just now as was not possible to be bestowed by anybody (else). The organic, cosmic and para cosmic regions have attained a sufficient degree of bloom. Now he is fit for permission (to impart training to others) but helpless....

“A meditational practice will be very beneficial to R2. He is to lie on a cot or something else, on his back, and remain lying therefore some time with full awareness, but without any movement. Then he is to have the firm supposition that all the spiritual points brought to awakening by his guide upto that time. Usually flourishing and his guide's power is penetrating all (those points and spots). Doing this practice, when the state of balance is developed, he is to get stationed in that (same thought and remain lying, just the same. This will prove to be very beneficial. M1 does not need it. K2 can be given this meditation for practice.

“Break off the connections of all those who are initiated through N1. (Order was complied with: time 11.44 A.M.).The

connection of B1 to A1 has already been snapped off yesternight. The connection of A1 also has been shattered just now (11.49 A.M.) by my Revered Master. Snatch off (the spiritual state of) A2. (Order complied with). Copies of all letters received here from A1 and sent to him from here, be prepared and dispatched to B1. I have decided that M5 be restrained fully through M1, from having any connection with C1. He (M5) be shown C1's letter to dear Ram Chandra, and be told as to how far he (C1) was within his rights to write like that, and I have, as such, disconnected him (C1) totally (from my discipleship). M1 should complete this job by the evening today. And report to me, when I am here in the evening. When I have not spared A1, what was C1 after all!"

29-11-1944

Revered Master's dictation:

"I have got every particle of his (Ram Chandra) being illuminated; and in every particle (of his being), the full force of the Ultimate Being is present. Convey congratulations to M1 that I have perfected his disciple M8 today, and also accorded permission (to transmit and impart training). He may be assigned the work of touring the villages; and it may be noted in the notebook that I accorded permission to him through my successor-representative Babu Ram Chandra today; and his (M8) guide M1 verified it. M1 should take work from him.

"Since I am perfectly attached to dear Ram Chandra, and he is temperamentally very sharp, I remain exercising control in the matter of transmission. Now he has come to the right course in the regard; but quickness in thought still persists. That is the reason why I am bringing his desires to fruition, which are coming up in quick succession. The result, as such, of his quick temperament, is the creation of Qutub, Qutub-Ul-Agtaab and Ghous. In one or two cases I had to be hasty. The resonance of whatever thought occurs to him takes place in the Ultimate Being. As such, I have no other choice than to act in accordance with the same (resonance). That has been his practice from the very beginning up till now. He has been very quick in his own case as well; and wants to do likewise in case of others. He had no power to quickly remove the habit formed over such a long stretch of time. Now he (Ram Chandra) has expressed his acceptance (of God's will). I have

corrected it to the extent that I considered it needful; and shall make it more exact.”

1-12-1944

Revered Master’s dictation:

“For anybody desirous of high (spiritual) progress, there can be no method other than what has been indicated by Reverend Radha Ji; and it is just through this essential condition that anyone has ever earned progress in our fold. This includes my own example as well. Introduce just this (into your new system) . First of all people should develop their own sentiment for their Master. By sentiment I mean that disciples should establish such relationship (with their Master) as may develop love in them. Then they may start following (their Master). The best relationship can be just what you have established with me. It, however, depends on one’s inclination of temperament towards the other (viz. Master) Reverend Radha Ji had taken up just this relationship in another form. I am also an example of it. There should, however, be no emphasis on his relationship for everybody. Just possible there may not be an inclination to it in case of somebody. Just possible there may not be an inclination to it in case of somebody; and this prescription may not be useful in that case. This is the job of a person of a great heart. It is not to be shared by all and sundry. Only rare ones will adopt it. This may be emphasized in the spiritual get-together (Satsang). The form to be adopted can be anything.”

Revered Master’s instruction:

“M1 can give permission from this system, to whomever he may like.”

Revered Master’s dictation:

“When this matter (of downcast and withered condition of people of my system) was mentioned to me. I felt a sort of shame. As such, it is to be removed through transmission. I shall not send you to Calcutta during this tour (of South India and Dwarika).”

2-12-1944

Revered Master's dictation:

“Local administration is under the charge of Abdal. The status of incarnation (Avatar) is a bit higher than that. When I went from here to the Higher World, Swami Vivekananda very much emphasized that His work also be assigned to dear Ram Chandra.”

Revered Master's dictation:

“Kabir Saheb gave permission in his system to him (Ram Chandra); but since he remains looking always for me for it, I bestow permission for (work in) that system also. I too had this permission (conferred on me during my life-time.)”

Revered Kabir Saheb's dictation: “You will have to go to Kashi and meet the people of the order there to try to bring them to the right path. The difficulty, however, is that they are all uncivil (and crude) through and through.”

4-12-1944

Revered Master's dictation:

“The usual method of dear Ram Chandra has consisted in arousing an aspirant's own power at a particular point, instead of stuffing him up (from outside). This method reaches upto the aspirant's state of attainment (through his own effort); and is the best method. There can be not technique better than this for the (real) benefit to the practicant (Abhyasis).”

Revered Master Dictation:

“I do not like to reveal to anybody, what

5-12-1944

Revered Master informed:

“Swami Vivekananda Ji has appointed you as his successor-representative.”

Revered Master's dictation:

“It is a matter of great happiness that today Swami Vivekananda Ji ha structured dear Ram Chandra like himself, i.e. the entire power (belonging to Swami Ji) has got merged in dear Ram Chandra. Now this colour will also pervade our system.”

10-12-1944

Revered Master's dictation:

“People are waiting. Orders have been issued. Do not start (on journey) tomorrow. If I find the field all clear, I shall give permission. Just possible, you may have to start on Tuesday (12-12). All depends on (suitability of) time. Sage Agastya has given a promise for your safety; and has also prepared the field (for your work). Swami Vivekananda has issued orders to the Qutub of Madras to look after your security. Sure, you committed a little mistake in asking him (Qutub) to consider his duty started when you set your foot on the railway platform of Madras. You should have made him take charge of your security earlier.”

Revered Master resumed dictation:

when during discussion with M1, I hinted that earlier I was able to comprehend immediately what an elder in absentia, oriented to me, was telling (or asking) me “Dear Ram Chandra has climbed up so high and has merged himself in such a way that the current of their (elder's) thought is not able to send a jerk upto that height. When he is stationed a little lower, he is able to comprehend (alright). In fact, the rule is that one should always keep oneself stationed at a lower level (for the sake of efficiency in working). I do not compel him (to station himself at a lower level); and he also is aware that I am present to instruct him as and when needed. M1 should better practice this technique of stationing oneself at a level lower than one's actual status. The method of keeping the heart in one's view, as adopted by him (Ram Chandra), is a good practice. Just now, I am at leisure. He has invented a technique, which is best; and there can be no other method superior to it. Earlier he had invented the method for practice at 9.00 P.M., reference to which is there in the notes. That remains essential. I shall mention the method, now invented, to Swami

Vivekananda Ji as well. This (newly invented) method brings benefit together to both guru and disciple. This method ordains that in case an aspirant is told to meditate on the form of the Master in the heart, he is to be instructed to have the thought that the elder whose form is being taken to meditate on, is connected to the Ultimate Being. Meditation should be started just with this firm supposition. If this thought is brought once to mind, before starting meditation on the form of Master (Shaghal Rabta) and getting absorbed in the practice, that will be still better. In case of the aspirant having been told to meditate on the idea of light, he should be instructed to have the idea that the light taken up for firm supposition, is the light of the Ultimate Being. All these inventions should be written down in the notebook.”

11-12-1944

Revered Master's dictation:

“Shri Chaitanya Mahaprabhu has bestowed his successor-representativeship to you; and I have accepted it. He is desiring you to go to Orissa.”

Revered Master's dictation:

“So much of work is pouring on you, that I do not know how it shall all be possible to tackle. The condition of your health is such as to need continuous attendance of a physician. However, there is no choice in the face of a divine command. All this is being ordained by the Ultimate Being; and everybody else is helpless in this regard.”

Revered Master's dictation:

“I have decided about his (Ram Chandra) departure on tour. I was of the opinion that he starts tomorrow (Wednesday) or on Thursday: I had left the choice between these two days to him. His inclination was in favour of Thursday. As such, Swami Vivekananda Ji arrived and fixed Thursday. Now there can be no postponement anymore. When he reaches Mathura on Friday, he may leave (for South India) on Saturday, in case rest be needed, or else (preferably) he should leave Mathura on Friday. This much I have left to his liking. Arrangements on trains have been made.

There will be a vacant space (on trains) on both days, so that he finds a seat. In case M1's heart suggests some necessary change (concerning these arrangements), it should be given due consideration."

13-12-1944

Revered Master's remark:

"The dictations of Sami Vivekananda Ji are all as precious as mine."

Revered Master's dictation:

"As regards the letter of A3, I had ordained (people of Fatehgarh) to accept what may come from Shahjahanpur. There was a need to say this. Voices have surely reached their ears. These people who are now helping (them, will not remain usefully together (with them) in the long run. Finally you alone will have to do the needful. What they desire cannot be possible. She (Revered Master's wife) has not recognized your value. It is no doubt praise worthy that her affection for everybody is more or less equal. Women, however, are generally devoid of (a kind of) discretion. They like outwardly expressed praise and sycophancy. That is why they are amenable to such tricks by anybody. There is no need of obeying her, if that would cause the weakening of my purpose. I am referring to the declaration at the annual function. The declaration must have to be made, whatever consequences that may have."

17-12-1944

Revered Master's dictation:

"You have completed work here. Go to Rameshwaram tomorrow. Your being merged with the Ultimate Being has caused harm to me, as I could not do anything (on my own)."

22-12-1944

Revered Master's dictation:

“You have to do a lot of work here (Rameshwaram). Illuminate the entire temple. It was my order to wash your feet in Shiva Kunda (pool), so that the electricity of your feet may pervade the water of that pool. You have to illuminate every nook and corner here, so that the pilgrims may derive benefit. Start the destruction of the host-priests (Pandas). Take the one you met first, to begin with. There is no need to go to Dhanush Koti. All other places will have to be visited. You have remained awake throughout the night. As such, take rest. The work at Madras has been good. Your idea is correct that spiritual training (in the real sense) cannot start there. This part will come up right last of all. The servant, you found, is alright. There is no need to be apprehensive. Precaution, however, is necessary.”

25-12-1944

Revered Master's dictation (4.15 P.M.):

“You brought havoc to Ceylon. If I had not arrived at the nick of the moment, many people would have become bereft of their lives. You turned the entire force of the Ultimate Being over Ceylon. Withdraw some of it. The minds of people have suffered suspension (of normal activity). Be a bit quick (to withdraw the surplus force).”
[The order was complied with immediately.]
“Now do not be oriented to Ceylon at all. Depart from here tomorrow.”

Revered Master's dictation:

“He is very great sage, who has no equal in Ceylon. He is asking to get C.. upturned; but there is no command from God as yet (for that).”

27-12-1944

Revered Master's instruction:

“Write this discovery in the notebook on reaching Shahjahanpur.” Method (used at Madurai): I spread myself in the subtle form throughout Madurai and having filled all sides with power, got it permeated into the earth and (its) atoms.

29-12-1944

Revered Master’s detailed instructions:

“Go to Cape Comorin tomorrow; and illuminate it very well, but not like Ceylon. On return, stay for one day here (at Trivandrum). Then start for Mysore with the morning train. There is no need for staying at Bangalore. You can see some places like Belur there. Go to Hyderabad, thereafter. Work will be (waiting) just there. From there go to Bombay, visiting Daulatabad and Ajanta (on the way). I shall tell you whatever period of stay will be required there. There is no need for going to Poona. From Bombay, go to Dwarika. The work at Trivandrum too has remained fine. You have remained sufficiently oriented to Trivandrum: now there seems to be no need (anymore). Have a very light thought, (however). The temple of Padmanabha Swami has got very well illuminated. Tonight, be oriented only to the destruction of the priestly class, that has brought about the total annihilation of the Hindus. There is a need for very unrelenting destruction.”

31-12-1944

Revered Master’s dictation:

“You went to Cape Comorin yesterday (30-12-1944). You completed the work on the way. The whole atmosphere has undergone change. Start from here tomorrow morning. There is no need to stay in Travancore State (now named Kerala) any further.” Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: “You have renounced everything of this transitory world for your Lord; and He has done the same for you. You have got that power (of real renunciation) developed in you, in an exemplary way. Having regard for this fact, you should pass a life worth living for a king. If you live a king-like life, it will add pleasure to mine and your Guru’s hearts. The time is approaching fast to tread along the foot-prints of your Master, the supreme Lord. The idea of Sanyasa (way of the ascetic recluse) will disappear in the course of time. That is why we want you to

lead that kind of life, which is to set an example for others. Be happy.”

Revered Master explained:

“Swami Vivekananda Ji meant to say that you should live a life of a king like Janak.”

3-1-1945

Revered Master remarked:

“I ordered you to stay for one day here (at Bangalore) because you were tired and unable to continue the journey further (at a continuous stretch). Otherwise, I was not in favour of your stay here.”

7-1-1945

Revered Master’s instruction:

“You are now going to Hassan. Make the Belur temple full of effect. Your work has been very good: Mysore has got very well illuminated. Start from here tomorrow.”

11-1-1945

Revered Master intimated:

“Today at 11.30 P.M. a very special power has been conferred on you by Nature for being utilized in the work here. I have now transferred it to you. This power is bestowed to prophets. It has never been conferred on any devotee to da

24-1-1945

Revered Master’s instruction:

“The temple has been amply illuminated. Now get oriented to the town.”

2-2-1945

Revered Master's dictation (at Shahjahanpur):

“I shall be very happy if you people may be able to do the work that I could not do Organization is essential for every spiritual institution. In my time the thoughts of all people had got focused on me. Training they might be receiving from anybody, but they had regard and consideration for me. This same method may be taken up, viz. The currents of thought of all people be merged into some person, whom they consider great or whom God may have made great. This can also be possible, that the special persons, that have been structured recently, and whom I consider as my own, may draw the people attached to them individually towards themselves, and then establish their connection with the one whom they consider (and find) great. I do not mean to say that they get rid of their disciples or people connected to them, and the responsibility about them be assigned to the particular person (considered and found to be great). I mean only that they should be made to have the firm belief that orders are descending through the person who is their Master's successor-representative; and to follow such orders is incumbent on them as their duty. That is to say, the particular person be taken to be my representative.

“Those who set up an organization should first of all practice to structure themselves as the model after which they like to mould others. For example someone is habituated to eating sweets, and likes to make others abstain from eating sweets. It is necessary for such a person to first give up eating sweets and then motivate others to follow suit. This has been my practice throughout my life, that I first practiced myself what I liked to make others practice. Keeping this principle into view, you people proceed on to set up the organization. One thing is worth remembrance, viz. any defect remaining in overt or covert form in the trainer, will go a long way, and will penetrate quickly in the practisant who adopts the practice of meditation on the form of his/her guide. That is the reason why the practice of meditation on the form (Shaghal Rabta) should be adopted only on the form of one whose condition should have come to the Balanced State, and who should have largely got rid of the defects prohibited in the spiritual sphere or unbecoming of the state of moral sublimity. I feel that this practice of meditation on the personal form should not be told to every person, who

imparts training, unless the guide himself/herself would have reached that state. As such, every trainer should structure himself/herself so as to enable his/her disciples to take up his/her form for the practice of meditation.”

4-2-1945

Revered Master's dictation:

“I am coming from Fatehgarh. The old woman (Revered Lalaji Saheb's widow) has also fallen a victim to greed. Request Swami Vivekananda Ji for advice.”

Revered Master's dictation:

“I have handed over the charge of this work (setting the organization right) to Swami Vivekananda Ji. Now he will do whatever is proper. All of you will have to obey his orders. If you people budge even a little from compliance with his orders, my rage will come down in full fury. I am apparently displeased with M1 to a certain extent. He returns to his previous condition and habit. What a great matter of regret it is that a person of such a high standard should fail to make people oriented to him. I had told dear Ram Chandra about this. He did not tell this to him (M1) out of respect and regard for his elderliness. I had to point it out myself now. I shall start getting strict with my own people first of all. He (M1) has left himself so loose that every puff of wind makes him shaky all over. Worries do not dwindle in case of anybody in this transitory world. Only the form (of worries) remains changing. Somebody suffers from one kind, while some other has another form (of worries) in store. Was I (myself) free from them? In spite of the worries, however, which of my duties did I ever shirk? A person of such capability (as of M1) is bound to be drawn away by the force of the habit of his own will, however much he may be cleaned. It is therefore necessary, that he (M1) should put his own will to work, and desist from yielding place to these (degrading) thoughts. He has to structure himself to the tune of the times. The old tricks are now coming to an end. He (M1) has to do a lot of work; but it is regrettable that his mentality does not get oriented to that, nor does he structure out such means and media as may bring the shape of success into view.

“I am telling an easy principle for his (M1) benefit, which he is to follow at a fixed time daily without fail. That is prayer. His defects that come to his view in the form of thoughts are to be placed before God, with the prayer to be rid of them. The usual practice (Abhyas) is to be carried along with. Can fire not be created in sandalwood, which is a cool object? Can dried wood not be straightened through a warming process? He (M1) should structure himself in such a manner as may inspire people to be attracted to him. For the rest, he may consult me anytime, about whatever he likes to know in this regard. I shall reply. I am afraid, this poison may spread among his disciples: I am warning and instructing specially on that account. Mere spirituality does not work; very few persons are capable of comprehending it. It general people discover the inner (capacity) on the basis of outer expression. There should be attractiveness, sublime flexibility and softness in speech. This I am addressing to everybody. If somebody has nothing lacking in him as regards spirituality, but its expression is not upto the mark, I cannot call him perfect. Serving one’s purpose (successfully) is another matter. However, now I am coming to a second (important) point: I am prepared to designate a person as selfish, if he serves his own purpose and does not structure himself capable of structuring others. These words may possibly seem harsh; but these alone contain the best sweetness, if he gets impelled to readiness (through these words). This dictation which I have given for M1 is to be noted down by you (Ram Chandra) also; and it is to be read often and, on most occasions, so as to keep it fresh (in memory).”

Brief assessment of the tour in South India

Revered Master’s dictation:

“Dear Ram Chandra toured Southern India for about one and a half month. He has performed such prominent jobs there as require eyes to observe. He brought every order issued to him to the level of completion. There was a very special feature of his work, that speaks volumes in praise of his brain: he tied fine knots at appropriate places, to prevent his work being spoilt by somebody (subsequently). Another characteristic (of his work) was that he illumined that land upto several yards below the surface. The method of his working happened to be the best; before arriving at a particular station and some place proper, he would first draw

out whatever defects had penetrated the earth there; and better still, he did not allow that defect to pervade the atmosphere (vacuum). The defects that he ejected and culled out were also purified so that the poison did not acquire the character of lethal epidemic. At one place, he no doubt played a little mischief; and that was on arriving at Dwarika. He took out the effect produced by defects there' and instead of purifying, just diverted it westwards. I have designated his action as mischief, but in reality that was exactly my will at that time. (Pause) He has stuffed the temples with such effect as to leave no need for charging them (with spiritual power) for the next one hundred years. Further still, he has filled certain streets and lanes, through which he happened to pass, with such an effect as to have made them suitable places for meditational purpose. Some towns have been illuminated in such a way as to leave the effect in every wall and door. He has illumined the particles of the entire atmosphere there; and has introduced suitable checks to prevent defilement of those particles by somebody. Very often, it also happened that whole city – I mean the people thereof – would have crossed all the stages of spirituality. That, however, was not my intention, as it would have then brought about an end to Nature's work; and difference and discord, which is the very life of Nature, would have vanished. And still, he was feeling afraid all the time, that he may not fall short of completing the fulfillment of some duty, assigned to him. Engaged in such a heavy task, he was yet unsure whether the job-in-hand was completed or not. The reason was that he has rendered himself negative to such an extent that his thought remains short of touching the fringe of the positive. That is just my "During the course of this tour, one desire did come up in him, on reaching Cape Comorin, viz. to hypnotize some rock there, in such a way as had never occurred before. In accordance with his desire, Swami Vivekananda Ji accorded in permission also and had pointed out a rock, close to his own, for the purpose. However, he desisted from this work, thinking that it would be almost impossible for anybody to recognize the work, and to associate the rock with my name. In some way, it has also been alright, for if he had done something in accordance with his tremendous intention, it would have been possible that the very passage there would have got blocked; and come to be the proverbial limitation of Alexandria.

5-2-1945

Revered Master's dictation:

“Together with Swami Vivekananda Ji, I have observed very carefully my whole field (of associates). Most of them have acquired the shape of ripened boils containing pus. Many have turned out to be totally pus personified from head to foot; and have gone against me. That does not mean that they do not accept me as Guru; but they have started depending on others, whose pus has begun to flow into them., There are some who are taking the recurrent pain caused by the reverberation of pus as divine attraction (Jazb). This pusculation is becoming so deep that it has pervaded every nerve and fibre of many people. To draw out (this pus) is no more a job for an ordinary person; nor is anybody capable of removing it, at this time. It cannot be removed unless people pin their faith on dear Ram Chandra. The nervous system of some of them has got spoilt to such an extent as to leave nothing but smoke and fire of maternity. This condition had some time been cleaned by dear Ram Chandra through my order; but on his becoming slack, again through my order, those people have now started returning to and have almost arrived back to that (spoilt) condition. The reason is obvious, that they have not given up the company of those persons who are causing harm to them spiritually.”

Revered Master's dictation continued now addressed to M1:

“If this is not translated in accordance with the medical principles, then (it is to be said that) that decomposition has set in, in them. Louis Cohen has designated this decomposed matter as putrefaction. I am calling this condition putrefaction in another sense from the spiritual point of view. If a person of illumined heart sits before those people, he will feel a bad smell emanating from them. Now the cure for this is (the use of) the surgeon's knife. Just possible, some people may require being operated upon; and some others may quit this system. By system, I mean the present system. Those (earlier) ones have all got already smashed. I have just stated this condition before you people. This is the exact description of their condition, to the extent of the availability of words. Some people are good as well; but the sovereignty of others is impressed deeply on most of them.”

8-2-1945 (Noon-time)

Revered Master's dictation:

“In case, God forbid, there happens to be lack of success during the Bhandara (annual function), though it should not be so by God's Grace, I permit you to focus the full Power of Lord Krishna's boomerang there. There is no need for the least care for destruction falling to the lot of whomsoever it may be; and in that eventuality all of you people from Shahjahanpur should leave that place immediately. I issue one more order; wherever needed you just invite Lord Krishna. I assure you that He cannot bypass what you desire. I and Swami Vivekananda Ji will be present there in full force. If you just submit something to Lord Krishna with a full heart, the whole set-up will be turned upside down. I am telling you one thing more. Your extreme closeness to the Ultimate Being has gone upto the extent that it can also be brought to the whirling condition and the scene of the final doom (annihilation-Pralaya) can be made to prevail. You have no awareness of these powers. The reason is obvious: You have got yourself merged into me so much that no awareness of these things comes up. As such, I want that your temperament may not boil up (in anger) some time, lest the whole set-up may get upset, unless some special order is given. I have got you structured almost like that. I want that nothing more than what be needed may come to be done by you.”

Revered Master's dictation continued, now addressed to M1:

“I have given him (Ram Chandra) that power, that if he comes to the state of sharp anger, he can bring about total annihilation, though that will be against the law of Nature; and this can never happen out of his action, so long as the time is not ripe for that, because his reins are in my hands. If such powers would be stuffed in someone else, he would have boiled up. For him there was an order from Nature; and he has got structured accordingly. These Powers are not bestowed on anybody. Even successor-representatives are kept devoid of these. The matter of fact, so to say, is that these Powers are not bestowed on anybody. Even successor-representatives are kept devoid of these. The matter of fact, so to say, is that these Powers are not found even in Masters of a very high caliber. These Powers are not found even in Masters

of a very high caliber. These Powers have been kept secure since the beginning of the universe till now. I no doubt had become their storehouse. This type of health (as that of Ram Chandra) can also fail to bear (the burden of) such Powers. It was just my vessel (capacity) to have made the impossible possible; and the wonder of it all is that health-condition is no hindrance to the use of these Powers. My approach, during my life-time, had attained upto the extreme state of the Ultimate Being; and upto that extent I had transferred to him.

“Now I am briefly telling about the case of M1. If his uncle (R1) had not caused hindrance to it, and he (M1) had borne the troubles of times (and world) with pleasure, he too would have earned the right to get a lot. Even now, anyway, he has nobody to match him, with the single exception of dear Ram Chandra. One thing that is not to be found anywhere, is that this fellow (M1) has loved me beyond limits; and the result is that I am seeing him with open eyes in this (high) state. This (Love) is the only real thing; and I advise both of you (M1 and Ram Chandra) to create this in your disciples. This is all in all, and everything is brought about just through it. As against it, all practices and meditations, inner and outer, are of no avail. Dear Ram Chandra never laboured in any way within the bounds of strict rules and regulations. His example is not to be taken by others. He is a special vessel; nor should the attention of people be drawn to this (aspect). The average of his labour during twenty to twenty-two years will be just about two or three minutes (per day). That also he did only with a view to complete the formality. But this should not serve as an example for others. These matters, I have given out today, are a very great secret. Dear Ram Chandra has drawn Nature towards himself to the extent that if he likes, he can get orders issued according to his choice; but it is his nobility that he never leaves me aside. We have become mutually a natural necessity to each other. This example is worth emulation.”

To a query from M1, Revered Masters revealed:

“B1 has turned his face downward from the cosmic region. Dryness is prevailing therein; and freshness has started moving away even from the organic region. He is depending on experience and discretion. The field of the cosmic region, he has not yet abdicated altogether. His attendants have created royal fragrance

in his mind, making him Maharaj (His Holiness) and Huzoor (Revered Master) etc. (Pause) R7 has designed mental leaping and jumping as spirituality, wherein real flexibility and softness are totally absent.”

9-2-1945

Revered Master’s dictation:

“The effect of transmission, described by M1, was flowing from the respected father of dear Ram Chandra. Can anybody at this time claim equality with dear Ram Chandra? Not at all. This is the effect of dear Ram Chandra’s transmission to his father for three minutes. Now quietness has amply increased in his father. The condition is that of being deaf and mute. He (Ram Chandra) has stuffed limitlessness in him (his father) all at once. Now, so long as I do not order it, do not transmit to your father again. He has taken him through the conditions of Qutub and Qutub-UI-Aqtab etc; and stationed him at the post of Ghous-UI-Aazam.”

Revered Master’s dictation continued:

“Although dear Ram Chandra is suffering pain to the extent known only to himself or to my heart, yet he is not avoiding work at all. This thing is worth emulation. May all hve the inclination to do likewise. Be it so. I have ordered dear Ram Chandra to start undergoing the impressions (Samskaras) of M1. H has already undertaken part of it. The need for this arose due to very few of his (Ram Chandra) own impressions remaining for coming to fruition. I have imparted power to those impressions of M1, which he (Ram Chandra) has undertaken to undergo, so that the shape of their fruition may develop quickly, and thereby M1 may also get rid of them in some way. He (M1) has undergone lots of troubles concerning the household and other affairs.

10-2-1945

Revered Master’s dictation continued:

“I have love for M1, as his guide. Moreover, he has been helpful in my work; and he is expected to be so in the future also. Further still, my love, which relates to dear Ram Chandra as well,

forces me to relieve him (M1) of his impressions to a certain extent. I have, therefore, ordered dear Ram Chandra to leave only that much of impression in him, which he may easily undergo upto the expiry of the course of his life-time. The rest of these (impression of M1) have to be undergone by him (Ram Chandra). Be it clear to M1, that if I had not been under the spell of love for him, I myself having undergone his (Ram Chandra) impressions, would not have ordered my darling Ram Chandra to undergo the impressions of someone else.”

Revered Master raised a question:

“What can be the device to avoid in the future the defects, which have crept into our society (Satsang)?” I submitted an answer, whereupon Revered Master remarked: “Such a brain, cast into a perfect mould, has never been born; and even in the future there is little hope in this regard. As such, by way of a friend or guide, whatever you take it to be, my advice to all of you, without consideration of elder and younger, is that you all take advantage of him (Ram Chandra); and get the intricate problems, as yet remaining beyond solution on the path of spirituality, solved. This time will not return again and again; nor may such a personality be expected to come again. Take this opportunity to be available gratis. I also assure you all that there is some special plan of the Ultimate Being in it; and as such that Ultimate Being is proving helpful through him (Ram Chandra).

These words I am uttering in the capacity of the Ultimate Being. Take his (RamChandra) mind to be Divine Mind. He has nothing left with him as his. That is why the answer comes as soon as a question, howsoever difficult, is raised: thinking takes no time. Just now, I had put a very important and difficult question to him. The answer was ready as soon as the question was there; and the fragrance combined with gold was that its method in the best way descended in his thought, which was not the intention of the question, but it (method) was essential along with that (answer of the question). The method, revealed, is as following:

“When someone is seated before one (preceptor) for transmission, he/she should first clean the heart (of the aspirant), and then all the points be cleaned a little, to the extent that the materialistic defects which may be obstructing the practice, be

removed. My intention is not to clean to the extent of all the points being brought to full blooming, but only to that of the removal of the dirt and dust on the way. Thereafter a light current of the aspirant's brain be directed to his/her heart; and this current, after being cleaned to some extent, be connected to the casual body of the aspirant. Then, the trainer should introduce in seed form into the aspirant's casual body, what may be desired to be penetrated in the aspirant; and the cavities of the causal body are made deep enough (to contain what is introduced in seed form into it). The effect develops out of the cause. As such, what is present in the seed form in the causal body, descends in the form of fruition to be undergone. But I have to say again that all this I not a job for an ordinary person.

“The method for counteracting this method is also there. If somebody adopts the above-mentioned method out of shamelessness, or sensuous greed or with the intention of getting oneself worshipped (by others), and the effect of this practice on someone be desired to be removed, the counteracting process is as following: The casual body of the (spoilt) aspirant be connected to the causal body of the cosmic region or the superior world (Brahmanda), after cleaning the way (to the cosmic region); and then the plan for the removal of the particular defect be drawn on in the subtler cosmic world. In case the person concerned has an approach upto the cosmic level then the still higher level is to be taken for counteraction. Everyone cannot have an approach upto there.”

11-2-1945

Revered Master's dictation, addressed to M1:

“Just now, I felt very happy. Dear Ram Chandra has modified even the method of initiation, even though this being his first initiation (of R2), there was certainly hesitation. I allow this modified method of initiation to be prevalent. My progeny that is there at present, or whatever is to come up in the future, shall adhere to it. This method, which did not occur to anybody's mind till now, is best. Even though it appears on the face of it as quite ordinary and simple, it has innumerable advantages. My tongue is unable to describe its advantages. The experience (alone) will tell. This method may be told, when needed, to those whom M1 has

permitted (to impart training). The modified method of initiation, discovered by dear Ram Chandra is as following:

“First of all, the connection of one’s disciple to one’s own Master and Highest Predecessor be established. Then, establishing the connection from the disciple’s heart to his/her brain, its chain be linked to the connection, established first. Thereafter, it is to be conceived that the connection from the heart through in the mind to the Highest Predecessor has been established; and this be endowed with a light force.

“This alone shall remain the method for the future; and this invention will be related to the name of dear Ram Chandra. This is something Providential, that such things are issuing forth from him.

“Whatever initiations have been effected by M1, are to be corrected in accordance with this method; all associates who remain attached to me, shall use just this method. Take it as a strict order.

He (Ram Chandra) applied one more masterly stroke, viz. he effected the initiation, taking permission directly from Lord Krishna.”

12-2-1945

Revered Master’s dictation:

“Look here M1, dear Ram Chandra has done away with need for you, and for me as well. He has made one more invention. One thing which was very difficult, he has made easy to a certain extent, even though that method is difficult in itself, and it is not a job for everybody in these times. The praise, anyway, is for how he came to hit upon it.

“The first method concerns the possible device to get one’s own points and plexuses opened up through one’s own efforts, after the guide has made an aspirant cross (initial spiritual) stage to some extent, and brought him to traverse the intermediary destinations (of points and plexuses) in a shadowy (Aksi) way. For this purpose, there are two devices.

He (Ram Chandra) has given preference to the second device; and I also prefer the same. The first device is to go on transmitting oneself lightly from one's brain to one's own heart. Neither dear Ram Chandra nor I favour this technique, because there may be the possibility of the transmission running in excess of what may be the real need. The device, anyway, is certainly there, and it is correct.

***“The second device is to suppose that one's own subtle body is present before oneself (practicant); and then transmit to the heart of the that subtle body. If one remains doing just this, progress will continually be assured quite well. The second branch of just this device in details is as following, even though is not a job for one and all: it required a very cultured and sensitive person. The technique consists in first continuing to transmit to the heart of one's own subtle body till it acquires the condition of mergence (Fana), and thereafter emergence of the condition of permanent living (Baqā) in it. At this stage the next point, viz. the soul (Rooh) is to be taken up for transmission. When the condition of mergence at this point has been arrived at, and the emergence of the state of permanent living there has started thereafter, then the third point, viz. of fire (Sirra) is to be taken up. Similarly, the process is to be repeated on and on with further points viz. Khafi and Akhfa (in Sufi terminology). The benefit of this will be a good and detailed stroll. Then the state of awakening in the whole of the organic region has arrived at, then this whole state should be forcefully connected to the brain which is called the cosmic region. Then, using the same technique to widen one's condition, transmission is to be imparted to one's own subtle body from here. When here also the condition of mergence, and thereafter the state of permanent living there is created, then this condition be advanced likewise to the next higher region viz. para cosmic region; and apply the same device of transmitting from there to one's own subtle body. When there also the condition of the merging of mergence (Fana-e-fana) is arrived at; and the state of permanent living (Baqā) starts arriving thereafter, it should be advanced to the still higher region, beginning the same practice there as well. Beyond that, thought will not work; and the need for a forceful guide will arise. I want this method to prevail in our fold.*”**

“If some person arrives, who does not sit for transmission and still be seeking to have his/her fulfillment achieved, there can be a method for such a person. This method can be better used by ascetics. The method is as following: Fast is to be observed for three days, abstaining totally from food. Only water can be taken. Salt and soda can also be used to some extent according to the need. Care should be observed to avoid scents and smells as far as possible. During these three days, after performance of necessary duties (such as toilet habits etc.), one should lie down in the posture of a dead person (Shavasana), and have the firm supposition that the condition of the Ultimate Being, which has connection to one’s brain is descending in one’s heart in a calm condition. So far as possible, this meditation is to be continued for three days (of fasting). Thereafter, this very practice is to be performed in the morning and evening, and even several times during day (and night) for three months, trying to maintain purity of thoughts. After three months, again, a fast for three days-and if possible, for one week-be observed; and adopting the same posture (Shavasana) have the firm supposition that the heart has already got filled up, and now the same state, viz. the light of the Ultimate Reality, is penetrating in the soul (at the second point of the organic region. When both these things (heart and soul) have been set right, then three months later, again fasting is undergone, the duration of which is to be three days at least, and one week at the most, which may be extended to fifteen days in the case of a strong person. The same firm supposition is to be adopted at the sublimity of Sirra (fire plexus) i.e., third point of organic region; and then likewise the 4th and 5th points. At the 5th point, the period of fasting can be upto twenty-one days. However, the meditation is to be practiced every day at the heart alone, having the firm supposition, that whatever points have been filled up through the austere practice of fasting up to the particular day are all filled up, and (divine)light is amply raining.

“When the organic region is perfected through this method, then one can get oriented to the cosmic region; but the method is different there. That method consists in drawing up all the power, created (in the organic region); and

then having the firm supposition of assimilating one's organic mind in the cosmic mind, and derive power directly from there. Then this method can be carried on further, viz. beyond the cosmic region and still further."

Revered Master then addressed dictation to M1:

"I posed a very difficult problem to dear Ram Chandra just now for solution; and he brought a perfectly right solution immediately in the best possible way. This (by itself) is a separate technique in its own right; and can be included in the above-mentioned method after perfecting the organic region. The method consists in having the firm supposition of the reverberation of (eternal) sound in the cosmic mind, and directing its jolt to the heart. This supposition, however should be contemplated for short intervals one after the other. The supposition should be taken up in proportion to the force being created. At whichever point (or plexus) its jolt will be administered, awakening of eternal sound will start there immediately. However, I prohibit application of this method (concerning the vibration of eternal sound) in general, so long as celibacy is not established properly."

13-2-1945

Revered Master's dictation:

"The novel feature in your phased of life today, was that you received benefit (Faiz) directly from the Ultimate Being. This means that you have acquired a very deep and unbreakable contact with the Ultimate Being. Almost everybody receives benefit from elders (of yore) as one may deserve. By everybody I mean persons of good faith and worshippers of Master; but you alone have derived benefit from the Ultimate Being. Look here M1, very big sages of the highest levels of approach to God have passed away, pining for this (benefit)."

Revered Master:

"There is no limit to my happiness. Congratulations. May God's blessings ever shower on you."

Reverend Radha Ji: “Wherever love be needed, just get oriented to me. I know nothing except this. I had concern only with this during my whole life.”

Revered Master:

“This new relationship (Nisbat) has come up in this system (Silsila).”

17-2-1945

Revered Master’s dictation:

“Every declaration and article will be issued under the signature of M1, whom I have appointed secretary, and the seal will be duly stamped. This will be done from now on. He (M1) can himself permit his assistant secretary R2 to perform any duty assigned by him. All others will be known as helpers. If a need for some very urgent action may arise, and M1 is not present here, the assistant secretary can also perform (that action); but it should be remembered that I alone shall remain the officer commanding i.e. nothing will ever be done without my orders, which will be coming down through the medium (Ram Chandra). R2 is authorized to select his helpers and inform M1. Helpers will be only those who are entirely our own or consider me as their own. I like to modernize the system of correspondence and other necessary matters concerning writing. In case I allow M1 to be out of station for some work his sanction will have to be obtained, communicating my commands to him through correspondence. An exception can be made in some special case; but even in that eventuality, he must have to be kept informed about the action. The secretary will keep a register, in which short notes will be entered for reference; and a copy of this will remain with the assistant secretary. I want to keep dear Ram Chandra free from these administrative arrangements concerning ministerial work: I do not want to entangle his mind in these aspects. His mind will remain the spring source of transmission alone; and orders will remain being received through it. Those persons to whom I have assigned these duties, should take these to be their own. I will establish an item for the expenditure concerning correspondence. Those persons to whom I have assigned these duties, should perform these as my own (job). That, however, does not mean that

they give up the job for which I have structured them. That shall remain their foremost duty.”

Revered Master:

“I shall take this treasure of Sanskrit books, when needed. He be satisfied that he has made a present of this precious collection to me. It should be greatly appreciated.”

Detailed explanation from Revered Master:

“When an elder (divine or sage) becomes free from the physical body, the forces which work in collaboration with the physical body, get merged in their original source, in a state of oblivion; and the sense organs of that persons get into the dormant state. In other words, it can be also said that the organs of sense acquire compatibility with their original source. This is to say the ions (Paramanus) that are present in the Ultimate Being get stuffed into that Person’s being. (The word ion has been used for this sake of understanding only: it will be better to designate it as the characteristic of the Ultimate Being,) The extension of a person like this acquires a width during his life-time, that remains established exactly the same even after physical dissolution. It can be called the state of the Infinite. So, the presence of such a being pervades all nooks and corners like sky (void) or air. Thus, if somebody acts in some way through sound or thought, that action creates a sort of wave in that vibration (of sound or though). To take an example, when somebody visualizes something, the force of vision gives a jolt to it, and being sufficiently sensitive, one becomes aware of it. This is just how liberated souls remain aware of everything (relevant)”

Revered Master commented:

“All that dear Ram Chandra has dictated just now, is entirely his composition; and is current. It is the secret of Nature that has got blurted out of his tongue. He (Ram Chandra), however, could not find words, adequate enough to explain it. This just concerns them (liberated souls); and it is the result of his (Ram Chandra) remaining all the time in touch with me or the Ultimate Being.”
Explanation continued: “Before the beginning of creation, the state of the Ultimate Being can be conceived in the form of a dome for

the sake of understanding. When the time for the creation of the universe was there, movement got started, together with a sort of will. With the start of this movement ions and molecules of power started manifesting in the shape of particles and atoms; and minerals, vegetations, and animals got woven into It like the beads of a rosary. That is to say, all things came out of the source that was close to the Ultimate Being at the time of intention: and (those manifested things) brought power with them. Nature, which was manifest in the current like a knot, was full of power. These currents contained power, i.e., sublimity of the Ultimate Being to the extent of their closeness to it. Now man, into whom these currents are penetrated and who remains circumscribed by them, brought power along with (him) to the extent of the descendence of the current. This very current got subdivided into subtle, subtler and subtlest forms for the sake of the facility of description. The return(journey) of man is to go through the process of reverse climbing up along the current, that has descended downwards; and thus, reach closest to the principle under reference, will go on increasing as he will progress in climbing up more and more.

Questions concerning this narration, requiring a solution:

(1) How did the spiritual stages become established, and their above-mentioned divisions (broad ones) get marked out? Was it not possible to mark out more (and other) divisions (like these)?

(2) How did the foundation of Hatha Yoga come to be laid down? And how did Raja Yoga come to light thereafter? What kind of relation does human psychology hold with Nature; and what are its rules?

(3) Wherefrom does man derive life, or in other words, how does the force get created in him, whereby he can be able to maintain his life

(4) To which region are the cells of the brain connected and what is the nature of that region?

(5) How can human nature be changed?

(6) What help is rendered for and against character-formation by natural influences?

(7) Where to are their ions connected; and how can their (human beings) ions be altered?

“These are the problems, which I am giving to dear Ram Chandra to solve. He is to get oriented to these after the annual function. Some points, if coming to comprehension, he may note down: there is no need of much attention (to these). Just now at 9.30 P.M. he felt some movement at his right and left sides; he is to write something about it.”

We were conversing together. When during discussions, there was reference to the emblem, Revered Master quoted a Persian couplet; “Remain absorbed from end to end with the effulgence of the face of the Beloved: when you have got acquainted with the Beloved, just become a stranger to yourself.”

18-2-1945

Revered Master confided:

“Your mother (wife of Revered Lalaji Saheb) has suffered tremendous deception. She has been dealt marvelous assurances (green gardens). Greed is a terrible ghost.”

Again at 1.00 P.M.:

“After very long deliberation, I have arrived at the conclusion that B1 e got totally devoid of spirituality; and all his plexuses be brought to a mute state. Make him entirely dull.” The order was complied with.

Revered Master clarified:

“Dear Ram Chandra acquainted Lord Krishna with the state of affairs prevailing in His (Lord Krishna) home (Sahaj Marg or Satpada Pantha) and prayed that his (Ram Chandra) brethren, who are initiated on the hand of his Revered Master and consider themselves connected to Him (Revered Master) get reformed; and that it should not occur that on these people (brethren) going to some elder sage and revealing their condition before him (elder sage) cause defamation of the good name of his (Ram Chandra) Revered Master. Thereupon Reverend Lord Krishna replied that

defamation of such a great personality cannot be allowed to occur, and on His own accord dictated that declaration (to be made) finally. Now take it as God's command."

19-2-1945 (Time 7.00 P.M. and after)

Revered Master:

"I am also of the opinion that the secret be devilled."

Question: "In what way?"

Revered Master: "Reveal. No need of any further delay."

Revered Master:

"Dear Ram Chandra and M1 should reach Fatehgarh on March 29, 1945. M1 should reach there on 28th. If Inspector Sahib (II) goes with him, it will be good. Otherwise, he (II) should participate without fail in Bhandara; there is an invitation on my behalf."

22-2-1945

Revered Master's dictation:

"In this age things are coming to past in such ways as render it difficult to come out unscathed. Real Man is one who is able to live uniquely in the midst of all people. The atmosphere has taken the effect of the human impressions (Samskaras) to the extent that the thoughts of people are not allowed to remain unruffled. This is due to our own defect. Our will has got so much weakened that the shape of succour does not appear to be there. This is because people derive pleasure out of the derangement of their thoughts. Nobody is able to consider himself free of a job that has been completed, to take up another job in hand (free from the burden of the impression of the ob, already completed). The cause of the perplexity of the heart in general is just that too many ideas are entertained at one and the same time, or else one thought is unduly stressed to such an extent as to affect the heart. To be rid of this malady, some work connected to God is to be taken up with such deep attachment as to have the same work developed as a tool for one's salvation. Just this teaching is imparted to everybody

in our fold: one who acts upon this prescription achieves success to a large extent. It may be adopted in any form. There is no harm at all in that regard. The main thing is being concerned with the purpose in view. One thing more is essential which everybody should adopt taken to be the main concern. Now the questions arises, how this can be brought to one's lot. The answer is that God's shape is to be supposed in some actual person who is considered by one to be perfect; and one is to start loving that particular person. One thing even now remains: how is this sentiment to come up? The answer to it is right conduct. The problem is still not solved as it gives rise to the thought as to how we are to develop rightness of conduct. The reply to this is prayer and the habit of having regard and respect for others. One more question arises: how do we come upto that state? The answer to it is good company, along with stories of elder sages and devotees.

“How to make one's will power strong without taking up any practice or meditation? The answer consists in that some work be taken up as the main one, the other jobs be treated as being at the second and third place (in order of priority). This problem is still not solved. How is one to structure oneself so that this would start happening and a habit would be developed to that effect? The reply to this query is that one should first of all have the firm determination that strong will power has to be developed. Then he is to take up the work. The result of this will be that according to the philosophy concerning the casual existence, outlined by dear Ram Chandra earlier some time, an impression will be carved therein, and the work taken up from this point of view, will be helpful. Now the question arises to how its impression is to be carved in the causal body! The answer to this is singleness of orientation. The problem remains yet unsolved. How is singleness of orientation to be formed? The reply to this is that one should first take oneself to be single oriented. This is called supposition, which dear Ram Chandra has very often adopted in meditation of Master's form; and it is just his (Ram Chandra) invention. The method of supposition consists in having the firm thought of only that which is to be done and brought to success; and create no thought against that. This practice can be applied in case of any worldly action, provided that it is right.”

Revered Master's dictation at 5.25 P.M.:

“It is a matter of great happiness that dear RamChandra has established such a deep connection to the Ultimate Being that direct commands in the form of divine revelations (Shruti) have started descending on him with effect (from today). There is no parallel to the example of the training and its technique, imparted by me to dear Ram Chandra. It cannot occur to the comprehension and imagination of the great and greater ones (mean sages); and to speak the truth, he (Ram Chandra) was also the deserving vessel for that training, which is of a entirely new kind. The transmission I gave to him was absorbed by him, but was thrown off in case of others, when that transmission came to touch with their condition. However, I had done this (filling dear Ram Chandra with a special condition) after quite some time, when I was wholly certain that he was deserving that and capable of my successor-representativeship. There was an effect of the transmission by others at the apparent (outer) screen (of dear Ram Chandra's being); but when someone took the inner screen (of his being) in one's thought, he (transmitting person) himself would start being hypnotized. I am revealing something very confidential:

Whoever would transmit to him started deriving benefit, which was taken to be the benefit coming from me. Look here M1, such training can be imparted to one and only one (disciple); and this is possible when sufficient affinity gets developed between the two (Master and disciple). This is God's gift: it is not a matter of one's power. Nobody imparted correct guidance in the real way to him (Ram Chandra); but even he was attempted to be led astray (by some people). In case of meditation of Master's form, which was not prescribed to this poor fellow (Ram Chandra), but even prohibited, he had to depend on his own humble invention' and it came up right. Since God had to bring him up to his present state, this practice (meditation on Master's form) started automatically (in the right way). Dear M1, one thing is a matter of sheer impertinence, which people (I mean disciples) remain doing in general. During meditation on Master's form, they take up the thought of a part of Master's body, viz. the head, whereas the whole figure of Master should be taken in thought. Dear Ram Chandra had practiced it exactly that way; and the fun of it has been that he was not able to practice Shaghal Rabta in the right way. Under the stress of this very thought (feeling of guilt), he had asked me,

mentioning that he was not able to practice it. I had replied only (considering it inopportune to tell him more) that he would not be able to practice it because mergence was there in him. He, however, even then could not rest with it; he continued remembrance of me in subtlest forms; and when even remembrance started being forgotten, he just supposed that he was in the state of remembrance of his Master, according to his theory, that he had invented earlier. Even after that, he altered many forms of this practice; and invented one or other technique so that this practice of meditation on Master's form remained continuing in some shape or other. He adhered to this thing right upto the day on which I shattered his limitations. Even after that he refreshed and remained refreshing the same thing through the force of those, limitations, with the result that I had to create the thought of stopping him to do so, in the heart of M1. The reason was that he Ram Chandra) had got oriented with full power which came to his experience on bondages having been broken. That too was the last state of Shaghal Rabta, which he maintained intact. He had retained this habit over a very long time; and hence he used this power to strengthen the same (habit).

“I myself invented a technique today, viz. a poetic couplet capable of arousing love be taken up, and recited again and again. The person who recites the poem should remain filling (the audience with love); and the other person, who should be very strong, should remain drawing out that effect slowly and lightly. This process of snatching of love-effect has to be introduced when the waves of love start pervading the audience, with the thought that what is being filled in the audience is coming slowly after filling them towards the person exercising the drawing-out technique. There is no need for exercising a too strong will, because the person filling (the audience with love) does not, and should not fill them up to that (strong) extent. The benefit of his is to be that they (audience) will have got the taste of sublimity; and light fomentation will be imparted to their plexuses. This method, however, need not be applied by every Tom, Dick and Harry. M1 can apply it, but then dear Ram Chandra will be required to sit exercising the drawing out process; and when dear Ram Chandra does the filling in, M1 will be required to sit for the drawing out. This means that both persons involved in this technique should be strong enough. This should not be allowed for everybody (to practice). The prescription is well tried out. It can also be done,

that in case two persons, as required are not possible to be available together, one person may go on filling as well as drawing out by himself alone. In this regard I have liked the method of dear Ram Chandra's, viz. the round that is started is taken to oneself passing through the practicers (Abhyasis). This method is best in the circumstance of a second person of required caliber not being there."

Revered Master's dictation:

"During this short period I have brought those who rendered assistance to me and proved to be helpful to me at a fine stage, which was difficult (to do) for anybody else. Now the question is why I did like that. Is it to be designated as my selfishness, or is it to be considered as God's command? Both these (motives) can be correct, in their own right. The purpose of structuring them, in fact, was and is something else. They should and they do assist in God's work. Here the first thing (motive) ends. Now the second one makes a start, viz. the state of my Satsang is in a bad shape. This all of you know and I have remained continuously pointing it out. You have just to consider it your duty to set it right. The methods you may go on taking from me; but for this purpose, a guide is also required; and he must be a person who is to be directly connected to me, so that orders may be reaching them, and they (persons structured by me) are able to follow my commands. Now, it becomes incumbent to this effect that whatever is to serve the purpose be enquired of me. My instrument is present there; it doesn't need being repeated again and again.

"Now I am expressing the arrangement that I have conceived. It is that M1 should remain at B..., and R2 should look to the work in this district (Shahjahanpur). This should, however, be remembered, that each of them can work in the other one's circle. In fact, there are no circles; these are a matter of administrative arrangement for the sake of the convenience of people, I mean the people who receive and are to receive training.

Reform of character will be their (M1 and R2) duty; and spiritual training will also go along with it. Now the question arises as to what sort of character is to be there! The answer is that the preceptors should themselves adopt my way of life, and impart the training accordingly to those others."

Question: “How can this thing be possible?”

Answer: “They (trainers) should themselves become the examples of the character that happens to be mine. This thing is to be very much emphasized; and the methods of prayer should be used for making this effective. I tell this to everybody. R2 will have to tour this district (Shahjahanpur), and wherever I may send him; and he will have to assist K2. M1 also can send him (R2) and K2, wherever proper. All this work will remain just mine. Further (than this) I shall issue orders, whenever and whatever I shall consider proper.”

25-2-1945

Revered Master’s instruction:

“Start the practice of singing songs in my Satsang; but there is no need for sending for musicians, or drummers, nor professional Qawaali reciters should be invited for this purpose. Only the person, who is transmitting, can sing: in general, all those participating in Satsang (group meditation) shall not sing in the assembly. If the person, transmitting, considers it necessary, and the minds of the people in the assembly lack concentration, he can ask one or two persons, specially imbued with love, to sing; but not on every occasion. Only such persons as may be capable to transmit, can be given preference (in this regard). In the assembly and at the Samadhi, whether it be mine or yours, prostitutes are never to be called (for the purpose of singing) This precaution should be strictly observed.”

26-2-1945

Revered Master’s dictation:

“I am coming from Fatehgarh. I have studied the situation; and am telling you about it off and on. I have put up a special personality, viz. Swami Vivekananda Ji, to this task; and he has not returned, nor does he intend to return to the Real Storehouse (of power) so long as the work is not completed. His (Swami Vivekananda Ji) personality of an elderly sage, has no parallel to it. Now I come to the essential purpose. I am assigning a job to II (Laloo or Inspector Saheb) so as to turn her away from what the

opponents have tutored her, which is falsehood. The purpose and meaning of what has been told to her and fixed in her mind against a particular person or persons belonging to Shahjahanpur, happens to be something else, which will be soon clear to her. For the time being, she should get rid of the poison that has been administered to her mind, and remove the hatred (against Shahjahanpur people) that has got developed in her. He (II) should talk to her about all necessary matters too, in this regard. I mean to say that she should be levelled up to the extent of coming to the right path before the revelation of the real (representation) takes place. When the revelation is made about whom it concerns, she should weigh that person well, and see whether he has the same affection for her as a son should have for his mother. One precaution is necessary to observe, viz. he (II) should keep this matter (substance of the declaration to be made) confidential, not informing her or others until he (Ram Chandra) reaches there, and I issue the order (for the declaration to be made). The presence of II is essential at the time that the revelation is made. He should be there at the time of that the revelation is made. He should be there at the time of the declaration and it will be even better if he (II) himself performs this good job, and makes the declaration. If he is able to do this job, I will be happy; and his name (II) will be written in bold letters in that history, which will be written after (the physical dissolution of) Ram Chandra. These notes that I am preparing will be included in the (auto) biography of him prepared; and my biography of him prepared; and my biography shall also be there just along with that, because nobody could understand me better than he. I am going to Fatehgarh again. Swami Vivekananda Ji has taken a vow not to return to the Real Storehouse (of power) till getting his work completed.”

Revered Master’s dictation (sometime later):

“Look here M1, what a nice etiquette dear Ram Chandra observed at this time! When Guru Nanak Deva accorded permission to him, I was not present here. If he (Ram Chandra) had subjected to what Guru Nanak Deva was telling him to be referred to me for my approval, in the presence of Swami Vivekananda Ji, what a terrible insult it would have meant to him (Sami Vivekananda Ji)”. He (Ram Chandra) took Swami Ji in my place at that time; and just this was due regard and proper etiquette. We both (Revered Lalaji Saheb and Swami Vivekananda

Ji) have an equal right on him. He ought to have done just this: I felt very happy. And when he sat in meditation (before Guru/Nanak Deva), he had me in his thought: this was the best conduct at that time. I want just such persons in my organization; but alas! My intense desire remains just at that. This is not at all difficult, though apparently it seems to be difficult. There is need for just getting glued a little (a little attachment); and that getting glued should be such as may never get released. This aphorism, I am telling today, is very good: It is to be useful for everybody. M1 should instruct his disciples to try developing like that. I shall feel very happy if everybody is able to perform just like this. Then my mission would have got fulfilled; and nothing more would remain to be done.”

2-3-1945

Revered Master’s dictation addressed to M1:

“One is helpless in the face of God’s command. Whatever He ordains, must happen. The sage has nothing to do with relationship. This I ordain to you people as well. Have regard for this (principle) in this life, as well as after that.”

3-3-1945 (Time 2.40 P.M.)

Revered Master’s revelation:

“N1 did not spare (his effort) even now: he wished that this trouble be got transferred towards Ram Chandra; but nothing happened.”

4-3-1945

Revered Master’s dictation:

“He (Ram Chandra) has solved the problem concerning what is called total transformation, so well, it would have been difficult to solve in this way even by philosophers, devoting the most valuable part of their lives to it. His (Ram Chandra) insight always moves to the point, and hits exactly, where it needs to strike.”

Later at 5.00 P.M. on hearing the letter received from S1. Swami Vivekananda Ji informed; “Your Revered Guru has gone to S... and is working havoc. Check Him. Check Him soon. “Prayers were

offered to Revered Master, and He desisted from what He was starting to do.

Revered Master's dictation: "What Revered Swami Ji has instructed, precautions in that regard are essential, even though nobody has the power to do something of the kind in my presence. Those who are workers, and who are responsible for the protection of dear Ram Chandra, should not take part in Shanti Patha (silent chanting of the words 'Om Shanti' for peace to pervade the whole universe).

These include M1 and R2."

5-3-1945

Revered Master's dictation:

"For the future, I prohibit this method of total transformation being practiced without my presence or that of dear Ram Chandra. This method should not at all be applied to one's disciples. If a need to that effect may arise the case be sent to dear Ram Chandra. In this method there is the possibility that past impressions may descend to form a cluster at one place and adopt the shape of immediate fruition (causing suffering). Just this is the dangerous aspect of it."

6-3-1945

Revered Master's dictation (concerning the publication of His biography developed from some manuscript papers):

"The name of N1 should never occur in my biography. (Pause) How many copies of this book have been published; and how many have been sold? I like that all the literature, published thus far, be brought to you; and it will be even better if those who have purchased these books also return these to you; and the price be refunded to them. If they like. The publications have been brought in a very bad (and objectionable) shape. I like that all of my manuscript literature be collected at one place; and read to me. I shall tell whether some particular anecdote is worth publication or not. I shall take Rs. 500 from dear Ram Chandra in this regard, which will all be spent only under this head. Whatever income shall accrue from it, shall be deposited in the account of the

Satsang (society of spiritual associates); and will be utilized only in that work. I shall remain instructing step by step in this regard; and shall also point out, wherein my originality in the composition be there. The difficult topics, dealt with briefly by me, may also be commented upon. If all that be brought here (Shahjahanpur), it will very easily be got compiled in the form of books. I shall be giving two hours of my time daily (for this purpose). Assure your mother (wife of Revered Lalaji Saheb) that these things that will remain with you, shall not go to anybody else; and that it is your privilege as well as your duty (to have all that and do the needful). It is only through the successor representative that these matters are brought to perfection. History stands witness to it.”

7-3-1945

Revered Master's dictation (to M1):

“The style of speech should be like mine, viz. devoid of rise and fall in pitch; so to say, rather in the shape of the divine current flowing evenly since the beginning of creation. I had copied just that. Its benefits are numerous, beyond the possibility of narration. This is a philosophy, viz., when the flow of talking proceeds in conformity with Reality, there develops a state of affinity between the two (Reality and speech); and through that (affinity) the divine way starts developing automatically. This results in effectiveness: whatever is spoken goes on making a dent (in the heart of the persons of the audience). In other words, a sort of relationship with the current of Reality gets established; and when a relationship is created, effectiveness has to be there. If someone copies it, only those words will be flowing out during speech which are intended and are right. This thing will be mentioned in my biography also. The technique for (achieving) this consists first of all in attempts at reducing the rise and fall invoice (which is also called sharpness), while talking. This flow (of speech) will go one acquiring affinity with that (current of Reality) to the extent that such a reduction is achieved (progressively). By ‘sharpness’ I do not imply anger alone: that remains something extremely gross; and it should not be allowed admittance at all in this context. What I mean is that the flow of speech should not carry any kind of burden on it. An illustration of this can be the currents of (still) air. This is very difficult as well’ but everything is possible to achieve through sustained effort and courage, if

Master's Grace is along with it. A Persian couplet: 'There is no difficulty, which does not come to be easy; it behaves Man to be never hopeless.'

Revered Master's dictation:

"S1 is also to come (at the annual function); and that unfortunate fellow (N1) too shall come. Continue listening to abuse and go on working silently. Use powers but rightly or for whatever there may be an order. I am telling you (M1 and R2) one thing, which will be very beneficial: Upto the time of the declaration, and in case of need after that even, connection be linked to the power of dear Ram Chandra (which has been bestowed to him). But look, I do not permit it after the annual function. Then my own power will start running through all of you. Everyone, however, must exercise control over one's tongue. External manifestation of respect (and courtesies) is not prohibited. Our conduct is with us: the other one stands responsible for his own. What I mean by 'manifest courtesies' is not to give an inkling to anyone-even if it be that unfortunate one (NI) himself – that I (you) stand in opposition (to him); but rather try on your own turn to meet (him) as hitherto, in performance of your duty, which is right as well. (Pause).

(Time: 9.40 P.M.) "I have bestowed to dear Ram Chandra control over the element of fire. His temperament is extremely cool, which created a need for this (gift). To bestow control over this element is prohibited, which I had observed. You (Ram Chandra) too should not bestow control over it to anybody. Often people lack the capacity to bear it; and rather people mostly do not have it."

Dictation from Swami Vivekananda Ji: "Congratulations. Some more powers are coming to you, which are lying reserved. These are special gifts of Lord Krishna, in pursuance of the duties, you have performed in South India. Lord Krishna keeps an inexhaustible store for you. The pleasure seekers require neither you, nor your help. The world will recognize your authority, but only after you (physically depart). I have been working at J. since 5 o'clock; It is about 10 now."

8-3-1945

Revered Master's revelation:

“Lord Krishna had the intention of merging totally in dear Ram Chandra, but due to the apprehension of the physical body being left behind, I prayed for that thing not to be done. Swami Vivekananda Ji also agreed with an supported this thought of mine. Even then, Lord Krishna has reserved a whole store (of powers) with me for him (Ram Chandra). This is the reward for the work in South India.”

9-3-1945

Revered Master’s dictation continued (time 5.53 P.M.):

“I am coming just now from Reverend Lord Krishna. He is of the opinion that you (Ram Chandra) have to be sent to Hardwara on the occasion of Kumbha Parwa (big gathering of pilgrims at every twelve years’ interval for bathing in the holy river Ganges). As such, this cannot be avoided. Fix up your mind (for this programme) on return from the annual function.”

10-3-1945

Revered Master’s dictation:

“I tried a lot to avoid sending him (Ram Chandra) to Hardwara. Finally, just this decision came to be made, and I too had to agree with it, viz. he is to be sent there without fail. Just this is the order of Reverend Lord Krishna... (Pause) He (Ram Chandra) had the intention to stay at Rishikesh; but that is not proper. He must stay at Hardwara itself; and have control all-over from there. Since there will be a big gathering of mendicants there, even though sages are to be scarce, there may be some ones who may be exercising their miraculous powers. If they prove troublesome, you snatch off the powers. During the previous Kumbha, quite some time back, one person had arrived there, who had caused lots of troubles to people. If that person again acts or prepares to act like that, do snatch his powers without fail.

“The sage in charge (Abdal) of Mathura was assigned a duty for three months; but he remained on duty for one month more. Yester night when he mentioned about it, he was relieved from the duty. He desires some return for his services, which was bypassed

at the time. Today in the evening he was paid in return; and amply rewarded. His points of the organic region and the cosmic region were brought up to a fine awakened state. His organic region was already in a blooming open state. He burst out in tears on comprehending the condition, which was being penetrated in him; and said that he had just remained longing (and pining) for such a condition all his life thus far. Out of happiness he extended the term of his duty on his own, by one month more. I shall increase it by fifteen more days; 'on my part.'

12-3-1945

Revered Master's dictation (Time 11.15 A.M.):

"Somebody is attacking. Sit alert (Pause) Nothing now. The person who indulged in this act has no power to perform it. He wanted to activate the power of the cosmic region and direct it to descend on your brain. B1 had read about this practice somewhere in books. He does not possess the capability for this. (Pause) He has tried again; but this is beyond him. He has just put you on alert."

Revered Master commanded me at 11.30 A.M. to get oriented to a man of God in Persia, who was departing from the physical world. As such, I transmitted to him for five minutes; and stopped when he breathed his last.

Revered Master:

"Look M1, dear Ram Chandra did something marvelous. There is no limit to my happiness. When Revered Swami Ji told him that he desired to see him, but was unable to leave the work, he immediately reached there (Fathegarh), and put his head on Swami Ji's feet. What an item of refined conduct that struck his insight. Such an example will be rare to find."

After a few lines of confidential notes,
Revered Master's dictation continued: "If I impart a little movement to this power, there is bound to be a wonderful dispensation to enjoy: my reference is to the Bhandara. Not a single minute goes vacant of taking care of him (Ram Chandra) for

me; and I do not let it (Power) come up, but rather keep it subdued. I am telling you again, M1, that this power cannot come again.”

13-3-1945

Revered Master's instructions:

“JI is of the opinion that the spiritual condition of everybody be snatched off all at once. This is to include M10 also. I leave II aside. Both of you (M1 and Ram Chandra) do this work tonight.”

Revered Master:

“When M10 may recognize you, return (the snatched off spiritual condition) to him. Nobody is to be spared. If you like, you assign some work out of this to R2 as well. Leave aside your mother (Revered Lalaji Saheb's wife) and the wife of J1 as well as all of those who have faith in you.”

14-3-1945

Revered Master's revelation:

“Only God is the protector of his (Ram Chandra) life: I shall try to retain it to my best capacity.”

Revered Master's dictation addressed to M1:

“There could have been no better method to save (the physical organism). How nice that it hit the insight of dear Ram Chandra. One great problem is that such marvels are coming to happen through him step after step that even I am unable to hold myself (in proper balance). There is an occurrence just today: When I was upset, he immediately came up close to me. I cannot say why I found myself settled on his being close to me. This was something on account of which I came up with a perfectly open heart; and Lord Krishna too could not remain within holds and bounds.”

15-3-1945

Revered Master defined and explained certain technical terms, commonly used in the context of spiritual theory and practice:

1. Peace (Shanti): Perfect peace requires that taunts and rebukes, fouling up and fisticuffs, received from others, flow down like water from the smooth surface of an inverted jar without causing any effect on it. Tolerance under compulsion does not fall under this definition. In the initial stages, compulsion is needed for habit-formation.
2. Conjugation (Wasl): It is there, when all longing and quarrelling (outburst) is over: neither intense desire for togetherness nor pangs of separation should remain.

However, if somebody adopts this in the beginning, it will be wholly wrong and misleading. The passion should be only for the union; that is the aspirant devotee's job; and that remains God's Grace, viz. to rid the devotee of longing and quarrel (outburst). Spirituality is the name of lightness: that is to put it briefly in a single word, or else I have given its perfect definition in my (dictated notes (already) somewhere.

3. Passion/Longing (Jazb): "It is of two kinds: lower and higher. In case of the lower level of passion, there is continual aggravation of the mental tendency: this is more beneficial in the initial stage. The higher form of passion is that whose one illustration has been cited yesterday by Swami Vivekananda Ji, viz. 'Your love is like a secret fire in the wood.' That is to say, inward smouldering in love would continue, without any aggravation of the heart being created. The real meaning of passion (Jazb) is attachment. The amount of attachment can be said to increase in proportion to the intensity of the relationship of conjointment (Nisbat).

4. Good conduct on the way to God-Realization (Sulook): In the first (Superb) form of it, everything, I mean concerning one's own condition, appears to be in a sleeping state. Then there are second rate forms of it. The first-rate conduct on the way to God - Realization is rare to find.

5. Faith/Conviction (Aitqad): Firmness of faith is there when one's link with Him (God) is established so as to be never diverted even to the extent of finding oneself beyond control with respect to do that (diverting of faith). Achieving such conviction/faith should be attempted.

6. Dependence/Faith (Bharosa): Briefly it is having/finding at any time nobody except He (God), nor having/finding any help other than His to depend on.

7. Thankfulness/Gratitude (Shukr): To remain happy under all circumstances is called thankfulness.

8. Gratitude/Obligation (Ehsaan): This is the condition wherein one is never oblivious of His remembrance, and considers Him alone every moment as one's own. He means God: worldly obligation is not meant (here).

9. Contentment/Patience (Sabr): To be contented under all conditions, without the thought of something better occurring to one's mind.

10. Craving (Talab): Nothing except God is to be craved for.

11. Longing/Pining (Tadap): This means restlessness; and it reaches upto the reality of love. This remains (verbal) meaning; and now listen to its definition: real longing is there when no current except that would arise in the heart.

12. World (Duniya): It is that wherein everybody desires one's recompense.

13. Transcendence/Hereafter (Ugba): It is where nobody has to do anything with anybody else, i.e. no attachment is felt (with others). Swami Vivekananda Ji explained: "Interdependence is the idea of our Lord as regards the world. The other world (hereafter/transcendence) comes just in opposition to that. Heaven is nothing but the condition of being devoid of these two things. Heaven means the condition itself."

Revered Master: “Now dear M1, note down a (Persian) couplet from me: ‘Heaven is where no trouble remains; when nobody has anything to do with anybody else.’”

Swami Vivekananda Ji gave some more definitions and explanations:

14. Maya: It is nothing but the dark side of God

15. Purusha: It is the bright side (of God)

“Think of the burning point of a lamp as Purusha, and shedding light as Maya. You swim across this light to reach the burning point. Where the luster ends, there the darkness prevails, making our horizon. It is called a gross state of Maya, I mean, where the light reaches in points and not in the shedding way. People are generally enveloped in this part of the big circle. Guru brings light from the burning point to this circle, making it all the same in the long run. The question arises, where from the Guru brings such light when he is born in the third circle of darkness. The answer is, as the word (Guru) itself suggests, that he is always near and nearer to the burning point, wherefrom he takes up light directly and leaves the veil behind it in utter darkness.”

[In Sanskrit, the word Guru means that which removes darkness: Gu=darkness; Ru=that which removes.]

16-3-1945

Revered Master’s dictation: addressed to M1:

“Just a little earlier, one more act has come to be committed by him (Ram Chandra). Swami Vivekananda Ji was desirous of seeing him (Ram Chandra) close to him (Swami Ji), in his exact present forum. The same thing immediately came to happen (automatically) on the part of dear Ram Chandra. My purpose in pointing out such things (again and again) is just that people copy the (example of) perfect affinity; and that they be confronted off and on with these illustrations (of seemingly minor, but very significant acts of the heart-gripping etiquette) in order to create fondness (of the right sort) in them as well.”

Revered Master:

“Look M1, dear Ram Chandra had acquired perfect affinity with me already: now the state of his relationship with revered Swami Ji has come to the same.”

17-3-1945

Revered Master:

“I went to Fatehgarh. Swami Vivekananda Ji never left the place ever since having taken up the work. J1 is also busy. (Pause) So long as an aspirant does not suffer a downfall in honesty (of belief) and firmness of faith remains, there can be no effect of dirt (unclean surroundings). Someone stuffing through external force is another matter. However, right faith is something that purges off even that, and does not allow it to have effect. Both the example is here; one is that of dear Ram Chandra, and the other of B2. Offer congratulations to M1 that I have made his disciple M2 of B.. cross a stage: I have perfected his organic region. The mental (natural) inclination towards the cosmic region has not yet arisen.”

Revered Master’s dictation:

“Your (Ram Chandra) appearance came to my vision one, as a result of my prayer, offered to Him (God) for a person capable of becoming my successor-representative, to be made available to me. On having that vision of our countenance, I exercised attraction towards me on you. This happened much earlier than your actual coming to me. I had delayed to initiate you so that you undergo a little more smouldering. I was fully convinced that you were sure to come to me; but I had started changing just there and then. The notes that I have given about you previously mean that in spite of all this I continually maintained my vigil; and remained even then tallying my own experience with that of my Revered Master throughout. One reason for these precautions happened to be my concern about your prosperous family background as well. As such I kept a watch on you at each step (and every moment).”

Revered Master’s dictation later, addressed to M1 and R2:

“What has struck dear Ram Chandra’s mind was difficult to occur to persons of very high caliber. I can say that this technique did not come to anybody’s comprehension – I am referring to elder sages of recent times. Otherwise, there is nothing altogether new about it.

The difficulty was that when he (Ram Chandra) used to depute his astral body (for some work), or you people (M1 and R2) do that, it (astral body) did not work well, and the need for transmission still remained. Now this shortcoming has been corrected. The technique consists in getting the astral body imbued with life, on being taken out (for being deputed to do some specified work). The movement (or life in the astral body) will be immediately felt; and then it may be yoked to the work in hand, giving it (astral body) some more special power needed for the specific job. (Pause) I alone know his (Ram Chandra) merits well; and he (alone knows) mine. It is in imitation of liberated souls, so to say.”

19-3-1945

Revered Master’s dictation, addressed to MI:

“How much to praise dear Ram Chandra!

If he had attempted to claim me down at this time, I would have dealt punishment to him. To calm me down at other occasions was proper, but not on this occasion. Just see, dear M1, how delicate his position becomes. Just now I had created irritation intentionally; and this was a test for him; otherwise, how can it be possible for me to bypass his words. If somebody is considered as deserving high punishment., it is duty as well to shower extreme grace on him. Can it be possible to come across such an example! Not at all. I promise that whatever thought happens to arise in him, I shall get just that fulfilled: there is to be no question of right and wrong. The extreme punishment that I had selected for him, was never thought of for anybody. He anyway came successfully out of the test; as such, the above-quoted is here for him. Successor-representativeship is not a child’s play! I never tested anybody like this, because I knew that nobody could measure equal to it. Since such punishment was there, now reward, far higher in proportion, is also there! If I do not do that, I

will be guilty of shirking justice. The person for whose little mistake, God forbid if it had got committed, I had intended to hurl total annihilation, now has to be rewarded in equal proportion (in the reverse direction). My opinion, therefore, is that he shall act quite independently, particularly on such an occasion. He did a superb performance: When I forced him to ask for something, he begged for this: 'So long as the world exists, my Lord's name should shine like the sun.' I again promise for the future that whatever he asks for (or desires), that same shall be granted. When I was poised to hurl such a calamity on my beloved one, in case an error had been committed by him, there remains no reason why I do not bestow these words on him. This was the last test for him. I claim that an identical affinity never developed in anybody to this day. Now I permit him to reduce irritation that may ever develop in me, to the extent of his liking. Dear M1, you have no inkling as to what I have bestowed on him just now. Just consider it the story of crude rice that transpired between Lord Krishna and Sudama." Sudama, an old friend of Lord Krishna, forced by his adversity, went to seek succour from his old friend of student life, on the insistence of his wife, who could manage only a few handfuls of crude rice, borrowed from a neighbour, to be taken as a present to the old friend – Krishna – who was now the great king. Lord Krishna received Sudama most honourably and affectionately; and playful at his shyness and hesitation, snatched the present sent to him by His sister-in-law, and started eating handfuls of the uncooked rice. With every handful of rice put in Lord Krishna's mouth, the kingdom of one world – upper, middle and nether – was going to Sudama's ownership. Rukmini, Lord Krishna's principal spouse, restrained Lord Krishna after the third handful, on the plea that she – Rukmini also had a share in that present brought by Sudama. When after a few days, Sudama started back, obviously carrying nothing from Lord Krishna with him, he felt sad and sarcastically blessed (or cursed) that Lord Krishna may also get what he had given Him, whereupon the kingdom of the three worlds was back in its place; and Sudama had only all kinds of worldly prosperity to his astonishment on reaching his home.]

My dear M1, he (Ram Chandra) does not give up subtlety. He has ordered me only what I was desiring. This was not a test for him: I have already ordained in that regard. Dear Ram Chandra, I instruct you that in your life and even thereafter, you should never test anybody in such a severe way. To you M1 also say the same.

Tell Revered Master:

“Look M1, Ram Chandra has again acted superbly Swami Vivekananda Ji told him out of happiness that this incident will be communicated to Lord Krishna. His intention was to acquaint Lord Krishna with the happy tidings of dear Ram Chandra’s success (in the severe test). He (Ram Chandra) thereupon so nicely requested Swami Ji not to acquaint Lord Krishna with the event, as it would not be nice to tell that their loved one was put to such a severe test, to fail in which would have brought about his destruction. I feel incapable of expressing my heart’s condition at this time. There can be no better respect for one’s guide. Now where from can I get the heart to enable me to ignore (or put aside) what happens to ask for or mention to me. The tests are over. No more now. I have mortgaged myself unto him from today onwards: what more to say! Dar M1, I swear by the name of God that from today I have kept nothing with me; and have just transferred everything to him, and emptied myself totally. All forms of wealth that may possibly be there, I have bestowed on him. (Pause) He has again worked a marvel. I asked him what more should I give; and he replied: “(Protective) shade of your graceful relationship (Saaya-e-Aatifat), just as it has always been.’ Such an example shall nowhere be available; and it can hardly be expected even in the future. Dear M1, really what had still remained to be given, he has asked for! I have to repeat: this example will not be available again. People ought to learn a lesson.”

Revered Master:

“Dear M1, really speaking, I have not left even a seat for myself (anywhere).”

Revered Master:

“What a fine answer he (RamChandra) has given when Swami Ji asked him to consider himself as Swami Ji’s Lord; If a slave be placed on a king’s throne, his status in reality shall remain just that of the slave, even if royal privileges be made available to him.’ This reply has made me as well as Swami Ji immensely happy. Isn’t culture, that belongs to the sphere of respect to the guide!”

20-3-1945

Revered Master's dictation, addressed to M1 (Noon time):

“I have left the Higher World; and have no intention to return there for the whole period of dear Ram Chandra's life (on earth). Need may be another question; or else it may be from time to time for brief periods. My stay mostly, now, will be just here. Now I have no right to go to the Higher World, as I have yielded that also to him (Ram Chandra).”

Revered Master:

“Dear Ram Chandra has told me one method for my stay there. That method, no doubt, enables me to remain there, but it depends on my sweet will.”

21-3-1945

Revered Master's dictation:

“I have inspected; and noted myself the situation at Barnai [a village under Shri Babu Ji's landownership] Your obligations on those people are such a may be difficult to illustrate from amongst (the conduct of) landlords; and you have affection also for them. But the characteristic of the times is such that they do not want to reciprocate.. I have thought of one arrangement viz. you depute L2, who is a good fellow. He is honest, and obliged to you. Moreover, persons belonging to a particular caste who remain close to you, remain sowing thorns (creating troubles) for you; only one person, viz. J4 is an exception to some extent. It is an order form above that these people be totally destroyed at Barnai. I assign this work to M1. Just possible dear Ram Chandra may somewhat relent; as such this alone is considered better (to entrust this work to M1). He (M1) can start this work in accordance to his own sweet will. That remains permanent work for him.”

Revered Master: “Do not write this.”

Revered Master: “This time will not recur for a very long period now. For this special period, the proverb applies: “Majnoon made the forest into his home; but I turned my home into a forest’. What

is the final destination of love? – Where the mystery is made manifest.”

Revered master’s dictation, addressed to M1.

“Just now, at your hint concerning snatching way the illness of the mother of R2, what a nice method has been invented (by Ram Chandra)! That (method consists in separating the subtle body of the ailing person from the gross (physical) body, and putting the illness of the patient in the (subtle) body. The subtle body should not be allowed to enter into the patient’s physical being so long as it is desired to keep the patient free from the illness. The disease is to be kept in the separated subtle body, which is to be returned to the physical being of the individual after such cleaning of the disease. This method is not to be applied to all and sundry again and again. It can be used only at the time of some special need. If this method is needed for a long period of application, the subtle body is to be confined into a circle of thought which should be shattered when the same illness is desired to be returned to the patient again. This method, R2 can apply in case of his mother, if he considers it proper. I had applied this method to dear Ram Chandra, when he had come to me for some time, a few months before my physical veiling. During his illness, I had applied this method to him for several nights continuously.”

22-3-1945

Revered Master:

“Today, at 10.20 A.M. I have got a special power entered into you. It was a gift for you from Lord Krishna, kept safe with me (for quite some time).”

23-3-1945 (Time 12.40 P.M.)

Revered Master: “I am coming from Fatehgarh. I am trying.”

24-3-1945

Revered Master:

“What remains now with me to give (to Ram Chandra)!”

Revered Master:

“The flow from the Ultimate Being has started descending (Time 8.24 P.M.) This promise from the Ultimate Being is for the entire period of your life.”

Revered Master:

“Just now the story of Mahmood Ghaznavi and Ayaaaz occurred so aptly to our mind. So, I also thought it proper to recite this Persian couplet: King Mahmood Ghaznavi, who had been the master of thousands of slaves, was gripped by poverty to such an extent as to be reduced to the status of the slave of a slave’. This is my state.

[Reference: page 159, Autobiography Part II Vol. I, page 159]

Direction initiation is just my method. Earlier it never occurred to anybody’s comprehension; nor was it every put to practice.”

25-3-1945

Revered Master (addressing R2):

“Just now, dear Ram Chandra performed a superb wonder. Just this is called hitting at (the exact target). What he did to Shri Chaitanya Mahaprabhu just now would have been an extreme impertinence if it had not been exactly required (at the moment). May God bless his sensitivity (and experience).”

The connection of S2 with his guide was snapped at 12 P.M. (midnight) and an order for destruction was issued.

Revered Master’s dictation, addressed to R2 continued:

“I have come just now to impart some lesson to you people. An illustration (of exact grasp) is being presented. Dear Ram Chandra had been prohibited to take part in reforming the society (of the disciples and successors of Lalaji Saheb), which has been taken up to by elders (of yore) in their own hands. This was something, that every disciple must most strictly adhere to; but he (Ram Chandra), inspite of my standing orders, did just give an

impetus to the concept of his mother (wife of Lalaji Saheb). I think nobody would have dared to do such a thing. What was the point precisely? I (unconsciously) was desiring his (Ram Chandra) assistance in that special work, which was concerning his mother. What I mean (to impart) is that the exact thought according to my (unconscious) desire cropped up in his heart; this is known as (perfect) identity.”

Revered Master (addressing R2):

“This test dealt by Radha Ji to dear Ram Chandra was of a very peculiar nature. It could have very scarcely struck the comprehension of anybody. It was just to see what reply he would give to Radha Ji’s test being dealt to him; and it came out exactly, word for word, as She desired. That reply was; ‘Since you have designated me as your brother, in case I fail to get through your test, shall it sound nice for you to tell others that your brother failed to get through the test!’ This was the hardest test out of all those that have been dealt to dear Ram Chandra upto date.”

Revered Master (addressing R2):

“I have not spared anything wherein full mastery has not been granted to dear Ram Chandra... The way in which he had submitted his (humble) prayer to me, was not a matter of ordinary intelligence. I very much liked that style (of submission); and as a reward just for that, issued a declaration prohibiting anymore test being dealt to him by anybody; and his prayer I have communicated to the Ultimate Being. The words of his prayer were (exactly) these: ‘I am after all human: there can be mistakes at any and every step. It was just your Lordship’s kind grace that I remained coming out successfully thus far through the tests. Now my heart just trembles at the thought of the tests. I do not have the strength to pass through tests. If, God forbid, I happen to fail in some such test! – I have nothing further to say.”

Revered Master:

“You have really made my name alive. Nobody else could have come successfully through these tests. This (perfect) identity of mine (with you) is an object of great admiration (among revered elders). And why would it not be like that; I am present in every

hair-root of your body. Look here R2, I have put into him one more power out of the gifts of Lord Krishna, at 9.50 P.M.”

Revered Master:

“Dear Ram Chandra, I had come to know all these matters during my life-time, as to what was in store for you; and I have the knowledge of what is to come still ahead as well.”

Lord Krishna: “I have felt immensely pleased at this culture (of yours) not to abandon your Guide. This is no a mistake, but a sort of test even, so to say; and it happens to be, by itself, an examination of your impulses. This thing has made me very happy. The value of the Guru is to be learnt by anybody from you; and it is just proper that one who is really a lover can have nobody except the beloved in his view, and that alone remains everything to the (real) lover. This example shall be scarce to find: it rather ought to be said that (such an example) cannot be available (anywhere else)”

The point of conversation (on my part) was this: “The highest reward to me happens to be that our Revered Master remains with me, and having Him in m vision remains my good fortune. What more is there for me to crave for. ‘For one who suffers from the pangs of love, there is no medicine except the sight of the beloved’ (a Persian half-couplet from Hafiz).

26-3-1945

Revered Master:

“One more power (Shakti) out of the gifts of Lord Krishna has been penetrated at 10.20 A.M.”

Revered Master:

“To consider oneself to be weak – this is a matter of extreme weakness.”

Revered Master:

“B1 has taken away all the maps I prepared. The suggestion you submitted to Swami Vivekananda Ji on his command has been accepted. The power has started and those people are now in the orbit of destruction. The suggestion was to the effect that the

people who are to come in opposition after Bhandara, may be taken for destructions just from now on. You recommended your mother (wife of Revered Lalaji Saheb) to be left aside under every circumstance. You had certainly added the provision that the suggestion was to be put to effect if it was proper and productive of good. As such, those who have been taken in the orbit of destruction till now are R7 and M10., (the order concerning R7 was rescinded at 7 P.M. on 3-4-1945). The action against them has started directly from the Ultimate Being. You people do not need to work for the destruction of these people. This power will return only after having completed the destruction of these persons. Just possible some more people may come into the fold of this action, which has started already. I have myself snapped the connection of these two persons; you need do nothing in this regard. I give you the right to mention to me the person, whosoever, whose destruction you consider necessary during the period for the annual function; or you may submit to that power as well (directly). Remember, however, not to act on the advice of somebody else. In case my special people. Including M1, II i.e. Lalloo and R2, feel trouble from someone, they canal so tell me by way of prayer; but this weapon is not to be used in quick succession.”

Revered Master’s dictation continued: “I have dealt such stiff punishment to N1 as to make him remember (his sins). The punishment is that he shall go to hell together with his brain, i.e. the sensitive part of it. What a confusion has been caused to my Satsang! My sacrifices were not such as to deserve this fate!”

Revered Master later explained;

“The occurrence of a practicans downfall can be there upto the status of Maha-parshad (Ghous-ul-Azam), but in general this cannot happen. Snatching away (the spiritual status) can also be effected. This however, can be done by someone who has gone beyond the status of Ghouse-ul-Aazam; and even in that state has done sufficient swimming, having established connection with the Ultimate Being. The person possessing this state can never be deprived of (his spiritual condition); on the other hand, the person trying to snatch away his/her spiritual condition is oneself to slip down into it. This is to say that one who tries to snatch off the spiritual condition of that great personality, without an indication (of willingness) from that same great personality, is bound to lose his own capacity automatically to be included into it (into the

capacity of the great personality) (Pause) I have surrendered S2 to the destructive power that has descended from the Ultimate Being for this work (Time 7.10 P.M) Now, withdraw your subtle body from there; You have no need to touch (this case) at all. (Pause) A1, N1 and M3 are also surrendered to the same power (Time 7.20 P.M.) The rest will be looked into after Bhandara. Now, all of you people stand away from this job with clean hands.”

Revered Master (addressing R2):

“How much to praise the intelligence and comprehension of dear Ram Chandra! He offered a prayer, exactly as I wanted.”

Revered Master:

“My heart is leaping up with joy at this time. May God ordaint thus that his (Ram Chandra) successors to make his name immortal like mine; and his merits be remembered in hymns (for ever). So long as the world lasts, his name be shining like the moon in full splendour. His progeny be good. For his existing progeny, I pray for both their spiritual and their wordly prosperity. May spirituality never forsake his home; and such personalities may come out of it, as may make our names immortal. His hardships be eased ad Grace may make our names immortal. His hardships be eased and Grace may descend on him day by day, minute by minute, moment to moment, ever so to say. His friends be happy; and his enemies be vanquished. One thing more I say; and be it exactly like that; whichever ground and whatever place he may happen to tread, ma it become full of fragrance. Wherever he may happen to tread, may it become full of fragrance. Wherever he may happen to pass, his domain be established; and he may return from there having fixed his impression. Whoever happens to be in his company, be prosperous and never come across poverty. Have trust that all these things have come into effect; and the future shall come to be just like this. These blessings of mine are from the status of the Ultimate Being and cannot go vain.

Revered Master:

“Just now an anecdote has flashed into my memory, which is akin to the state of Ram Chandra. When Majnoon (legendary Love of Laila in Arabian mythology) went to Kaaba (holiest Muslim

shrine in Arabia), he prayed to God that his beloved Laila be never away from his mind. The story may be true or false. That is immaterial; the main purpose concerns the expression of the sentiment.”

One more power out of the gifts of Lord Krishna was absorbed at 11.15 A.M.

Revered Master's dictation (Time 9.35 P.M.):

I am at J. H4 is such a simple boy; but what an expanse of the influence of N1! When you reach Fatehgarh, tell II to wean out H4 at least. This can be possible through a letter also, in case he (II) is unable to attend the annual function.”

28-3-1945

Revered Master' instruction:

“Tell 11 to bring it home to M9 again and once more that if he is not or does not want to be helpful in my work, he should at least stand neutral. This matter is not such as to enable someone standing opposed and yet remaining unharmed.”

Revered Master:

“I have now tendered my permission to most respected Swami Ji. You too should desist from recommending the case of anybody (to him).

Revered Master:

“On listening to the letter from M1, I asked dear Ram Chandra as to what I should do now. He replied with extreme refinement of culture: “I have no intelligence to tender any advice to you, my Lord, but I have read in some book somewhere. If at first you do not succeed, try and try again!’ There can never be any reply, better than this. I have felt outside myself with joy. Alas! This acme of intelligence and comprehension! And nobody to appreciate it adequately! I am going to tell Swami Vivekananda Ji just this moment. To tell the truth, this reply has torn asunder my heart. I have now nothing left with me, except blessings, which I give to you; and am going away now.

Revered Master:

“When such an eventuality does arise, do (have the courtesy to) ask me to be sure. This power has been especially conferred on you; and this is (out of) Lord Krishna’s gift to you. The reference to it is present in my notes. Special power is to be used on a special occasion only.”

Revered Master:

“How tyrannical it happens to be that somebody may ask for pardon even when he is not at fault; and yet pardon be not granted to him! Anyway, what you did was not a fault. It was just my command. The fault belongs to those, who would not trust even when my reference is put forth. Is not the anecdote of Mira Bai worth being noted: She consumed fatal poison just because she was told that it had been sent to her by Lord Krishna?”

Revered Master:

“This is not your fault. These two upsurges (of the heart) were mine. Tolerance has reached its limit. Lord Krishna has not yet left the field. It was my anger that caused this effect in you.”

29-3-1945

Revered Master’s dictation, addressed to R2:

“Just now, dear Ram Chandra observed an etiquette that bears no example. He bowed down in obeisance before Swami Vivekananda Ji first of all; and that was proper for him. Then he bowed down before Shri Chaitanya Mahaprabhu; and when it was my turn, he bowed down in obeisance just before himself. This underlined sentence is impossible to be expressed (adequately) in words. The (noteworthy) special point in it is that he bowed down himself before himself.”

Revered Master:

“This status that is your fortune just now! – people shall just lament. Tell these unfortunate ones! – their eyes have not yet

opened. They have no inkling even about themselves! – as to what is happening; and what is about to happen! The world will weep for you some time. What I mean to say is that if people look to the direction of the wind blowing, be attentive to its pleasantness and provide accommodation to its expansion; then what I was just going to express can come to light. I have cast light on this subject somewhere in m notes. The powers are all coming down. The elder sages are setting up their residence just here. Swami Vivekananda Ji is leaving his place (in the Higher World, for good).

Shri Chaitanya Mahaprabhu has the same idea. Mahatma Gautam Buddha is turning his vision to focus it on you. Just possible, you may have to surrender the orders, received directly, to some elder master or other.”

Revered Master (Time 10.05 A.M.):

“This order has just been issued. A profuse chain (of gifts) from Nature has descended for you. What I had mentioned (to you) at the time of direct initiation, shall remain flowing continually. What I have mentioned just now is in addition (to that)”

Revered Master (Time 10.39 P.M. at Farrukhabad):

“I have transferred the power (to you), that was being referred to some time back. Have breakfast tomorrow morning, after I have arrived. Just now, I am going to Fatehgarh.”

(Farrukhabad, the district headquarters, where Revered Shri Babuji with his companions arrived by private bus from Shahjahanpur and camped for the night to attend the annual function the next day, is at a distance of about six kilo meters from Fatehgarh.)

30-3-1945

Revered Master, addressing R2:

“As soon as Ram Chandra felt me to be in dejection, he immediately started transmitting to me. This is the love; In reality I never have dejection. What a fine method of transmitting (to me) was adopted by him! He took himself to be me; and transmitted (to himself). What a fine point of character! I am telling you one thing as a piece of advice: you do not, in general, initiative such acts, as

issue forth from dear Ram Chandra, so long as you do not have identity with me established to a sufficient degree. Remember (carefully) that in case the matter happens to be the opposite or the thought commits a fault, this is the highest misdeed (in such actions, requiring the most severe punishment.)”

Revered Master, addressing R2:

“How beautiful that when I cannot tolerate dear Ram Chandra’s suffering, and try to remove it in case a does arise per chance, it also becomes his very duty by way of (refinement of) character, that he too does not bear to see me in the state of dejection! That is the exact meaning of responsibility.”

31-3-1945

At 8.40 A.M. in accordance with Revered Master’s command, the declaration that Shri Ram Chandra of Shahjahanpur is the successor-representative of Revered Lalaji Saheb) was made in the general assembly of spiritual associates through R2.

3 - 4 -1945 (At Shahjahanpur)

Revered Master's dictation:

"The crown of this success has adorned the head of R2. This is in reply to your entire thoughts concerning the assembly of associates; and the answer to all of your complaints against me is that I did not consider it necessary to establish what you were then considering incumbent with respect to the times. Only I comprehend what would constitute the better course at a particular place and time. Those who were present in that particular assembly of associates have not yet forsaken their condition acquired at that time. If the shape of challenge would have come up, be confident that I would have opened my heart. Can you understand that the labour of so many days would have been allowed to go waste in the shape of a challenge. Now another scheme is coming up. This is the information."

Revered Master (Time 7.00 P.M.):

"I have excluded R7 from destruction."

5-4- 1945

Revered Master addressing M1:

"I take what dear Ram Chandra says as God's Command. Whatever work he has assigned to me, I am engaged from head to foot in it. One thing I assign to you people, viz. you take up the job of building the organization and continue with it, so long as I do not issue another order. I shall feel restful only when I would have completed this work."

11-4-1945

Revered Master:

"Now I have worked out a device for taking work from dear Ram Chandra, viz. that I reside by myself in him, i.e. in his body; and then he would perform acts and jobs as I require. I may come and go according to needs; and remain outside him for training purposes. This is something that can hardly strike anybody's comprehension. God is all-pervading. By the words 'by myself' I mean the status in which I reside in the Higher World, and that I reside in him in that same capacity. I have already structured him as a suitable vessel/receptacle for that purpose.

12-4-1945

(Mass bathing in the river Ganga at an interval of 12 years at Haradwara)

Revered Master:

"Purify all the spots, that are taken to be sanctimonious here. Remove grossness from the earth also. The priestly class has to be under destruction. You are permitted to go and meet the various sects of mendicants (Sadhus). Leave Haradwara on 14th April and proceed to Delhi. There is a lot of work waiting for you at Delhi."

Further instructions (Time 10.30 P.M.): "Your duty, tomorrow, will be at the bathing spot on the river-bank (Ghat) from 8.00 A. M. onwards. You will be there at least for one hour. (Pause) The grossness of Haradwara has got cleaned off. Take up destruction-work at night; and remain illuminating Haradwara during day-time."

13-4-1945 (Main day of Kumbha bathing)

Revered Master (Time 8.40 A.M.):

"Information for your reaching Delhi is communicated there." At 9.00 A.M. an elder sage of Delhi enquired of me as to the day and time of reaching there. Revered Master: "Start for Delhi tomorrow afternoon. Continue illuminating Haradwara so long as you remain here. Be careful not to focus/concentrate all power at once, as you have done at one or two spots. Just remain having light thought. (Pause) Now Haradwara is in an adequately fine state (Time 12.00 Noon)."

The invisible saint in charge of the maintenance of the divine order (Abdaal) of Delhi again enquired about the date and time of my arrival at Delhi; and said that he had received orders to look to my security.

15 - 4 - 1945 (At Delhi)

Revered Master:

"The way you have taken work from the Ultimate Being (Zaat) would not have been done by anybody." The work at Delhi was assigned at Garh Mukteshwar, railway station. As soon as I stepped out of Delhi railway station, the invisible saint in charge of Delhi introduced himself to me and reported that he had started the performance of his duty.

Revered Master:

"There is much work at Delhi; and it requires a lot of labour. Tomorrow, you clean the whole of Delhi; and fill it up with grace as to make the light of Reality simmer through every particle. Then more work will be assigned. I am going now. Have rest for two hours. Work will start at night." (Time: 3.00 P.M.).

16-4-1945

Revered Master:

"The work at Delhi is progressing well. Upturn the seat of the adviser (Naib = deputy - reference to confidential political work). This will be the only work today.

Revered Master:

"From tomorrow, again illuminate Delhi. Grace is continually flowing in Delhi. At this time also the same thing is there. The power of the Ultimate Being has directly been oriented to Delhi. The work is expected to be completed by tomorrow."

Revered Master's dictation continued in reply to a query:

"In Delhi the grace is flowing so fine and subtle that it is difficult to comprehend it. Particles and atoms of the vacuum (sky) have got illuminated, wherefrom effect will remain pervading the atoms of the earth. No doubt, the effect on people is little. In due course of time, these atoms, that you have created through ingenuity shall affect the people. Every single particle of Delhi has got illuminated: I mean the earth." (Time: 10.30 P.M.)

17-4-1945

Revered Master:

"Now, you have completed the work at Delhi. Start from here tomorrow. You have established a spiritual reservoir in the nether levels of the earth in Delhi. In other words, you have made it the home of divine grace. The earth has got cleaned. Continue filling divine light in the vacuum. The people of Delhi will come up to the standard after much time. You have completed your work. You were sent to Delhi just to make the earth of Delhi cleansed."

Revered Master:

"Dear Ram Chandra, you stay contented. It is God's will; and you have to do something as well. Such indications will come up as you yourself may be able to set up suitable structures at the sites that you have discovered. You may go to B10. If, under intoxicating pride of money, he casts even a slightly humiliating

glance at you, I shall withdraw his entire prosperity and capital. Take it to be God's command. As such, it is better that you give up the intention of going there (to him) altogether. I have bestowed onto you such wealth as is not even available to emperors. You shall remain commemorated in the world for ages, and some one or the other shall come up to complete and perfect your mission. Nobody can have the power to discover the spots that you have found out at Mathura. These matters, in general, should not be publicized so long as the appropriate time for their revelation has not arrived at, and until someone is not prepared to divulge them."

Revered Master's dictation continued, now addressed to R6;

"I have to repeat R6 that the condition of your brother Ram Chandra is not well-known to you; and in fact, nobody has come up here as yet to have an estimate of it. There is no power, not a single saint, in the world to stand in comparison with him. I have constructed that, which has found befitting appreciation in the Higher World. Whatever orders be issued by him (Ram Chandra), these become incumbent for being obeyed by the residents of the Higher World -1 mean the liberated souls. Even I am not an exception to this. He has concealed himself in simplicity so much that people are not able to have any proper estimate of him. I say again that blessed is one who derives benefit from him and keeps company with him. This opportunity is not likely to come now for long, nor a personality of this status be apparent. His status is that of an incarnation (Avataar) and this is something confidential. Many elder sages of calibre have developed him as their successor-representative; and those that still remain waiting have their hopes pinned onto him. As such I am telling you R6, that whatever benefit you may, you do derive from him. loving him will be loving me. I have got every particle of mine merged in him* and stand totally identified with him. Such mergence shall not come into view anywhere else; and is neither likely to be expected in future. He has not left anything with him from surrendering to me. This thing too will not be found anywhere else. Take him to be an example, and try to emulate it. That is all for the time being." (Time

9.30 A.M.)

Revered Master's dictation later (Time: 7.20 P.M.):

"You have completed work at Delhi. There is no need to remain oriented any further. It is now 36 hours that Grace has been raining on Delhi from the Ultimate Being. At night, you take up the work allotted to R2." (Reference to work concerning the political situation)

Later concerning this work Revered Master replied to my inquiry (Time 11.00 P.M.):

"If you continue having light thought, I do not prohibit it, even though there is no need for that also any more. You gave three very strong pushes of the limitless power of the Ultimate Being this time."

22-4-1945

Revered Master addressing Ml:

"I praise my fortune; and these same are Swami Vivekananda Ji's words. Bravo on this subtle refinement. He (Ram Chandra) raised such a point, and it was so reasonable, that even Nature could not have refused to accept it. He fully repaid (the debt of) human duty. But what shall I gain by retaining the status bestowed on me: I will have to transfer it just to him. An example of this stature can be provided only by Ameer Khusro; but that was something different. To tell the truth, I have to say that this sort of love is not found ever in Khusro. This is designated as obedience. I had once told Ram Chandra to treat myself and Swami Vivekananda Ji as one and the same. As such, with same thought in view, he prayed in the holy presence of Lord Krishna for both; and we both stand benefited. The prayer was this: 'I have been so much rewarded on very petty counts; and Your Lordship says that it is all a miracle (Charishma) belonging to my Revered Master, who structured me as I happen to be. Then there seems to be nothing to stand in the way of my Revered Master being bestowed with what be the due in exchange to it: and my prayer is just this; and since Revered Swami Vivekananda Ji Saheb has left nothing lacking, he too be blessed with the beneficence."

Revered Master (Time 10.40 A.M.):

The orders concerning the status conferred on us by Reverend Lord Krishna, have started being received."

Revered Master:

"I give M2 under your (Ram Chandra) training. So long as I do not command, he (M2) will have no connection with M1. During this period of training (of M2) there is no need for M1 to be oriented (to M2) at all. Remember (Ram Chandra), however, that you do not make haste in any matter concerning M1. I shall surrender him (M2) after getting him ready to him (M1); and then it will be the business just between them (M2 and M1)."

25-4- 1945

Revered Master (Time 11.15 A.M.):

"I am assigning duty to M1 from today onwards that he does this work as essential duty for him throughout his lifetime. That duty is to remain stuffing spiritual energy in dear Ram Chandra in absentia; and stuff it in himself also, when he may consider it necessary. (Time 11.30 A.M.) I had the intention today to transfer to him (Ram Chandra) the status that has come to my fortune. I asked for his opinion; and he replied: 'It is worthy of only my Lord's Grandeur; whatever else be my Lord's pleasure.' I just clutched my heart at this answer. Now I cannot hold myself. Since he has done his duty, I too shall do mine! (Time 11.40 A.M.) I have transferred. What can I do! If I had not done this of my own accord, just this would have come automatically. This is the secret (thing). It was not proper to restrain myself."

Revered Master (addressing M1):

"Here, his (Ram Chandra) worth is of no avail. Let someone go and see in the Higher World. Or, whosoever' may possess open eyes, may witness. It is all just the special feature of the times!"

Revered Master's dictation later (Time 9.10 P.M.):

"I remained fully occupied for the whole time, today. I visited all the Ashrams of Swami Vivekananda Ji (Shri Ram Krishna Mission) established in India; and went to other countries as well.

The Ashram people are educated and there are very learned persons. I found the organization very good. All people were found to be depending on just one person. This thing is worthy of taking a lesson from, for you as well. In my fold also all people, whoever, shall remain subservient to just one person. To obey his orders will be duty to them. Every person who will be the head in my line of succession will have the status and position of president, and all shall have their dealings with him. It is certain that things (knowledge and directives) will remain coming down directly to him; and these alone will be orders for others. Shahjahanpur will be the Headquarter. This Centre will not get shifted, so long as I do not order (for something else). Other places will be designated as Mutts (temples - a special term used by Swami Vivekananda Ji for various centres of the Shri Ram Krishna Mission, including Belur Mutt at Calcutta - the Headquarters). Do you know why I have established Shahjahanpur as centre (Headquarters)? The reason for this is that the place, where, by God's Grace, such a marvellous personality (yours) comes up as would not be expected to be created in future, that very place should form the starting point."

27-4-1945

Revered Master (Time 9.00 P.M.) addressing M1 and R2 etc.:

"Dear Ram Chandra has touched the extreme point with regard to refinement of conduct. See how subtle it is. And it is just a small point. When he started cleaning of you people, he pulled out the dirt (grossness), whatever or not, to his side, instead of pushing it through the back: he was considerate that I was sitting there (behind you people)."

Revered Master addressing M1:

"He (Ram Chandra) has imparted motion to Zaat (Ultimate Being) this time. Dear M1, except Hindu Seers (Rishis) nobody happened to be capable of taking work from Zaat as yet. I should rather have said that even Hindu Seers did not use their brains like this."

29 - 4 - 1945

Revered Master (Time: 6.45 P.M.):

"What a matter of happiness! May God bless dear Ram Chandra's understanding! Such points are striking his comprehension, as are very much needed with a view to the present time. Thus far elders used to transmit to the heart (Qalba); and then would take up the points of Organic (Sughra = Pinda), Cosmic (Kubra = Brahmanda) and beyond that, returning at the end (of training) to the points below the heart, specially below the navel. In view of the changed times, it is needed to take up these points also simultaneously. He (Ram Chandra) has very often taken up these lower (material; gross) points/plexuses for cleaning himself. Now from today onwards, I instruct that after cleaning of the heart- plexus, these lower (material) plexuses be taken up and cleansed thoroughly, but not brought to the state of awakening. After cleaning these (lower plexuses) the organic region be cleansed. Thereafter training be kept continued from the heart onwards again, as the method already laid down traditionally. In view of the times, it has really become necessary to take up these (lower = Asfal) plexuses first so that restlessness be brought to the proper course. I Instruct only dear Ram Chandra not to apply force unduly and unintentionally on these points. The reason for such instruction is that if he (Ram Chandra) happens to do that (apply force on these points), miraculous power will immediately come to awakening; and in that event, there will be the danger of turning away from God (developing an atheistic tendency). This precaution must be observed by almost everyone. Dear M1, such things will be coming to light through him (Ram Chandra), that the world will be wonder-struck after his physical dissolution. Who can be able to appreciate him in his life-time? On the face of it, there are only a handful of bones (in him), but I have stuffed everything therein! From today onwards, just this method discovered by Ram Chandra will be in vogue."

3 -5-1945

Revered Master addressing M1:

"It is very difficult to follow the transmission of an elder sage (Master) when he has got liberated. Such a mind will never come into being now. Dear Ram Chandra just now experienced and picked up the method of transmission which liberated souls adopt. This method is extremely difficult - that somebody even in

embodied form may be able to transmit exactly as if one were liberated from physical limitations. It is quite obvious that I have got merged in him (Ram Chandra); and his every transmission happens to be just my own transmission. This method, which he has picked up just now, and transmitting by way of that method, however, means as if he himself having become liberated is transmitting, or else I myself am transmitting as from my present state."

4-5-1945

Revered Master:

"Delhi has got fully enlightened. Now take up the whole of North India, leaving Rajputana (Rajasthan) to be taken up later."

5-5-1945

Revered Master addressing M1:

"This is a transmission of an entirely new variety (technique) that has struck his thought. This technique consists of orienting one's lost sensualities on the sensualities of the other one to whom transmission is directed. However, before applying this new technique, sensualities of the person to whom transmission is to be directed have to be got cleansed. Give currency to this method; and dear Ram Chandra is to be treated as the inventor of it."

9-5-1945

Revered Master addressing M1:

"It is a matter of very great regret that nobody is coming up for training and learning to the extent of his (Ram Chandra) inventions! Who except myself is there to appreciate his worth; and neither does anybody except me, has the intellectual capacity to comprehend adequately the subtleness and benefits issuing through him! When he (Ram Chandra) was himself praising the sensitivity of M2, a thought arose in him as to why this thing (fine sensitivity) may not be developed in everybody. As such Nature helped him; and the method just came down to his comprehension. That (method) is as described here. When increasing the sensitivity of somebody is desired, first of all a firm thought is to be fixed up that a glimmering star of imperience

(sensitivity) gets entrenched in that person's heart, and its brightness of sensitivity be enhanced by the stroke of one's own will, so that the state of the star would appear to be brilliant. That brilliance may then be lightly spread over the heart of the person concerned, all around; and the connection of that star be established with the brain. For a few days this should be cared for off and on, so that it would acquire a permanent shape. If it (sensitivity) is intended to be sharpened more, the firm thought of the sun rather than the star be fixed upon. I, however, do not permit this except in a very special circumstance, which is hard to be estimated except by the person whose connection with me or elder sages of yore has got established so deeply that light and permission in this regard be obtained. This thing (condition) is available only in the incarnate beings: as such it is, in general, strictly prohibited. The thought of the moon should never be fixed upon: that reduces warmth and produces dullness (grossness). Much precaution and a correct estimate are needed in fixing upon the thought of the sun as well. I strictly prohibit the use of any of these practices, unless permission be obtained from me. For this practice (I mean the one concerning the star), the essential special requirement is that sensualities of the person applying this practice should have come to the sleeping state; and the person most suited in this context will be the one who has acquired permanence of this state, and in whose case sensualities be found absent even when thought of, and do not come up to experience in any way. For the rest, very special people who may be able to bring their sensualities to the sleeping state for whatever period of time, may practise this method on others only during that period of time. Even then, I forbid use of this method."

10-5-1945

Revered Master addressing M1:

"Dear Ram Chandra has achieved a marvel this time. Alter the system of transmission totally and instruct your disciples, engaged in this work, that transmission will now be imparted like through this new technique. A principle had been reverberating in his (Ram Chandra) thought for quite some time. It was that a sort of quiet-disturbing 'stir' or preferably 'upsetting desire' (Sanskrit word 'Kshobha') arose in the Ultimate Being at the time of the

creation of the universe; and that disequilibrium- causing desire adopted various shapes. It had and has the power of the Ultimate Being at its back; and its portion, for the most part, manifested in the form of 'mind' (Sanskrit word 'Manas') in man. The Ultimate Being started running after it, as a result of which various forms came to be manifested. This is a quite novel subject that descended or took birth through his brain. Nobody can deny its being correct. Thus, the state which exists in every living spiritual being, happens to be found in man in a superior form with special glamour added to it. The unbalancing stir caused by the original desire, which descended in the form of a current in man, and which I have designated mind (manas), is present in man; and the same state lies at its back also, which lay at the back of the basic unbalancing stir or movement (Kshobha). This original disbalancing stir or Kshobha, which is in the form of mind in man having acquired much sharpness in the case of man, the power of the stirless balanced state, lying at the back lost prominence; and appeared to have become dim. As such, when transmission is started, first of all that state (of unbalancing original desire) is to be cleansed, viz. the basic stir, which is manifest as mind, so that its particles that are disproportionate may lose or at least reduce their unbalancing effect. Then, that power of the Ultimate Being, which is providing force to the original stir, be brought up to thought through one's spiritual force, and directed in the direction of the cover-up thing (over human existence), i.e. mind. This practice is to be repeated on every plexus. This will result in the power of the Ultimate Being, which lies at the back of the original stir, automatically remain casting its reflection; and as such whatever progress will ensue, will be perfect and permanent. The subtleties of this practice will come to comprehension when transmission through this method will be commenced."

11-5-1945

Revered Master:

"Dear Ram Chandra had sometime referred to his brother M1, that in case several rounds be administered to something subtle, it acquires solidity. Such rounds have persisted for millions of years in the current, resulting from the push received from the Ultimate Being. The atoms have remained revolving into one

another and went round and round (continuously), to form together into huge, piled-up forces; and the power lying in between (those piled-up atoms) came to be designated as gods (dedicated supporters) of those powers. What I mean is that the atoms in the course of revolving, drawing the atoms of their own kind, developed themselves in due course to big forces. Just this state has persisted continually for long periods of time; and these have acquired the shapes of different globes or round objects. Revolving did not stop even then, so long as they had not assumed such shapes as were needed in accordance with the existing material. Revolving and breaking up is even now continuing, and will remain almost upto the limit of annihilation/dissolution. Man by himself is a wide-spread region, containing all these things as subtle (constituents). As such elder saints have designated man as a kneaded compound [organism (Pinda) shaped after the cosmos (Brahmanda)]. In man, the solidity of revolving atoms is also present; and the state of the Ultimate Being in perfect form can be said to lie at its back. Now, what happens at the time of annihilation/dissolution (Pralaya): the solidity (of atoms or their piled-up compounds) starts getting eradicated. That is to say, the power generated through revolving of atoms automatically coming to an end, is to be taken as the start and conclusion of annihilation/dissolution.

"Now the method of transmission, noted down yesterday is further elucidated, in view of the principle of Nature. It consists in orienting the Ultimate Being present in perfect form towards those atoms which have acquired solidity through the continuous movement of revolving. The shape of the atoms, however, is to be retained, and not totally eradicated. Here is a warning: this kind of transmission is not to be administered in quick succession; and neither do every Tom and Dick deserve it. I am designating this method (of transmission) as 'the sole essence' (Sar Tattva)."

Revered Master:

This subject dictated above by dear Ram Chandra, is the basis of the method that had been reverberating in his brain for quite some time. He was not finding adequate words to express it; and even now it has not been expressed properly. It needs correction, which I shall do some time."

12-5 1945

Revered Master:

"Complete the science which you have started; and then proceed ahead. If someone is able to merge himself in the state, present at the back of the quiet-disturbing desire of the Ultimate Being, and then transmit, the effect will be terrific. However, this method cannot be applied by everybody. (Pause) He (Ram Chandra) just now effected more improvement in this method, viz. that first of all the darkness of the atoms involved in that disquietening desire, present in man, be snatched off; and then the brightness, which may also be designated as a kind of matter, be drawn away, but keeping the shape of the structure intact all along. The third stage, which is still better, and needs to be mentioned, just struck his (Ram Chandra) thought. That consists in removing even the effect of brightness (contained for quite a long period in the atoms), which they (atoms) have consequently absorbed. Now Purity is there, at which point sages and seers are unable to arrive. Even after practising worship and prayer for ages, that point still remains far off. Through these methods the aspirant finds his/her first step reaching at the very spot which remains so difficult to arrive at. What has been praised in the hymns of the Vedas and other scriptures, and has been described as worthy of being transcended, gets clear (attainable) even in the very first transmission. What is that point? The most-blessed Sufi saints under Islam, have designated it as the region of Purity or Piety (Aalam-e-Qudsa); and in our own (Hindu) scriptures this is known as the undifferentiated state (Avyakta Cati) or the condition devoid of phenomenal illusiveness (Maya-rahit Dasha). If these methods are applied, the knots of Maya start to be shattered just to begin with. (Pause) This method never struck the thought of anybody thus far. This has made all difficulties easily melt away; and the trainer is saved a lot of labour. If this method is adopted for continuous practice, the condition that was available to my fortune, can be easily attained.

Special Instruction:

Transmission of the third stage should be administered much later. There is general permission for the first; and for the second (permission is granted) only to special ones.

Order The mind these days is becoming very restless; and it is being provided with a climate accordingly. As such the modulations (Vrittis) of consciousness (Chitta), i.e. mental tendencies fail to acquire peace. I, therefore, order that those among my progeny, who are capable, should first of all exercise control just over these (Chitta-Vrittis). In general, for those, devoid of proper understanding as to how much force is to be applied at which points or what practices are to be adopted through these methods, I will require them to take up the sublimity of the heart only; but remain cleaning every point, as hitherto (usual).”

Revered Master's dictation continued, directed to M1 and R2:

"He (Ram Chandra) has effected one more invention in this method. This invention has no connection with training; but is concerned with part of his duty. He has adopted this method in order to impart glitter to his duty; and has sometimes applied even its deformed state. The power of the Ultimate Being is emanating all around; and is present in the atoms which have been designated by way of indication (of that quality) as Kshobha (stirring desire). This method is concerned with how to change the existing condition of the world and make it possible to bring it up to that state, which was there at the origin, or a little before that. The power of the Ultimate Being should be brought up, and its effect should be drawn towards that, which can be designated as 'external covering' for the sake of understanding, and which I have repeatedly called the state of Kshobha, but the form of this disturbed condition should be allowed to remain. The best method, which stands superior even to the above- mentioned technique, and has still been invented, consists in merging oneself in that big force, power of the Ultimate Being, and take up the thought of whatever special state or change is to be introduced, so that it pervades the entire power, and then continue pushing it with force to bring about annihilation of the effect of the atoms, until these get fully imbued with the effect of the required special state or

change. This method is to be practised only by the person, who is appointed for this duty. (Pause) Beyond this, he (Ram Chandra) has conceived even the method as to how the state of Dissolution (Doom or Pralaya or Qayaamat) may be brought about. This method shall reside only in his (Ram Chandra) breast: I do not like to dictate note (about that)."

15-5-1945

Revered Master:

"After long experience, I have come to this realization, that if just one person has been structured perfectly full, one has, so to say, repayed the debt of one's Master. Just this has happened in my case. It is another matter that through His Grace fine persons like R2, K2, M1 came up to be structured. In fact, I could prepare only one (person) in my entire life-time. But, alas, nobody could appreciate. The tendency of the times has come to be such that glamour happens to please people in general; and even special people prefer it: nobody appreciates something drab and dry (real spirituality).

Now I come to my real point. Dear Ram Chandra came up to become the purpose of my life, to the extent that the eyes of elder sages automatically started being turned to and fixed upon him. I did not leave anything wanting in him, which is coming to the result that harder than the hardest knots, which are baffling to everybody else, are getting resolved through him. For a number of days, a thought was reverberating in his heart, as to find some method to reduce the excess activity of mind rising above moderation. Such a method has now struck his mind; and on observation I have found it to be correct.

"The method:

The condition of mind remains unduly restless in the heart. Mind be taken to be part and parcel of the Zaat (Ultimate Being) in such a manner that the two, viz. mind and Zaat, appear, so to say, as of identical hue. By 'hue' I do not mean red, yellow, black, etc., but that Zaat being light, as It has been described, mind too remains a like part of that same Zaat. The face of mind in that identical form be turned towards Zaat in

the way that, so to say, it gets absorbed (attentive) into just the same Zaat. The mind's face be rather turned away from outside and drawn towards That Same; and this transmission be retained during the whole fitting administered to some aspirant. This is to remove all the defects of the mind.

"Second method:

All points and plexuses be taken up one by one; and the condition, existing therein, be cleansed and then identified with that condition of Zaat, so that Zaat appears to have risen in that shape or condition i.e. state of Zaat Itself. Then, as I have already mentioned in the first method, that identical state be drawn towards, i.e., merged in That Same (Zaat).

"What a fine science it happens to be that when a small thing is pressed by a bigger thing from all sides, or is dipped into it, the bigger thing circumscribes it. If for a long time a small thing is pressed from all sides by the bigger thing, of which it is part and parcel in a deformed condition, the two things are bound to merge together into one and the same unit. When all chakras (plexuses) have been crossed through this (new) method, i.e. all chakras are brought up to have identity with the Ultimate Being, then that whole thing (state) is to be drowned in the Zaat. This practice on the disciple should be continued for some time, which will result in (the development of) such a condition as may be difficult to be the fortune of quite many good and fine people, and can not be arrived at through years and years of one's own hard practice. Restlessness of mind would have come to an end just through this first method. This method is very difficult, and cannot be practised by everybody. One whom God grants affinity; may perform it I am telling something secret for being noted down: just this is the method to achieve perfect merging with God (Fana-fillah)."

17-5-1945

Revered Master's dictation addressed to M1:

The steps of dear Ram Chandra, even in this state, are moving ahead day by day. This ocean is so limitless that it has to

be designated as unfathomable. Dear M1, I did not find such a heart (as that of Ram Chandra) anywhere, which would capture me to this extent. People will be astonished, and may even be critical about me: the bank less ocean, in which I had been advancing rapidly with full force, I have now got transferred to him. Now I am just where I am. I have given him the expertness also to do likewise with whomever he may so desire."

Revered Master:

"I possessed an intense upsurge of desire to structure everybody like myself, and impart (to everyone) with a perfectly open heart, ' whatever I had in me. But alas, I could not find someone really keen to learn; and it is just like that even now. Nobody developed his inward prowess to the extent that my influence would start raining on him like a torrent. The reality in fact was that I loved everybody more than myself. I have recently structured such tremendous personalities as M1, R2 and K2; but to tell the truth, none of them could come up to be showered upon with divine delicacies by me. Nobody had real appreciation for it; and hence many stages of mergence have still remained uncovered. What I mean to say is that many stages yet remain to be crossed in order to reach me. What I have just hinted at is so easy that there can be nothing easier. A mountain lies hidden behind a broomstick. Intense longing alone remains needed.

Method: One should penetrate into oneself as much as possible. One should recognize one's own defects; and go on dropping these out of oneself one by one. Wherever difficulty be encountered, Master's help should be called for."

19-5 -1945

Revered Master:

"Just now Radha Ji had accompanied Reverend Lord Krishna; and she transmitted to you."

22-5-1945

Revered Master:

"He (Ram Chandra) had invented a method for spiritual training, which would certainly have got noted earlier somewhere.

Briefly it is this When one is to be taken up from the organic region to the cosmic, Surat (flow of remembrance of togetherness) be created in the cosmic region (Kubra) itself, instead of drawing it up from the organic to the cosmic region; and the two processes of Surat be allowed to develop perfection side by side, and so on and on. Now the method that was applied to I2 just now is of a peculiar sort. It was this. One end of thought (Surat) was kept in the organic region; and the other end was oriented towards the cosmic region. From the end that was kept oriented to the organic region, currents were directed to the five-fold sublimities of the organic region. The purpose was to let the organic region come up to perfection as well as to have the cosmic region opened up; and to bring strength to both regions side by side. This very method can be advanced to the points and regions further ahead of these regions. This is an unparalleled method, that has come up into his (Ram Chandra) thought. Fortunate are those persons who are able to derive benefit from him. I tell this again that this time is difficult to be here again; nor is Nature to wave up to this extent now. He will go after unravelling all the knots of this system. The system is getting renovated; and people have no awareness of it."

24-5- 1945

Revered Master

"The cosmic region happens to be I2's arena for stroll now. I permit him to impart the method, that he is following, to other new persons, who may like to learn it. If the occasion to transmit may arise, he should have the thought that instead of him (I2), I myself am sitting and transmitting. This has been introduced at this time by way of administrative arrangement. While taking up a new case, it is to be supposed that I myself am transmitting and the heart of the new aspirant is getting cleansed. The new person should be given individual sittings for two to three days. Thereafter he may be taken up together with the group, and the same thought of transmission from myself can be applied to all at the same time. In case he (I2) starts feeling dirt or grossness in himself, he should sit alone with the supposition that transmission is showering on him and his grossness is cleansed from the back side in the form of vapour or smoke."

27-5- 1945

Revered Master:

"The practice of inviting Divine Grace, hitherto prevalent, be stopped forthwith. Use Gayatri and other (Vedic) incantations for bringing blessedness (moral credit = virtuosity) to people."

29-5-1945

Revered Master:

The method tested on M1 just now is very good. There are advantages and benefits in it all around. This can be used even for the treatment of diseases. Both physical and spiritual diseases can be cured through the application of this method. The method is like this. The power, having its connection to the Real Storehouse of Power, remains present in the human mind. That power taken as a structured piece of (divine) light, be brought down and passed through hand, foot, plexus and all parts, and taken out. Then the other side of the body be treated in the same way, and so on. One part of divine light be supposed to come down from the uppermost part of the brain and moving slowly, passing through the various parts of the body, cleaning them one by one. In the end it be thought of as pushed out of the body together with the dirt and grossness, etc. If some disease be present in some organ, that (divine) light be passed through that organ and supposed firmly to have gone out of the body, carrying that illness with it. Tell this (method) to everybody.

'This method can be used on another person by a practicant, in case that (the other person happens to be devoid of strength to apply the method himself. The practicant in such a case may use the divine light of his own mind from a little higher stage, making it lightly touch the person concerned at (the highest point of his brain; and then make it crawl slowly the various parts of that other person's body downwards as described above, pushing it out of the lowest extremities of the body together with dirt and grossness etc., cleaned out of the various organs and parts and plexuses etc. It should be remembered that in case of this method being used by the practicant on some other person the light from only a little

higher point and not from the highest point of the practican't reach or status be brought into light touch with the concerned person's highest point of the brain. This is to be treated as a strict warning. This modified method (for use by practican't on another prison) as a whole is that the light of one's own mind from a little higher stage be lightly touched nominally at just above the highest point of the concerned person's brain to crawl downwards slowly. There is no need for application any further.

"Your life will be spent doing just such work (of spiritual research). Many knots are there yet to be unravelled. Nature is getting naked before you. This status could not be the fortune of the greater than the great. If it acquires a physical form, its relationship will come to be as it happened to be with me in my physical existence. I do not like to make it more explicit."

30 - 5 - 1945

Revered Master's dictation addressed to H4:

"When you go to J,, tell M10 that whatever was written to him in reply to his letter addressed to dear Ram Chandra, is still awaited. His spiritual condition is now nil. Dear Ram Chandra has snatched off his spiritual condition totally. Even if he had not done this, it would have occurred automatically, because connections have got snapped off."

The dictation continued addressed to me:

"Tell H4 on my behalf that he may examine his brother (Ram Chandra) in every possible way. His (H4) connection to the source is also not there: I no doubt am still maintaining it."

During the night, some amulets for material purposes were mentioned by Revered Master: "If somebody be suffering from insomnia or mental perturbation or restlessness due to illness or in case of nightmares or hysterical weeping of a child without known cause or when one may be facing difficulties in life or tightness of circumstances due to poverty or even unemployment, an amulet can be given in the name of dear Ram Chandra. If protection of somebody on the battle front be needed, or protection of a foetus in the womb of a mother be required or even in case of post-natal diseases causing death of an infant, an amulet be

issued in the name of Reverend Lord Krishna. In case of mother suffering from repeated abortions, the amulet can be worn by the expectant mother during the period of pregnancy around her neck; and the same amulet may be put around the neck of the neonate child, after birth.

"Preference is to be given to Hindi words (in the amulets). One precaution in case of amulets is to be observed, viz. the amulets should not be allowed to get crushed under feet. Preferably the amulets should be surrendered to the current of some river-stream. (Pause) In case of infectious diseases I may be remembered; but it should be kept in mind that my name shall go together with that of Swami Vivekananda Ji.

"Every amulet is to be preceded by the letter 'AUM'. These amulets will be possible to be issued only by such persons whom I permit, or whom somebody (properly authorized) would permit through me. (Pause) All these amulets are to be made public so that people may remain deriving due benefit. By 'made public' I mean that these are to be told to only good and God-worshipping people. This too is an essential condition in this regard."

Revered Master:

Thus far there was materiality. Beyond this lies the sphere of spirituality. The initial spiritual method and the more developed method, which is for use by such practicers whose points below the cosmic region have almost all got fully awakened. (These two methods are already described on 29-5- 1945).

31-5 - 1945

Revered Master:

"Bravo at this sharp comprehension! As soon as something has been uttered, the invention is there. How much expression may I give to my joy and this gift from the Divine! Regret for those who do not get oriented to him (Ram Chandra).

"There is a point where Maya (phenomenal reality - female principle - Nature), and Purusha (inactive intelligence - male principle) coalesce. This is the final stage of Maya (or Nature) and the starting point of the power of Purusha (or God). On the

coalition of these two (principles) a forceful power is created, which can also be called the state of the whirlpool due to the force being in it. At the time of extreme weakness, therefore, one's thought is to be brought into touch with that force in the form of a whirlpool; and the way for its arrival into one's body may be opened. While bringing the thought up in touch with the force, the state of the whirlpool is to be comprehended as stationary, so that the reverberation may not get into one's system. However, this practice is not for the use of everybody. Only those can practise it, who may have reached upto this point and gone beyond Prakriti (Nature or Maya). Some benefit may be derived, anyway, by everyone. The person having arrived in the region of piety (Qudsa) shall be able to practise it very well. One or two minutes only are to be devoted to this practice. I felt very happy at dear Ram Chandra's flight of imagination. I have kept nothing that I did not bestow on him: if something had remained, I would not have hesitated to yield it to him."

Revered Master:

"Another invention! The disease of idleness is increasing in our fold; and no solution thereof has been worked out. Just now the thought that this matter should also be solved, occurred to the mind of dear Ram Chandra. As such God helped him; and a beneficial method came to be invented.

The method:

Just now I spoke of the state of the whirlpool, where Maya and Purusha meet. Just a little below that point the thought is to be firmly fixed that the condition of that place is pervading one's body and idleness is evaporating (thereby). This requires hard work. The foregoing invention needs only one or two minutes. This method can be used by everybody. One who does not have approach upto this region may have the thought that his/her thought being in touch with that place is attracting the currents and power thereof in the body. Just this is the method. The attempt should be to ward off idleness; and if it comes, this method can be applied. In case those who have developed this disease, viz. if their idleness

(gloominess) does not decrease, they may practise this method continuously. There is permission for everybody to practise it.

The trends of time to some extent, and the struggle for livelihood to some other extent, have come to such a pass as to render it hard to get clear of the effect of these factors. Man, however, is one who does not fall a prey to these. Whoever has been acquainted to the circumstances of my life, may form an estimate of the extent to which I always remained happy. The face permanently indicated (absorption into) blissfulness. Troubles falling to my lot were not less in comparison to anybody. The crux of the matter was that I had developed in myself the habit of being happy and contented under all circumstances, whatever, taking every trouble to be from God for some good, and thus remaining subservient to His Will. A gift from the Beloved should not cause resentment: that is not in accord with the God of Love. Is not the anecdote of Mira Bai, as quoted by me elsewhere earlier, worth exemplary instance: She had drunk lethal poison simply on being told by the other person that it was a benediction or gift from her Beloved Reverend Lord Krishna."

Revered Master's dictation in reply to a question from M1:

"Nobody is an exception to the code of Friendship, whether someone is a close relative or a dear one (otherwise). Friendship is the name for the relationship of Love. If viewed closely, enmity is also a sort of relationship. It can also resolve one's problem of life provided that one is able to carry on Its proper code to the full extent."

5-6-1945

Revered Master:

"I warn dear Ram Chandra that he shall not concentrate on thought of an earthquake in future."

7-6-1945

Revered Master:

"One thing is generally beyond comprehension of anybody: As soon as Ram Chandra sits for Satsang (group-transmission), the

flow of Grace from the Ultimate Being in the form of an encircling spiral is immediately started. This thing has started yesterday. The same condition is there today also: the flow of Grace is continuing. (Time: 9.35 P.M.) Can anybody make a claim to (the effect of) this State? Not at all! (Pause) At k.. total annihilation has started."

Revered Master:

"Arrival of gods for this Grace has started."

8-6-1945

Revered Master:

"This method consists in taking the subtle body of the other person (the aspirant) in one's thought; and let the particles of the body (of the aspirant) remain intact. By taking in thought, I mean transmitting (to the aspirant), whatever moral characteristics the trainer requires to be in the aspirant, be entered into him. This, however, is not to be attempted to accomplish in the very first sitting: it should be done on receiving light for doing it, from within."

Revered Master:

"M1 may realize my position now. What more may I say! I had acquired the form of Lord Krishna (Krishna-roop) in life. More I do not want to say. It will be disrespect."

10-6-1945

Revered Master:

"All the inventions, effected thus far, have been praiseworthy; but my heart has leapt up to know about the invention, brought about just now. There remains no knot that may not be unravelled thereby. Look here M1, this is a tremendous invention; but alas! Whom are these methods to be applied to. Anyway, let us be content with things as they are! "The method is like this: The connection of the person, to whom the best and unparalleled training be intended, should be established with one's own heart; and that connection as included in one's own connection of thought, be given a dive in the Real Storehouse (Asal Bhandar). If a higher condition be intended to be brought up, one's

own connection that is established with that person, be drawn upon one's own heart; and the connection of that person be provided with a foothold there. Thus, the spring of the Real Grace, whose connection has been brought upto there, will remain oozing up and the benefit of Real Grace will remain constantly available. Dear Ram Chandra, you try to improve this method even more."

Revered Master:

"He (Ram Chandra) has improved upon the method; and it is just a little thing, viz. the connection be established where the Master's state be prevailing. Here, Master does not mean I but the person who is using this method. I myself was aware of this thing; and I have used this method in the case of dear Ram Chandra. Then, he had written to me in his diary that he felt the current of Master coming on his heart all the twenty-four hours. Applying this last extreme method is generally to be prohibited, unless the person using this method has tallied his thought with me. (Pause) He has effected more improvement, viz. in case of some plexus being Intended to be awakened or filled with Grace, the current of one's own thought together with the current of the thought of the person on whom the method is to be applied, be brought upto the particular plexus; and then leaving him there, one's own thought be brought back from there.

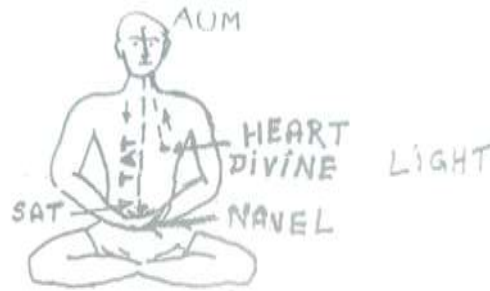
We were talking among ourselves about the need for having some practice prescribed for new-comers to our fold (of Yogic Sadhana).

Revered Master dictated:

"I too wanted that they be told to do some practice. As such, the best practice emerged from the brain of dear Ram Chandra. However, much praise be showered on him, it will (still) remain Insufficient. These things will remain memorable in the world; and just possible, people may remember me also in that regard. I am instructing you, M2, that recurrence of such a time is very difficult. Take as much advantage out of this time, as you like (and wish). I have structured several personalities.

"The method (for general practice by beginners):

A firm supposition of Divine light in the heart is to be formed; and a part of that light is to be drawn up to the uppermost point of the brain (generally called Brahma Randhra) and 'AUM' is to be uttered on reaching that point. Then that part of Divine light be (supposed as) drawn downwards, uttering 'TAT' on the way; and finally that light is to be supposed to give a jolt at the point of the navel, while uttering 'SAT'. This is the first stage of (the practice of the llimc cornered repetition of the sacred incantation 'AUM TAT SAT').



The second stage of this practice consists in reducing the supposed Divine light in the heart to the size of a little less than three-fourths of a pie (the smallest Indian coin about half centimetre in diameter at the time - 1945 A.D.); and then the process of drawing up and bringing down that light, while uttering the words of the incantation at different stages as described above, is to be repeated. Then comes its third stage, which if performed methodically, can hardly be tolerated by even the best among good practicers. This stage of the practice consists in negating the reduced Divine light to the extent of leaving only an idea of the light; and then drawing it up and bringing it down as in earlier stages. And finally, listen about the fourth stage. Even the mere thought of Divine light adopted for supposition and practice at the third stage is to be withered away; and then whatever remains is to be drawn up and brought down in the same way (as done in earlier stages). Leave aside taking up this in thought (and supposition), even its proper comprehension is difficult. And whoever may have come up to this stage, why should he/she do it at all! Experimentation (of course) may be another condition (or requirement)."

11 -6-1945

Revered Master:

"My life was spent imparting training; and the same is the case even now. It is another matter that somebody may not be oriented to me; but I never shirked following (the course of my obligations). Just now, a prescription has come to me, viz. if an aspirant is able to renounce passion without residue, there remains nothing more to do. On observing dear Ram Chandra a lot minutely, I have found this thing in him at its zenith. Now, how to imitate this so that it would turn out to be real at last. The method is to go on silencing one's inner tendencies. M2 may observe his condition. He (Ram Chandra) has transmitted just his (silencing of inner tendencies) to him (M2) for the whole night. It is a very great gift. However, M2's condition is in the dormant state: the taste of it will take a lot of time to awaken. To tell the truth, dear M2, he (Ram Chandra) has completed work on you. Habituation remains; and it will be coming up in due course."

12-6-1945

Revered Master:

"The problem concerning the organization had been reverberating in the mind for quite a long time. Much praise is to be showered on his (Ram Chandra) brain, that he grasped the principle, keeping which into view his discovery has come into effect. In a family, I mean of educated and cultured people, it is possible that there may occur some minor clash (of opinion and understanding), but in the end, when occasion demands, all are united, because they remain knit together in an underlying blood-relationship, fust this has to be the case here. Some difference of opinion may arise in between people (here), which is necessary for arriving at the correct conclusion, but all have to get united in the end. A kind of current of transmission different from every other transmission, should run through everyone; and that should be made part of the character Now what is that thing? This can be communicated in a practical way only."

Revered Master continued:

"Numerous inventions have come to be made; and the chain is still continuing. Alas, however, that nobody puts them to practice, nor does anybody try to remove spiritual and moral disease. What use of these inventions be made, if they are not put to practice. The prescription for idle gloominess (for example) if tried by somebody, was done merely by way of performance of duty. A serious attempt was never made. If in this matter the example of dear Ram Chandra ha quoted or he be blamed, it will not be proper, because he remains drawn up (tense) together with all powers. This is necessarily to affect his body and face. I do not want him to remain so much drawn up, and very often I have to bring him down as well. The cause of his idle gloominess is this being drawn up; but here in case of others, this condition has not developed. As such it is essential for them to adopt this practice. (Pause) Just see, he has Invented another method for removing idle gloominess, which is easiest and can be practised by everybody. It is as follows: Transmission is to be imparted to one's own face through the special power lying behind everyone's back. The eyes should be kept guarded; and the thought is to be taken that the power (concerned) is bringing up blissfulness on the face. This will bring benefit.

"One thing I am telling everybody, rather at the beat of a drum, that every aspirant should try to take care of (and improve upon) one's moral condition from the very outset. One should not utter something unbearable to others, nor should anything be done that may happen to be disliked by others. Keeping both these carefully (in mind) one should get yoked to improvement of conduct (and character). These are initial principles, which people do not keep into consideration. I have not been enamoured of spirituality to such extent as of character. Nobody tries to silence his inner tendencies. If someone is able to carve out his approach upto the status of the very stationary Base, but is still retaining moral weaknesses, I take it that the real Essence has not yet been attained. Perfect character is there when everything existing in man comes to moderation and adopts that same condition. If this too is brought to annulment, there can be nothing to compare with it. This certainly comes to one's lot with difficulty; but that does

not mean taking no courage at all. These things can be created through transmission also."

13-6-1945

Revered Master, addressing M1:

"Inwardly I felt forced to issue a strict order to dear Ram Chandra to bring the condition of the cosmic region (Kubra) to perfection in the case of M2 in one minute just now. As such the same is done. May God bless him. M2 should remain sending his diary every month."

Revered Master, addressing M1:

"None of my secrets are concealed from him (Ram Chandra). Just now I had called him aside to set his digestive system right to some extent. What I had done to him, came to his comprehension. What I had done is not possible to describe in words."

Revered Master:

"The real way is the 'easy way'/ (Sahaj Marga). The nomenclature somehow does not appear quite good to pronounce."

14-6 - 1945

Revered Master:

"In order to control mental pressure (of dear Ram Chandra), I have adopted the device that whatever jobs are allotted to him, may remain being completed automatically. This, however, will not mean that he cannot take them up one by one."

15-6-1945

Revered Master:

"M2 be instructed not to indulge in any sort of puja (meditation or any other ritualistic worship) for three months; and instead, remain writing (communicating to dear Ram Chandra) his conditions at quick intervals."

17-6-1945

Revered Master (Time: 10 A.M.):

"I have sharpened M1 more. His power is enhanced, so that on whomsoever he comes in excitement, there will be immediate effect of that excitement on that person. I have to maintain his (M1) pleasure: he may go on acquiring powers.

"The region of the stroll of I2 is the para-cosmic region (Ulia); and this has been done just now. The need is coming up to be such as (may require him) to be quickly perfected."

Revered Master:

"This is a Divine Command. It had commenced about three days back, when I had started taking work (from you) automatically. The pace of the work that started very rapidly, had to be slowed down because it was affecting your heart, and was burdensome due to your weakness."

19-6-1945

Revered Master

"Does anybody have the courage to be prepared to undertake such a hard course of spiritual training? The necessary conditions are that for twenty-five years celibacy is to be observed strictly and an attempt to develop a strong body is to be made. Then one should lead a life as a householder. After begetting children, the relationship of husband and wife is to be maintained for some time in accordance with the standard scriptural injunctions. The (spiritual) practices and meditation etc. should also be continued during this period, but health (physical and mental) should remain a matter of care and concern at each step. Upto the age of forty years, maximum effort is to be devoted to becoming an adept in the science/discipline of Divine Presence. At the outset of the forty first year, life as a householder is to be renounced, and one should start living at the place of the guide (Guru) and no other relationship except this is to be retained. Now the training which dear Ram Chandra has discovered and thought about, is to start. That consists in getting oriented to every plexus with one's full

force in such a way that each particle is being stuffed with full power of the Ultimate Being. This will take quite a long time. Every particle will have to be dealt with separately one by one, and requires to be cleansed totally. Every plexus should be dealt with just in this way, one by one. When all the plexuses of the organic region are cleansed and set right, one should take up the plexuses of the cosmic region. Then one is to arrive in the para-cosmic legion, and the points thereof are also to be dealt with in the same manner. After completing the work upto here, every particle of one's body should be taken up and the same amount of labour be devoted to them. When all particles of the body have been cleansed, a flow or tendency be brought up in them, so that they appear imbued in the same current or tendency from top to toe. When this is completed, the whole State be absorbed in the Ultimate Base. I understand that if this method be adopted in life, perhaps only one person will be possible to structure in a whole life; but a person thus prepared will have no example to match with.

"Now, hear about my method. I had perfected dear Ram Chandra during my lifetime; but I did not employ the labour like I have narrated alxive. Then, after having brought him up to the superb state, and after I had given up my body, I got oriented in this direction and went on with my work continually; and that remained coming up effectively. Later when need Stole, and the rush of work started pouring (on dear Ram Chandra), and his tour of South India was ordained, I had then adopted this method with him, viz. I started passing myself through his each and every particle so that perfection was totally achieved. When I had completed this job, then I created that same condition, as narrated earlier, from A to Z in three hours. I have somewhere already given a hint concerning this earlier also, but I have made it explicit just today. This work can be done well only after one's life-time. Proper control of rules concerning celibacy etc. can be effectively achieved only after one's life-time, because the most precious part of life will be consumed by just these (regulation of celibacy etc.). This entire job can be possible to complete in one stroke also; but the compatibility (needed for this) can seldom be found in anybody. If observed closely, every particle in man contains that unique

power, which has no equal to it (Pause) There is a still better method, viz. the Ultimate Being be pushed towards the concerned person; but the jolt (jerk) of this cannot be borne by everybody. I have done this as well. I (strictly) prohibit this being done."

23 - 6-1945

Revered Master:

"At evening time, dear Ram Chandra had made mention of his stationary condition; and dear M1 had developed fondness for that. He may try for it. The method for that consists in observing Nature all the time: the simplicity and fragrance of Nature. An estimate of the uniformity (or sameness) of Nature be formed and kept in view permanently, together with the thought that it is penetrating into oneself. It is necessary that the supposition of the same condition pervading around inside and outside be also there and one should try to remain all the time in this thought. But, this refinement of character can not be reached through force of arms, if the benevolent God does not gracefully bestow it (Persian couplet). I permit that person to practise it, who has gone beyond the stage of Qutub. This method is an invention of dear Ram Chandra, and is perfectly correct. The difference remains just that he proceeded on with one point; and he never forsook it, so long as the time for leaving it behind was not arrived at. Everything was achieved just thereby. Those who are fond of it, may now practise it. I do not prohibit taking up that point, viz. total surrender as well. The purpose is to have the goal achieved; in whatever way it may be attained. Both methods are correct."

25- 6 -1945

Revered Master:

"Dear Ram Chandra has done away with the completion of emotional passion (Jazba) or slobberiness from the system of spiritually. His transmission can be illustrated by the warmth of scorched fire (ash covered) or hot sand. This is something unique, introduced by him.

Passion has not remained necessary for (spiritual) progress. No doubt, however, such transmission will be possible to be imparted only by those, who would have derived sufficient benefit

from his transmission. The state of the Ultimate Being shall run into the person receiving training from the very outset. I remained observing his transmission just now. There was perfect purity (Khuloos) and the State of the Ultimate Being was available very well for a glimpse. Now screaming and wailing has come to an end. The way of good conduct (Sulook) can serve the purpose which passion or slobberiness cannot achieve, with the condition that the state of inward smouldering that dear Ram Chandra has, be there. This method of training cannot be described in words, but can be brought to comprehension, when needed."

Revered Master:

"There can be never a better method than taking up from the very outset, what may be the final purpose."

19-7 -1945

Revered Master:

"The organic region of H4 had been perfected; and I had ordered that in three days, he be prepared to the extent of my intentions. However, time did not permit him. As such, what was intended for him, is again spared. If he had gone to K.. before acquiring this condition^ perfection of the organic region, he would not have thought as having brought this imperience and inclination from there. The experience is there against even persons far better than he. Let some more time pass."

Revered Master's dictation, addressed to M6:

"You have wasted a large portion of your life. However, if one who has gone wayward in the morning, returns home in the evening, he is not to be considered as having been lost. The respected elder (saint S4) with whom you sojourned, has not even attained liberation. It is difficult to keep oneself without blemish in this world. (Real) man is one who is able to keep his passionate attachment oriented to that side (higher spiritual direction). No doubt there followed a period of darkness and confusion after my physical dissolution; but a few persons were still there, who did not desert me. Bravo at their courage. Keep your inclination oriented to that side and be devoted to work. The time, bygone, would never return. You will not be able to find any better relative

or friend to compare with dear Ram Chandra. He surrendered everything to me; and I too have not spared anything from bestowing on him. Only God knows his state (adequately). You do not know all those respected elders (Masters) who have bestowed their successor-representativeship on him. All elders have their eyes of grace and hope on him. This time can not recur again and again; neither can this state be expected to develop for long. As such, take advantage (of this opportunity) to your heart's fill."

[Shri Ram Chandra Mission, Shahjahanpur (U.P.), India was registered on 21-7-1945 under Societies Registration Act of U.P. State in India at the office of Asst. Registrar at Bareilly.]

4-8-1945

Revered Master:

The work that dear Ram Chandra has done just now, pertains to the theory of the blood-hounds. This is to say that the spiritual particles in the organism be sharpened to the extent that they devour the foreign matter, obstructing the onrush of spirituality and thereby illumine the spiritual element. This is a very good method and is exclusive in relation to spirituality. At each point, it can be put to effect individually, which will result in each plexus being set right by the use of this effective weapon. It is entirely automatic work. The method consists in introducing the particles of one's thought, through the use of one's will-power or spiritual force, so that they acquire the capability of absorbing the defects or gulping the obstructive factors. The particles of thought introduced into the system or organism should have the capability to that extent. It will be better to introduce atoms of high potency so that these do not get themselves deformed through the absorption of deformities or obstructive elements. It will be still better that either those particles be strengthened from time to time, or else they be sharpened, even at the outset, to the extent that there would remain no need of strengthening them off and on. I anyway, consider the method of strengthening off and on to be better."

15-8-1945

Revered Master:

"Today, dear Ram Chandra was very anxiously involved in finding out some method so that freedom from illusory phenomenality would be ensured from the very first day of practice. He performed lots of swimming to the extent of his approach. At last Providence helped him and the problem was solved, which had not been resolved till today. This invention will be associated just with his name. Elder sages have prescribed various methods of meditation and concentration at so many different points; but nobody was able to hit at this target. What is held in contempt by people in general, and simply bypassed as unworthy of consideration by the searching vision of those (elite austere sages) really contains everything in it the method is like this: the big toe of the right foot be fixed into sight, and meditated upon, fixing some point therein. God is omniscient and pervading everywhere. This state is to remain there for ever. Even at the time of total annihilation, That (God) is to remain all-circumscribing as It is now. When the time of creation arrived, boiling up set in and forms (and categories) were manifested. The way That (God) is pervading the human being, happens to be in a strange way, difficult to comprehend. For the sake of understanding it may be supposed that the brain is the Real Ultimate Being (Asal Zaat), wherefrom Its light or power is focussed on the entire organism. Its extremity or end in the real way remains beyond (the grip of) comprehension, because of being limitless. For the sake of understanding and in respect to the strange way in which It is enshrined in the human being, it will have to be granted that the last part of It constitutes the extreme end of the foot; and what happens to be the secret in it is that this big toe and that top point in the brain are one and the same, beyond the possibility of any adulteration. As such being one-pointed on this (big toe) means getting one-pointed on one's starting point; and this practice can bring about the desired result, which constituted the problem to start with. I instruct that those who have ritualistically scattered themselves over their feet, should adopt this practice (without fail). It is something that can make people struck with wonder, on

comprehension or achievement of the desired result; but the society in general will have no appreciation for it, because this lies beyond the reach of their understanding. This is beyond all the rules (and regulations) that they have learnt or read (in books). Dear M1, there can be no price for this topic. To tell the truth, he (Ram Chandra) has revealed the Reality (threadbare). M2 be instructed to be oriented to this (single-pointedly) and write about his condition. I remove the restriction on practice and worship for three months, (that was imposed earlier). A copy of this, as it is, be sent to M2. When somebody starts this practice, one must consult one's guide because he understands everything better."

17-8-1945

Revered Master:

"What I mean to underline is that the Mission is now a registered organization; now it should start functioning. To work therein, people should be selected, who are young and capable of doing good work. There should be no consideration of age in a spiritual organization: whoever is able to do a job, he should be assigned and allowed to do the same job without frisk and frolic. You make a distribution of work among yourselves; and all of you must adhere to principles. However, you should remain helpful to each other in every affair. If you notice somebody's work as slackening start that work yourself on his/her behalf. One, who has more time at one's disposal should do more work. Mutual love should be maintained. There is to be no question of high and low. Learn this from my example. I shall not approve of argumentative duel in my organization; nor do I like heart-aches over trifles. All this work is mine. Do it all, taking it as such. If some point of discussion may come up, I am to be consulted; and my order in that case will be final."

19- 8 - 1945

(Janmashtami - birth anniversary of Lord Krishna)

Revered Master:

"Letters be issued to everybody that every year from now onwards, the first day of Lord Krishna's birth anniversary be celebrated by observing a fast. Light meals be taken only once

during the day; and attempt be made to keep one's thoughts pious and virtuous."

[Generally Lord Krishna's birthday is celebrated on two days in India by- two different sects of Hindus. The orthodox adherents of the scriptures, viz. the householders, observe it on the first day, while the more liberal ascetical Vaishnavites observe it the next day.]

20- 8 - 1945

Revered Master:

"All the instructions of Swami Ji should be complied to strictly. Absurd gossip should not be indulged in. Care should be observed with regard to children."

23 - 8 - 1945

Revered Master:

"Every member of the Mission should maintain a notebook, in which these guiding principles be taken down; and one should go through it off and on to remove one's shortcomings. There should be notes in the diary as to what could not be fulfilled, and wherein one's shortcoming still persists."

25 - 8 - 1945

Revered Master's dictation:

"There was perfect silence beyond annihilation (Pralaya). When the time for the manifestation of the universe was there, a kind of fermentation developed in the Ultimate Being, wherefrom action ensued. As such, the condition (experienced) at this time (during transmission by dear Ram Chandra) was like the same fermentation ensuing from the Ultimate Being, and was not the effect of the thought of anybody. If this method be used more, it may just be possible that the veins of the brain start getting ruptured. The method consists in creating the same condition (prevailing at the outset of the manifestation of the universe). I prohibit this transmission. In my case this capability developed after material life had come to an end. This is the state which I have already transferred to dear Ram Chandra. I have given

dictation concerning this earlier. Look dear M1, there has been nobody capable of observing this progress. If even one such person had come to exist, it could perhaps be possible to have an estimate of my natural grandeur. The answer to Mi's question is that if someone else, I mean some elder saint of high calibre, performs it, that performance will contain only a reflection of this real performance by dear Ram Chandra."

26 - 8 -1945

Revered Master:

"Everyone should try to develop a balanced state like mine. Then there will not remain any secret. This will have the defect to the extent of the defect in that. This alone is real mergence? A lot of practice is needed to achieve it."

27-8- 1945

Revered Master:

'The method of merging in Zaat (Ultimate Being) is simple and easy. It has been discovered quite well. One method is to get merged into one's guide (Master); and the other is to have connection with and merging into Zaat directly. *The method of direct merging into Zaat consists in widening oneself through thought to the extent of feeling and even coming to trust one's own expansion all around, viz. experiencing one's own expansion in the whole geography and atmosphere. This practice should be enhanced so much that one's own expansion and the width of that geography and atmosphere would start being experienced as one and the same; and the feeling of oneself being lost therein would start coming up, and then gradually this thought too would wither away. I am of the opinion that mergence with Master be attempted, so that whatever would have been attained may be duly retained and maintained. Direct mergence into Zaat is something very fine if possible to achieve; but the only example of that upto now has been Kabir. This calibre in him was a divine gift; and was present from the very first day, coming to blossom later on. My own Revered Master had taken it up after achieving total mergence in His own Master. This practice automatically emerges on ascending to the highest stage."

Revered Master transmitted to me with several intervals for a total period of about six hours.

6 - 9 - 1945

Revered Master:

"I tell you something very important from my own experience. Friendship can survive only when mutual appreciation and regard is there in the heart on both sides. Just this has been my way (and style of functioning).

"Question: "What is poison for spirituality?" Answer: "Anger."

Revered Master elaborated in detail:

"What effect is brought about thereby (anger)? The system acquires heaviness; and pressure is generated. As a result, the free and sublime current of spirituality fails to penetrate and blow through the system; and thought is not able to get rid of the burden outweighing it. Now the question arises as to how one can acquire freedom from it (anger and its effect). The prescription is here: one should consider oneself as humble and subservient (to Master). This should become a matter of trust and perfect belief; and one should remain practising it so as to get that same hue of humility and subservience penetrate every organ of one's whole system. Every where this control of anger has been praised. Is not the anecdote worth mentioning that sage Durvasa was the guest of Lord Krishna, and went back fully happy therefrom? Has there ever been a Personality thus far, to stand in comparison with Lord Krishna? Everywhere, a cool heart alone has acquired praise; and just that kind of heart is needed in the sphere of spirituality. This heart is such a tender and light object that starts withering in even a little change in the flow of the breeze."

27- 9 - 1945 (Time: 11.00 P.M.)

Today, at this time, the connection of B2 was snapped off under orders.

Revered Master:

"When 11 returns from Fatehgarh, throw a challenge to be prepared to witness the miracle of spiritual power, if he so desires,

fix some standard sort of direct connection and demonstrate to him whether such things can happen or not. This is pure spiritual power, and that jugglery is the miracle of will-power. There is a vast difference between these two. In the sphere of spirituality, all the grandeur and sharpness etc. is gone. Phenomenality (Maya) is totally absent there. Nothing intervenes to bear the brunt (of spirit in its purity) there. Below that just will is there, which can be used to produce (and demonstrate) miracles. Nobody, capable of demonstrating miracles out of real spirituality, has ever been born as yet. The matter concerning K.. is within my view. I and dear Ram Chandra are both in the sphere of pure spirituality with the only difference that I possess limitlessness.

"I had called R2 to give transmission and assign work to him. Yesterday, there was reference to (the work of) destruction. That is essential and beyond argument. This work has got delayed because people have not taken it up as their own. Some persons should take up prayer; and others are to devote to other jobs. Prayer I shall assign to persons of my choice. R2 should start (the work assigned to him) after 9-10- 1945; and devote to prayer before that time."

18-10-1945

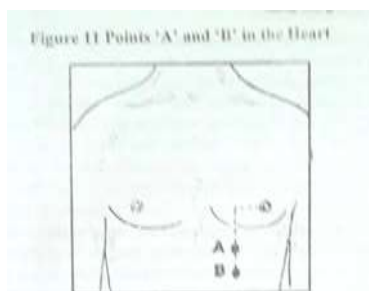
Revered Master:

"When dear Ram Chandra was going to Lakhimpur-Kheri in a bus, a thought struck him as to what was it that on getting settled in the human mind, starts weaving undesirable effects; and how it may be possible to correct it. That thought was immediately followed by the thought that the process of degeneration, whatever, be just reversed to set everything right. As such, a very simple and yet very beneficial prescription came up in his thought. It is incumbent on every human being to practise this meditation without fail. It can be practised for fifteen minutes (daily). Do introduce it. It is Mi's duty to get it practised by every member of the Mission."

The method of this meditation:

Measure two (of your own) finger- breadths to the right from the nipple of the left-side breast. From the point exactly

at the distance of two finger-breadths on the line between the two nipples on your own breasts, measure three finger-breadth downwards (at a 90 degree angle with the baseline between the two nipples). At this point 'A' one should meditate on the thought that all women in the world are one's sisters; and keep repeating this idea continuously in mind during the entire period of meditation, having firm faith in this being a fact.



"This is a very small meditation; but it has such a quick effect that if it is practised with a firm and full heart, its effect will start manifesting soon afterwards, even just after starting its practice. Its effect is to be so firm that it can never wither away. Elder sages have invented many practices and meditations of very superior value; but I can bet that nobody arrived at this small point, which will not be available anywhere else. Practice of this meditation should be started as soon as possible. Those who may be out of station, be informed through correspondence, explicitly telling them that one who does not practise it, will stay away from the fold of our responsibility. (Pause) This point can be taken for meditation in case of any defect in one's character."

Revered Master added later "As a result of this meditation, fickleness will vanish and one's inner make-up (mental tendency) will become straight and proportionately well-formed. The capacity to grasp (the relevant) will improve; and mind will come to realize its own reality automatically. To women, this meditation should be introduced with a slight modification, since that for which this method has got invented, is found mostly in men. To a woman suffering from an excess of fickleness and lack of inclination to spirituality, this practice must surely be prescribed. She should only

meditate on this point with the firm thought in her mind that everybody has God's Grace and everybody considers every other man or woman as one's own brother and sister; and she too is not an exception to this."

19-10-1945

Revered Master:

"In this world, a few things are essential for everybody. Man does not deserve being designated 'man' unless those principles are adopted by him/her. If someone asks me whether I like to be man or God, I shall just say that I prefer to be man. Gods are in a state like the winding of a watch. They will remain working so long as the winding of the spring is there. As soon as the spring gets unwound, they lose their status. This winding has not been effected for quite a long time now. As such they are running loose as to their effectiveness of performance; and they remain incapable of producing desired results. Oblations to fire are going waste. Crops are failing. So many things like these are occurring: how much to dictate! The winding administered to 'man' at the time of creation still remains; and there is no possibility ever of its exhaustion. This will remain just as it is, up to the end. Now the question is: how are we to fulfil our duty (in gratitude to this right bestowed on us - man - by God) ? How to regulate this winding so that the human clock starts giving the correct time? For this there are those age-old prescriptions of elders, which on being used can ensure the establishment of the human standard. These are the daily routine, good conduct, moderation et al. Balanced living is the essence of it. Now, what to do in order to set everything in tune with the (basic) principles? For this, (regulation of) externally observable behaviour will be better, for example rising up early in the morning, cleanliness of the body, regular time for eating, and all routine behaviour in dealing with people and environment will be beneficial. These are preliminary matters. These are to be achieved first; and then one is to step ahead. Young people, these days, are in general found habitually lacking in these respects; and this is a big defect. After acquiring these habits concerning routine daily life, one should engage in the affairs of the house-hold, observing certain principles. One should try to earn one's livelihood in such a way as to be able to give benefit to others also,

but one should not be unduly worried and confused in these regards. Remembrance of God should remain there in case of every work. Dealing with others should be such as to reflect uniformity. This means that everybody should have the idea that such and such person is not lacking in the performance of the duty that is assigned to him/her. Love should be dripping out of every piece of one's talk and behaviour. Serving each other (mutually) should be considered as duty by everybody. One's own obligation be dealt with in accordance with privileges and positions to each person as the case would require. Thought concerning evil-doing should vaporize from the heart. Everyone is to be considered as God's creation; and He alone is to be taken as Master of all. Everyone should be paid regard in that same light; and this should be for everybody without distinction, whether one belongs to one's holy association (Satsang) or not. These principles should be dealt with everybody, in general."

24 - 10 - 1945

Revered Master:

"How did idol-worship start? And what for? These two questions are mostly causing worry to people. Someone goes in favour of it; and somebody else stands against it. Both are unacquainted with reality. The midpoint between these (extremes of opposition and favouritism) hardly occurred to anybody's experience. Someone took up the stone, while somebody else adopted something else as an object of worship. Things of a different sort in relation to that (attitude) so to say, came to be places for general worship. Someone started offering flowers to books; while somebody else did something else like that. Rivers and gutters started being worshipped. Canes and whips (torture instruments) came to be objects of (universal) worship. Slaves (and servants) came to be saluted. Innumerable forms of worship, so to say, were invented as associated to that (attitude to God), as a result of which, preference for multiplicity ensued. The Oneness (of God) started to get veiled; and curtains after curtains came to cover It. It would have been better to give the heart to some single object, to be fixed for worship. Just listen to something more: when an idol had been established (as a concrete object) in front of oneself, it assumed so much the role of God, that it attracted the

imploring gaze just to itself, whenever the need for God was there, instead of assuming the manifestation of God's splendour (in that idol) in making it the centre of one's attention. People in fact direct their desires for fulfilment to God, but their thought starts to remain confined to that (idol) only, if they go a little higher, and continue rising up that way, it may be possible that happy tidings of advancement trail on them. But here people are hardly ever prepared to give up that (narrow attachment to the idol). There was a time when nobody happened even to be aware of it (idol-worship). Then thought started whirling about to get inclined to gods (deities). Ingenuity came to assert so that deities were sculpturized. These, however, were not intended (originally) to be objects of worship. Later, gradually regard for them began to reverberate in the heart, and God started to be linked to that (sculptured idol). The craftsmanship of the sculptor attracted the heart even more in that direction. Grossness was increasing in keeping with the (deteriorating) times. As such, preference for the gross object got the upper hand; and interested people (with selfish ends in view) imparted more glamour to it (idol worship). That, thus, finally directed orientation and inclination of the mind's disposition to it; and interest was developed to such an extent as to snap off the link of the heart's disposition from the higher entity, and looking to nether regions (of self-seeking) ensued. This is harmful as well as beneficial. I have to repeat that benefit out of this (idol-worship) can be derived only by the one, whose aspiration is linked only to God, and who may suppose the idol only as the concrete means for fixing one's eye on. It is also not to be taken as such for the whole life-time; but waiting for that time should continuously be there, when this (attachment or dependence on the idol) would start dropping off automatically. This is possible when taking it only as a means. This (idol-worship) is useful for those who are stupid, and remain unable to move on any further unless they adopt something concrete to satisfy their gross attitude. In fact, there is need for a guide even for this also, who may have acquired such capability at least, as to take a stupid fellow forward, while keeping him at his gross level.

"This article I have dictated just by way of indications. As the circumstances may prevail, and according to the trends, the

inquisitive aspirant should be taken forward and made to cover stages, having regard for all limitations. During my life-time, I had hinted at some time that wandering sages, on noticing the calm serenity of some place, used to bow down their benign look over that (place, to charge it with grace)."

Revered Master:

"This happened mostly in the temples, which were frequented by a large number of people. They (wandering sages) used to hypnotize the idol so that even the stupid people may get some effect on sitting before it. This is another kind of technique (imbuing the idol with vital force), which is the invention of the sages. They started doing this, when such a system came to prevail."

26- 10-1945

Revered Master's instructions to all concerned:

"I like the idea that you (Ram Chandra) give up all routine work for three months, and remain free. The date I shall fix (duly). During that period the right kind of study and a permanent link to me will be there. You can help the disciples in absentia. If I need somebody sometime, I shall call him. During that period he (Ram Chandra) be given complete rest. No (puzzling) problem be referred to him; and opportunity for introspection alone be provided to him. Visits and meetings be reduced to the minimum. People may be told that he has been given leave for rest to his heart and brain. Less talking will be his way during this period. He should be kept away from conflicts in the Mission. Whatever may be necessary be kept ready in advance so that there will be no strain to his heart and mind. My grace (transmission) shall start at 9.00 P.M., so that people remain deriving benefit. There will be my transmission in his remembrance. However, if he calls somebody, he is to come but only for such length of time as desired by him. I understand that people sitting in meditation at their own places will receive the same vibrations of grace (transmission) that they get here. My grace will be universal."

29-10-1945

Revered Master:

"Dear Ram Chandra's mind has grasped the entire substance of this (new) system of spiritual training. (His) training is perfect, but the apprehension remains that the condition of incarnation may get imparted to every person (receiving training from him). As such, I feel that the ultimate of training should be kept (hidden) in the breast, and this process be continued further on. Training can be imparted upto a certain limit, but not to everyone. This is the order of Lord Krishna."

Revered Master:

"All the elder sages, whoever, have surrendered their work to you, and have made themselves free (from their burden). You enjoy permission from every chain and family of spiritual Masters. You may impart training in whichever system and order you may like, the same link will be created."

8-11 - 1945

Revered Master:

"Now I am fed up. All these people have exhausted my patience."

Revered Master:

"I am always cautious to avoid undue pressure on his brain, because Nature has to take work from him, for which hints are already there."

10-11 -1945

The following method, freshly invented, is noted below, as approved after due modifications by Revered Master.

Method:

The individual system (body) is to be kept clean, i.e. shorn of dirt externally, and of unclean thoughts internally. The mental tendency is to be kept clean permanently; and the attempt should be made to keep the heart free from heaviness and moroseness. This is to be increased through practice. This

means that one has to clean and maintain one's condition after the example of the current of (clean) water falling from above, flowing pure and simple and unimpeded throughout as far as it finds the way clear. Just this is the principle. On creating such a condition (in oneself), what has started from the Ultimate Source, would remain arriving straight. This is, so to say, copying Nature or the Divine State, and achieving a connection with the same."

14-11 - 1945

(Started on tour to Rajputana now Rajasthan)

Revered Master's dictation (in the train to Agra):

"I can say confidently that this point was certainly known to me. It was not discovered earlier. It is the superb marvel of Nature that the (marvellous) thing is present in the heart itself. This is the point, at which people enter (the realm of) deep sleep (Sushupti). Knowledge of this does not fall to the lot of all and sundry. There are so many things herein. This is known as the abode of wonderment. (Soul as described in the Upanishads and the Gita.) Many elder sages remained diviitg in it. This is the point at which (indications of the mystery of) Divine messages (Wahee) descend. Alright, I will tell more about it later. This point blossomed only in prophets. I give the blessing that nothing concerning spiritual science will remain concealed from the person (Ram Chandra), who has discovered this point."

17-11-1945

Revered Master:

"I have retained my duality in dear Ram Chandra, which was under reference just now, so that some sort of a curtain may remain in between (him and me) and he does not give up the physical body on achieving total unity with me. The shape of this condition is like someone being glued to somebody else, yet finds his identity still apart from that other person. This is something merely conceptual, which has been retained for some beneficial consideration. This thing in his case will wither away at the time of his end, viz. when he would desire to depart from this physical world. I have left this to him alone for that long as Nature does not

adopt some other course. This is to say that I have promised to welcome you (Ram Chandra) immediately, when you will really like to leave this world."

2-12- 1945

Revered Master:

"You're feeling about M2 is correct. You have already bestowed so much on him, that he will need time to assimilate. Just now, his condition is that what you have described by the word 'whirl'. There is no need to stir him just now."

15-12-1945

Revered Master:

"You will have to go to Orissa (it seems). Co to Benares first; and proceed on after completing the work there."

17-12-1945

Revered Master (addressing M1):

"One difficulty is coming up, viz. nobody is developing faith in all these details. They consider all of it cooked up through imagination; and they are not able to see that you have initiated people, whoever, just in this system, not intending simply to spoil their spiritual prospects or meaning to play fraud on them. If they (S1 etc.) consider themselves responsible for their disciples, do not feel likewise, nor consider yourself any less responsible (for your disciples) as compared to them! One question may certainly be raised, viz. while everybody was prepared to impart training to Ram Chandra, and did impart training to him in more or less quantity, how then did it happen that all things came to be manifest in him alone? Just one thing has occurred to me: in case that such affairs would have cropped up and come to pass during the time of my Revered Master, then perhaps objections would have been raised by contemporaries of my Revered Master, and they would have refused to have faith. Then what would have happened: just my chain (system) would have continued. Now also, take it (to happen) just that way, in case they refuse to be amenable. The person possessing knowledge of this (Ultimate) matter, has always been only one (at a time), because Nature

makes only that person Its instrument, who would have acquired perfect alignment with It. Revelations are also descending on him/her; and that one alone happens to serve Its (Nature's) purpose. The chain proceeds on just through that person. Now, so far as convincing others is concerned, it is just (an expression of) love (for them). An attempt should be made. If the people knowing (and recognizing) such a person per chance, happen to be abundant, differences (and disharmony) in accordance with Nature's Intention may be overcome. How would that happen, though: Nature wants lh.it just one comes up with (full) laurels; and it is just this that happens. A tr.il lover likes to have only one beloved; and this has gone up to the (level of) Nature Itself. I too desired just this. A wife devoted to her husband wants just one husband; and the male too gets inclined likewise to just one direction (the female). Take it to be exactly like that. There is no need of (loo) much clarification.

"Can S1 claim that he loved me? Not at all. If he had love (for me), the revelation of this matter would have descended first of all on him alone. It was only a hectic sprint and sport of love that he retained upto the last moment of my life. To bring a glass of water (at need) and fulfilling my necessities without being told is no doubt an argument in support of love, but ran not be designated as love. The example is there that the servant, who has formed an accurate estimate of his master's inclinations and attitude, performs from time to time exactly what happens to be the need of the master at the time. Dismiss him just now for a while; and see whether he cares (a fig) to attend to you (or not)! Let me mention something: Suppose he (SI) did have love for me; then why does he not bring the glass of water to dear Ram Chandra (according to the proverbial love of Majnu being there for even the dog of his beloved Laila). If attraction (to me) had been there, this thing ought to have occurred automatically with him. Have there not been examples of disciples of a departed elder sage, who loved his spiritual progeny after his demise? Why? They had the idea that the seed of the (departed) master is present in them and that theirs is the second form of the master. Is it not so? Yes, it is like that; and this is the way available to observation every day everywhere. Does not my Samadhi (memorial containing ashes) appear dear to him? Why,

after all? That is because my charred bones, which have been reduced to (mere) mortar, are nevertheless interned there. Why does he now get inclined to those bones? Just because his love was attached to the bones. Attachment and love to (my) Ultimate Being was not at all there. If it had been there, he would have necessarily started (performing) the above- mentioned practice towards him (Ram Chandra). I am telling a story. Just listen. To dear Ram Chandra such discretion never occurred, except in special circumstances when it was my own intention, as to help his Guru Maharaj wear clothes when he needed it or to polish his shoes as he was to go to court. What was the reason? He had no leisure to comprehend and contemplate about such matters: he (Ram Chandra) had just got glued to me, and lost himself to inward observations. He was concerned only with what is our real purpose; and he never allowed anything else to enter his thoughts. This comparison I have put forth, though there was no need for it, so that S1 may measure his love (for me) against that of Ram Chandra, and give up the thought that he has loved me a lot during my life-time. These thoughts are proving to be obstructions on the way to progress. These are subtle points, all given for use, if needed during discussions by M1.

"SI can as well put one question to you (M1), rebutting the argument given by me above, that he, if he would have got love for me, would have done the same practices for Ram Chandra, as he used to do for me. That argument can be rebutted, viz. if Ram Chandra would have become the form and matter of Lala Ji, the same practices that S1 used to do to me should have automatically started being performed by him in relation to dear Ram Chandra as well. How could this occur after all? He (SI) had loved what was structured out of flesh and skin, without acquiring his mergence with the inward, viz. the spiritual essence in me. If he is able to do that even now, that same thing will come up, and he will get attracted (to dear Ram Chandra). A servant can also fulfil the needs of his Guru as an individual, but this will not at all come to his fortune. The wages for that remain only a few coins: and do you know what those who have love of this kind (SI type) get in exchange? Just overweening arrogance. What, then, happens to be received in exchange for that (Ram Chandra type) love? Nothing!

Why so? Such a return for that superb love! The crux of the matter is that it is just a state. Where there is something in return, there is an estimate of the wages. What I mean is that what is designated as 'nothing' remains beyond Maya (phenomenal reality); and factually I have used this word 'nothing' quite correctly in so far as he (who gets 'nothing') remains just where he belongs. What is the meaning of this expression (remaining just where he belongs)? It means that he starts living from where he happened to come! Arrived where? In his home! Gained what? Nothing!

"Dear brother, whom to tell these matters! And who is to comprehend these things! The pearl is to be appreciated either by a king or by a jeweller (a very famous Persian proverb). Everyone using a heavy stick does not become an expert soldier. Neither is everybody competent enough to grasp this state! Then what to weep for? When capability is not there, competence must wither away. What remains then? Just that gunmanship. In case of the educated mere verbal book-keeping; and in the fold of the uneducated just crude sharpness! My good brother, are there no examples of the book-keeping of the educated that they themselves would not understand? Sure enough, there are. Who are they? preceptors (permitted to impart training), I mean the old type; not of the new system. They are under intoxication of having enrolled six hundred disciples!"

Revered Master's dictation continued:

Sketching out the present state of the assembly of spiritual associates (Satsang), which has to be reformed: "Grand reception-hubbub at the station of arrival, creating the impression that the lion is coming! An awe-inspiring atmosphere prevails to an undue extent. Now the Satsang starts, at the place of residence. The sermon begins: 'Our Revered Master was a sage of very high approach. His Samadhi Is at Fatehgarh. He loved his Guide so ardently that its example can seldom be found now. He has performed such work of manifest value as will require eyes to see (and appreciate). Once He came across a very old sage, who paid Him great regards and asked: Munshi Ji, why does this condition elude my fortune? He replied: it is the merit of the Master. He structures as He likes whom He selects; His pleasure must have to

be maintained, however possible. It is just this that counts in spirituality; all else is just book-keeping.

I have also done just this: I maintained the pleasure of my Master to the extent of my capability; and it is just His Grace that this condition could be the fortune of this slave. Brethren, this alone happens to be the real thing.

Never allow it to slip out of your grip. Just this will be useful in essence; and just these things will prove beneficial at the end, because one cannot cross the ocean of the suffering of becoming (Bhava Sagar) so long as the Master does not administer His push.' People listened to this sermon and started to search for devices to manage the pleasure of the Master: one rushed up holding a Dhoti (long piece of cloth used as change of garment after bath by typical Indian Gurus, to be tied around the waist so as to cover the lower half of the body by half of that cloth and putting the other half around the neck or otherwise, to cover the upper part upto the neck: thus completing the postural costume of a holy Hindu), while another secretly slipped money in his pocket. This (finding money in his pocket) brings a smile to the Master's lips. The disciple comprehended that just this happens to be the way to manage and maintain the Master's pleasure. Then what next: coins and currency notes started being respectfully presented for Master's pleasure; gifts started pouring in; culinary delicacies started arriving; and Master's needs began getting fulfilled.

'The disciples solved one problem so easily and a very easy device for having Master's pleasure (in one's favour) was discovered. So, the subject of 'come and bring' started functioning. Disciples enhanced the valuation further: the praise of the Guru started being preached like he had done in the case of his own Guru. Sure enough, the original sermon persisted in the memory; and to whomsoever the message had to be delivered, just this thing (the value of managing and maintaining Master's pleasure somehow) was communicated, as this donation is easy to understand. To help somebody with ten or twenty rupees is an easy game for most people. For some people, of course, even this may be difficult; but even in their case, when it came to happen, they took it to be just a payment to the physician on the occasion of a child's illness. Now, the herd is assembled. 'Just see brother,

what is the number on the list.' This is found out; and some estimate is formed from the collection of money that the number is still short of the requirement for fulfilment of their personal needs. Now, what is the position! The guide has forgotten spirituality; and remains worried just about this number of disciples and the amount of collections. The disciples had already listened to the sermon concerning Master's pleasure; and they remained yoked to (their so-called) duty very sincerely and actively. Now anxiety is created further, viz. the disciples who have managed and maintained the Guru's pleasure, should also be kept pleased by the Guru, so that they would not run away, leaving the cooking utensil saltless!

"Just this is the condition of the assembly of spiritual associates. Put it bare before them(S1,C1,etc.). Let your (M1) friends declare on oath whether this is not the exact description of their condition! O God, such things may never occur in my progeny; and if per chance, these would have crept in, these be washed away!

"Do you know, who is my progeny? Nobody remains my progeny any longer. Now only they happen to be (my progeny), who have taken me to be residing in themselves, and got oriented for grace only to the one whom I intend, or in other words, who is liked by me. (Pause) People underwent, God knows, how many troubles to win the pleasure of somebody or some officer, and adopted various techniques (to that effect). Finally, they discovered the person enjoying the pleasure or love of that officer; and some way or other started loving that one themselves and proved through their services that they loved that person in this world. As a result, they made a dent in the heart of that person, on whose recommendation to the officer concerned, they found their purposes fulfilled. Even though this example refers to an ordinary worldly purpose, in case you people take this .is applicable to the circumstances concerning your fold, will not my grace start be flowing down (accordingly)? Who, however, has such understanding?"

18-12-1945

Revered Master:

"We had been to the market and purchased a trouble therefrom (an Urdu half-couplet)."

Revered Master:

Then, people complain of lots of disturbing thoughts!"

Revered Master:

"A copy of this (dictation by Revered Swami Vivekananda Ji) will also be tagged to that of my dictation. "Dear M1, I have made the firm determination that this will be the only opportunity for the people whom you will meet (on this tour). They can come to verify, but no more time for pondering and brooding can be allowed now.

"S6 is not a person of any good understanding. He is oriented simply to distributing food during Bhandara; and though he has attended the annual function, on account of being addicted to drinking neat (gross pleasures) afterwards, he is yet unacquainted to bliss proper. Others, like F1, have got a simple tendency, having nothing to do with conflict and mischief. It will be touching the boundary of cruelty to take any step hastily in their case. Whenever other people may be there, M1 should meet them and tell them necessarily that they may make their examinations. No doubt, there is one thing about examination: if transmission is given from the real condition, how are they to know about it! This can be discerned only by one who is acquainted with togetherness (with the person to be examined, who is in high spiritual stage). So it will be better for them to spend the same time in Satsang. C1 no doubt can understand, if he would give up self-demonstration. To SI, according to his estimate, there remains no more need for Satsang (practice). Tell him that it does not matter if really, he has no need for it, but having brotherly relationship is duty undoubtedly. I feel, after all, where is now the need of Bhandara (spiritual get-together) that are taking place, because when that is the idea of their leader, why should it matter if his followers also take up the same attitude, and he (C1) has, in fact, lost any right

to give any direction to them. So in his own words, he (SI) will appear as an enemy to his followers, if and when the posture for benefit will be adopted. These details have been given so that M1 may go through these and be prepared to converse according to needs.

"One more idea is very commonly prevailing by, viz. you (M1) have raised him (Ram Chandra) up (to the top). I am making mention of this (idea) as well. The reply is: why you (M1) did not raise him up for thirteen years and such forceful conditions were not created earlier. This is acceptable to everybody that Ram Chandra's spiritual condition is good. S1 also knows this and is convinced of his sensitivity (capability of experience). Just remind him (SI) that when dear Ram Chandra had been to S., he had made him (SI) aware of his condition in a moment; and told him also that his aim and purpose, whatever, is just having perfect merger come to his fortune for which alone he was making attempt all the time. Can he (SI) say that he or anybody else took such a high ideal in view; and whether anybody could be so restless to come to that stage? Alas! Had this restlessness somehow got developed in other people also, personalities would have been available in our fold. This is not something ordinary: it is easy to talk about (and make claims). They may just try it even now and see the result, even though lot of time has gone waste. The answer to Mi's question is that in case they take it up, they are necessarily to get drawn to this side."

19-12-1945

Revered Master (instruction to M1 continued):

"C1 is an extremely intriguing fellow cunning as well as deceitful, capable of gaining control over others. Take him just as another uncle (N1). The difference lies in, there (N1) being wrestling, while here (C1) business-mentality. Shop-keeping remains the chief concern, and sweetness the main purpose. Deal a hundred abuses to him: he will listen without getting excited. Open his ears and obtain reply from him. He may be asked to declare on oath whether he is not deceiving people! I feel he has contented himself to adopt the status of old type Guru, just mumbling an incantation (mantra) in his disciples' ears. He has

spoilt his spiritual destiny and deceived others. There is nothing to compensate for this crime: no penitence to rid one against this. There is punishment, sure enough, for taking advantage of people's faith to spoil them. What after all can be greater sin than knowing one's status and capability fully well and yet making others oriented and attached to oneself posing to them as the Revered Master of the present time! If this state (of affairs) remains prevailing, just think what tremendous disaster they (C1 etc.) are dealing to the people at large! Those poor people are coming to learn Brahmavidya (Science/Discipline concerning the Ultimate) to gain what, they themselves may assess and estimate! Who is being defamed: just me; who is serving his petty ends: that C1. I have now arrived at a definite conclusion: it will be another matter, if events may force me to do something otherwise or else the times may make me do whatever; the permission to impart training should not be granted unless the one (to be permitted) becomes desireless and devoid of greed, or is almost like that (in some rare cases only). Man can do a lot: the work for man is not just training others. He (C1) has pounced upon and sat on it as if he has got everything - he has become Master himself and also enlivened the name of his Guru; derived benefit for himself as well and served all of his purposes. What better may still be there: this is sufficient for him! He has started being respected. Gurudom business is spreading far and wide. People have begun praising him. Heart started deriving pleasure out of well-organized public functions. People started pouring in. What else could he desire after all! He arrived and worked a lot; an epidemic has been perpetrated even for times ahead, viz. he has established his name (after death) as well! What a fine achievement!

"Thousands of rupees are spent for worldly training. How much bloodshed is invested after gangsterism! What great cruelties are under taken to maintain one's supremacy! How much expenditure is undergone for one's superiority! How many unbecoming devices are adopted for maintaining one's prestige! How many feasts have to be arranged; how many feet have got to be washed! Now just consider how much toil has to be put in for enhancing one's prestige and esteem; how much time and money has to be spent! How difficult all this happens to be! A large part

of life is spent just in this mad race (after worldly attainments); and even then very often one does not meet with success according to one's plans! There are moreover many dangers, many kind of losses, many sorts of troubles therein!

"It is therefore better to start the game of Gurudom after the style of the modern ones, as it happens to be prevalent and popular! Somebody muttered something in somebody's ear; someone else put one's hand (or finger) on another's hand (or somewhere else)! No concern, dear brother with, whether the disciple's connection is correctly established or even whether the so-called Guru has the capability for it in him or not. The only concern is to serve one's purpose; Gurudom remains the sole end. The job is to seek for one's cake and cream; and the anxiety concerns the fulfilment of one's needs. So, this fellow has become a Guru so easily and got spared of any harm (or loss) as well. This happens to be nice prescription, brother! I understand, this is to be adopted by everybody. Has, however, the ultimate destiny (hereafter) been ensured? Not at all: the deep chasm is ready to receive such a person first of all. God's Grace can never fall to the lot of such a person. Members of his family will never step in that valley; and very soon during that fake Guru's life, or thereafter, when faced with someone of real merit, will start realizing him (fake Guru) as a fraud. Did not such people practise impostery in God's name? Is it something that could be pardoned? Not at all! The destined is to be there; ruin is to occur! In other sense, this is just surrendering oneself to the robber. What talk of ultimate destiny (hereafter) being secured, when the start itself is unbecoming! What sort of spirituality (to talk of), when greed for serving one's petty ends has overtaken (them) from the very start! Can these persons ever claim that they accepted me to depend on? If that had been the case, such things would never have come to occur. Is it not gentlemanliness to place one's weakness before someone, who has the capacity to eradicate these (weaknesses)? Why they do not do that? Due to shame and shyness, that in case somebody happens to comprehend their defect, they may come to infamy (and their whole game is over)! The minds of disciples have already got sealed viz. thinking nothing beyond Master! Even if they think, why

should they ever comprehend (due to seal being already applied)! What a fine device! May God alone come to our rescue!

'This article will be connected together with that earlier one (dictated on 17-12-1945).

"Bravo and hurrah! What a fine subject! Now we have just to copy it! This does ensure worldliness; who has ever to look after the world hereafter: that happens to be known to God alone! Now brother, we shall follow just this in the holy name of God! One thing (worldliness) is sure to be maintained; and about that other thing (ultimate end hereafter), what have we to do about that! For that Revered Master (Guru Ji Maharaj) remains responsible; and He shall manage it alright! Dear brethren, I have mentioned this thing very well and fine! If I had been capable in that regard, why should I have taken recourse to the Guru! He too has to be responsible for something after all, or we alone are to do everything by ourselves? The caretaker and protector of the end hereafter is He alone; we have nothing to do with that! Whether he does it or not, that is just His job! Anyway, He will certainly do that, I am perfectly confident. That is just His responsibility; and if He does not do that, will He not be answerable for that? Sure, He too cannot avoid it. God is there in case of both (He and we): how can it be possible then that He does not deal justice and take account of duties from both (Guru and disciple)! If He does not do that, then brother, I have to entertain doubt even in His Existence! Is it possible that He would be oblivious concerning His duty? Well these are matters of day-to-day routine. For example, once I was returning from the court, when two donkeys came fighting from behind me. Since I was in meditation, so God was worried that this fellow may be crushed down and He become bereft of anybody devoted to Him as a slave in this world! What happened then? God ordered an angel to separate those two donkeys so that this poor fellow be not wounded or hurt: the order was complied with at once and the two donkeys got separated. I put forward just this example for one; and how many more would have occurred! How much to narrate! At long last, this firm faith has come to me that God does help and assist: quite obviously, when He assisted in separating donkeys, will He ever fail to help a human being? And what a human being for that: the one who has hoisted his mace/nail with

full force on Guru's hand; has put his hand on Guru's hand, and surrendered his responsibility to the Guru! Do these things fall short of the stage of evidence? Is it a joke to hold the hand! One has to maintain the relationship for a life-time! Moreover, the Master when he catches the hand, He will have to maintain even after life-time, because He is Guru - the one to take beyond the ocean of becoming and suffering, the Bhava-Sagar! It is not just a joke that He would avoid it! He has just become mine; and has also got the price for that, because I had made a present as well to Him, at the time of initiation on His hand! So just think for a moment, that the Guru has received money too, accepted surrender as well, and caught hold of the hand also! How then can the thought occur that He will not help us? What more do we require now! Can a Guru, cheaper than this, be ever available to anybody? Not at all! What remains then, brothers! Just be capable enough so that you can adopt the same method that I had done with my Revered Master! That ensures the world as well as the ultimate end being set right; and there remains just nothing to do about that. If even after having the Guru, there would still remain something to do, what benefit is to be there in having a Guru of such immense calibre? We could have got initiation from anyone of our own liking! At the most, the expenditure of one pair of dhoti (special Indian wear for the lower part of the body and providing partial part for the upper part also, presented by disciples to typical Indian Gurus) annually would have increased! That too would have been added to other cares and concerns! There would have been no doubt, some loss, however, in case he would have stay put at our place, every day! But, when this would be known to us that he was this sort of Guru, we would have no difficulty to select a Guru having 365 disciples, going to each one of them for one day only every year! Now friends, all this matter of the end hereafter etc. remains just His (capable Guru) responsibility, for I have made my position clear, specifying, why I have selected Him to be my Guru! Else, there is no dearth of Gurus; and one can have anyone of one's liking as Guru! If the thought of securing pardon at the ultimate end had not been there, was He alone left there to be accepted as my Guru! When, anyway, it has come to be like this, there is no reason why (security concerning) the ultimate end (hereafter) would not have come to my lot; and when the case is like this,

there seems no reason why I should not make my name shine in the world! Listen here, dear sir, what apprehension can ever be there for one whose ultimate end (hereafter) be got reserved! Well, apprehension should be there in the case of that one whose Guru be devoid of the capability (to ensure pardon at the ultimate end hereafter), and the saying just goes, 'if You (Guru or God) are able to take me across the ocean of suffering and becoming without any devotion (on my part), then that is to be real taking (me) across by You indeed' (famous Hindi quote)! I moreover have even love for Him. Let someone just utter a preliminary alphabet disrespectful to Him (Guru); and my heavy club will be found breaking that (disrespectful) person's skull! What better example of love can be there than giving heavy blow with a club on the head just on hearing something disrespectful uttered by that fellow ? I understand, there can be no better pattern of love to be discovered by the Guru as well! (Pause) "What had been desirable, was that self would have been sacrificed to such an extent as to lose oneself beyond recognition of self to itself. This would have been sacrifice of life, and that was love! What came to occur was that they adopted such self-sacrifice as to be just left with a deranged self. This happened so finely (in a subtle way) that the process went on and on. What was the result? You yourself just observe and note that only self-remained and sacrifice was lost. What does that mean? Selfhood was retained while SELF got lost. That is to say: not only oneself but everything disappeared. All learning and training itself got lost. Where could be the question of attainment, when what was there could also not be retained? What now remained? Nothing except worldliness!

"Now listen to the story of self-forgetfulness! The meaning of the word will already be known: 'forgetting oneself', so that the remembrance of Master alone would remain (sarcasm). This has been brought home by N1 very well; and really he alone solved this problem, and demonstrated it to all and sundry! How he did it? Well; every work you do, connect it to the Guru! Just performed, and connected it! What happened? He just started sermonizing and working in the name of the Guru! Just say, whether, the matter has not been solved? Now whatever they do they consider to be that of the Guru; and the money that arrives, they consider

as their own! What has the Guru to do with that money after all? What has been given at the first instance (initiation) is sufficient quite a lot! He has no need for any more at all! Well, something is done; and really everything is done! My job is completed, and yours too; and the subject of self-forgetfulness also has got cashed. What remains now! Tell me now, what remains lacking about spirituality in me! Is there anything that I do not do or have not done in the name of Revered Master (Guru Maharaj)!

"What! You do not like such persons! To my mind, they are very good! The world takes just these things into account; and makes an estimate of spirituality just through this! Thus, to the extent that this thing is present in somebody, he/she is spiritually endowed to that extent in the eyes of the world! Why then, would anyone take the dry bones into account, wherein nothing is contained! No, they contain; and contain everything! That is just the one thing! How nice it would have been, that they had proceeded this way: the destination would have been easy to reach and the purpose of life would have been achieved; the taste of spirituality would have been savoured; difficulties would have got eased; perfect union would have been arrived at; longing would have come to an end; the destination of love would have been reached at; the whole purpose would have been served! How much to recount: everything would have been perfected!

"Who is the soldier of the field today to step in the dry valley of peace, by tasting there the savour abound and rising above pleasures! Such soldier of the day in the field - man of perfect courage - happens to be just one somewhere; and through his instrumentality alone, the fleet of every one finds the shore! Amen!"

22-12 1945

Revered Master (addressing M1):

"It is no joke that people leave responsibility to me. This fault is of dear Ram Chandra that he does not allow me to be sharp. Everything would have finished by now, if he had hardened his inner core of the mind and had taken a stiff attitude. Dear M1, what can I do! If you had undergone my condition, and merged in someone like I have been in Ram Chandra, I would have liked to see, how you could go against that (hypothetical) person's pleasure

and will! I am present in every hair, nerve and fibre, every hair root of dear Ram Chandra. Such mergence was never attained by anybody thus far.

The device can be only that he (Ram Chandra) may be made to flare up! This is possible when there is conversation face to face; and something such may come up as to make him sharp. In this regard C1 can be successful, because this condition is created by cutting remarks, which habit is there in him (C1). He can be victim of greatest harm as such. (Pause) The notes given at this time (last few days) are very precious. It will be taken down in the note book. The notes that I have given to M1 are to be taken down with respect to their enlightening essence, date wise. The rest of the notes together with these will constitute a pamphlet; and the conversation that M1 will have with them (S1,C1 and others) shall have to be noted down date wise. Tell them that this is the last opportunity; and thereafter all will be their responsibility. They should have no expectation of any move from our side thereafter." (M1 started on 22-12-1945 on the tour for a fortnight to meet old disciples of Revered Master Lalaji Saheb to convince them to accept Shri Babuji as real successor- representative of Revered Lalaji Saheb.)

31-12-1945

Revered Master:

“ Respected Swami Ji has very rightly said that I have really mortgaged myself unto you. This example will be hard to find. In my opinion you should take time off with effect from January 10, 1946 upto when I mention (in due course): may be it will last three months or less. That will be of much benefit to your heart and mind, because there will be nobody to disturb you during that period.

"I am telling you one thing, my dear Ram Chandra: your companionship is nectar, but only for the person who sees me as imbued in your entity. One may be made to cross stages by anybody. It is not the case, however, that anybody be able to do the job (to perfection). By "anybody" I mean my disciples who have got permeated into my Being. If you permit, I may add something more : companionship is dangerous also, but only for that person

who even seeing me in you, still wants to keep you under his thumb.

I do not mean that people avoid observing or acting: I have mentioned something very general! It is no doubt praise-worthy that this does not cause repugnance in you; but there is an effect certainly on your heart and mind, which casts effect on me. My condition too comes more or less to be similar. No doubt, the effect may be avoided if you do not act with patience. Dear brother, in case of perfect merging in the Master such a phenomenon does occur (essentially). My condition during life time was also just like that. These things teach great lessons! If somebody may happen to arrive at my stage and achieve mergence in his disciple like I have done, he too shall suffer the same fate. This is Nature; and nobody can restrain this. I am telling moreover, that in case such a disciple be taken to be just as needed (being taken in essence), there are innumerable benefits as well. You know, I am (now) beyond any state. What is there (in me)? The same that is in you (Ram Chandra). This has always been as such ; there is nothing new in it. No doubt there is something special to the extent that I have achieved mergence in you mostly and perfectly, which can hardly have an example (or illustration). Just possible there will be no example of this anymore; and if available ever, that is to be taken as God's Command (providentially ordained).

"Alright, that topic has ended: now listen to something further! The work of Nature now has been left solely unto you; and you alone are to do it totally - just now as well as after physical dissolution! We have entirely no share in it. So dear brother, be quick to complete the job. Work is still in waiting; and you have to do a lot. Just understand the point: will you go away leaving the world as it was at your birth, and as it remained even thereafter, and still persists to be? No, that is not to be so! You will go after finishing the work in its entirety; and will leave the lamp of spirituality lit so that the autumn wind should not be able to extinguish it! I too shall be happy to the extent that I alone can know; and what am I to say about you! This thing you will come to know after life time! Can anybody comprehend that the protecting shade of Revered elders (of yore) had come to the fortune of anyone? That is just your share! May God bestow even more on

you; and my remembrance remain fresh every moment! The blind ones are unable even now to see! The reason is just that they are sitting comfortable with their selfhood, having become themselves masters (gods)! It is not the case that they are not apprehensive: some are overtaken even by dread and some are even worried about the capital, that it may not get lost! Oh dear, do your job and leave the complications aside: whoever and whatever comes, just deal with that! I agree with R2 in this regard. As long as the camel does not come to the mountain, it considers itself big enough (famous Indian proverb)! Who is to believe these dictations (being given) to you, when nobody came to experience this state. It would have occurred; but the question is of giving the heart".

2-1-1946

Revered Master's dictation (in response to query by R2):

" N1 was the progeny of a leper in previous birth. He had a big family. At the end he had to reside at the bank of river Ganga, because his paternal disease had overtaken him. He was engaged in remembrance of God (recitation of the holy name of Lord Rama); and used to live on what was provided to him by others. Just this helped in the development of his good impressions (sanskara); and he was able to collect (in his fortune) what could thus be possible."

Revered Master:

"What do you ask (to know) about me! I was poor in my previous birth as well; and remained the same in this life also. My life, no doubt, remained pious; and whatever I got, I thanked God for it, and brought the children up. There was always reliance for personal maintenance on laborious and honest living. Attachment to world was not there; nor I ever had love to the extent of getting caught in the snare of affection for wife and children. I was never forgetful of His (God or Master) remembrance, so to say. Remaining that way for long the state of moderation came to be established in me. The expanse of becoming (phenomenal world) started seeming false. Love (Divine) surged up. Misery became tolerable. World appeared to be transitory. This is the description of my state, much before leaving the physical frame in the previous birth. At the end of that life, I had got established in the state, which in the present shape can be designated as 'renunciation'. Jealousy had vanished;

only remembrance was remaining. In that previous birth, my death had occurred a little earlier (about seven to eight years) than that in this (last) period of life. In that earlier life I was born in a Brahmin family; and the profession was agriculture. I had no Guru in that life; otherwise there had been no birth any further. One thing has remained untold, viz. when Divine Love was advanced to such stage, why I had to be born again! The point was that remembrance of God still remained upto the last moment; and due to leaving the body in remembrance, that itself brought me back to the world in my last birth, laying down the foundation for further spiritual progress. That (remembrance) was the only thing that brought me to the present state, and did not let me go astray. It brought me to the right path. The condition of Love remained the same upto the end; and by the time of old age Love had overtaken the entire being. There was equality in it, without attachment. You can comprehend it to mean that Divine Love remains uniform (or unchanging) so to say. This thing was there only in the last birth.

Revered Master's dictation continued:

"Your love had got scorched up altogether. There was no idea of loving or being loved by someone. To tell the truth, this was the extreme point of Love, which you (Ram Chandra) took up. The start of Love was the end of Love. This state was not revealed to anybody else. People should not imitate it, as it may be misleading."

3-1-1946

Revered Master (addressing R2):

"How much shall I praise his (Ram Chandra) brain! First of all, take note of the sentence starting with 'Good heavens!' What an easy method of transmitting to an unorganized crowd is invented! Minds of all be drawn together like ropes and established at one place. If this place is transmitted to with a firm will, minds of most people will be seen to come to the state of suspension; and being spared from this effect is impossible for anybody. The effect will be sharp in proportion to the sharpness of the single-directed transmission at the point fixed by one's own firm will. This is the first stage of this transmission. Now starts the second part: just listen! These minds which have been drawn like ropes and established at one place, if connected upwards, there will be subtle

effect on the thoughts of the large crowd; and if this current be connected to the still higher current, and such a connection be lost into the Ultimate Being (Zaat), and the power be got oriented therefrom, then in case the person transmitting possesses command, there will be possible danger of minds getting shattered. If an opportunity for applying this method be there, the person, endowed by Providence with such power, should refrain from getting oriented with full force of his/her status and will. It can be utilized to the extent of need. These are miracles, but masterly ones! Some one's vision would seldom acquire enough width to get a glimpse of these! This is a force that affects mind; its shape turns spiritual! Dear brethren, ask questions and have some solutions! This time will not be there again and again!"

***3-1-1946

Revered Master :

"I have considered all matters thoroughly (with full attention)"

Reverend Grand Master's dictation: "I have come emerging out of Ultimate Being (Zaat). Your Revered Master is present. All circumstances have got noted. The person who has no concern about this faith can have no treatment other than destruction!

"I have tightened up the reins: that was God's command !

"This has not come to knowledge of great and greater ones, what to speak of S1. Only a few very special ones know; and they are Revered Hindu elders. This will come to such a bloom as to bring Reality to light for everybody at last. Less number of people but well versed can do a lot of work. S1 has no capability at all to comprehend (real) experience : he could find no elder capable to verify (certify)! Leave aside any consideration for these people entirely: just take them to be totally unconnected to you! The number of Satanic persons is increasing these days: darkness accompanies light (necessarily). As regards snatching off, that has come forth by way of challenge, the reply to it is that veils are covering (their) eyes! Leave this affair (just) to me ! What conclusion did you arrive at M1, from this rude conversation? (On submissions from M1). The experience is correct: sublimity is evaporated and grossness is present! Man is said to possess power;

and this, one can enhance as much as one may desire! But power is not spirituality :for that spirituality the crux of the matter is that there can be no advancement so long as the rules and regulations concerning that are not adhered to ! Take just that to be their condition (status).

"When spirituality itself is not there, what sort of experience (imperience) and which kind of light (may be expected there)! The illustration of experience (imperience) there happens to be U1 who claims being surrendered to Lord Buddha by his Guru Maharaj ! Get yoked to your job. Give up relationship (with them). Whoever comes is alright.

'Time itself will provide proof enough as to what the disciples of those people believed (took for granted) was but a mirage. The lamp (to provide light) will be just this, that has been established. This is God's command. Time will come that light will be available from just here (only) : all others will get dimmed. Let time just pass by. Stories of elders must have been heard (by you people). You must be knowing what success could fall to the lot of saints and prophets during their life-time; and what shape (dimensions) it assumed later. You must have read about the Reverend Prophets (of yore): this has been the usual routine (way) down the ages!"

The words "heaps of bones" descending from above, Reverend Grand Master's dictation continued:

That is correctly said. You (Ram Chandra) have to clean up lots of thorns and thistles! Nature gave this condition (status) to you: there must sure be some reason for that! The matter of truth, in fact, remains that the shape of betterment in the work of Nature does not come up so long as the obstacles do not appear on the path. If you had been declared during the life-time (of your Revered Master), these things would even then have been there and obstacles would have come up: the work of Nature does not proceed but for these! (Pause) Tell M1 that he has done his job very well! I am pleased. Care a fig whether somebody comes (your way) or not: you have done your duty; and occasion arising, there is now adequate material to produce as evidence in response! (Pause) R2 has to do (now) the work that there is no assembly of associates with SI; and that it has all got dispersed! Just think, if these things

had been quite (so) common, why should this capability (power) have got stuffed in just one person? Why would things have come to such a pass if everybody had the (requisite) grasp (for all these things)? People here have got washed of spirituality: it would have happened just that way! Whenever a new system came up into existence, these things came to practical effect! By way of heart's satisfaction, I have made this much provision that dear Munshi Puttu Lai (Reverend Grand Master used to address Revered Master affectionately by this pseudonym) in very special circumstances about these matters can have required confirmation from me."

Revered Master:

"My Revered Master has so kindly permitted me to speak to Him: the burden is made light! My dear brother, give up consideration; and get yoked to the job (in hand)! Dear M1, nobody can now say that you did not make an attempt (to keep the whole lot united). Those people can also not say anything: evidence (proof of your sincerity) is there!

"Now, you, dear Ramchandra shall not restrain me (from having my way): alright, about SI, note down, I have relieved him (from my discipleship)! (Deprived him of my heirship due to being a disobedient son). I have already declared (of my intention in this regard). May be it is in some letter: I had to do this in the case of two persons (C1 and S1), and I was correct. I had the comprehension (intuitive knowledge) that this would have to be done; but (dear) Ram Chandra's expectations kept me restrained. I too observed patience this long. (Pause) I like that all dictations, given today, be noted down in the narrative of the trip of dear M1, and this pamphlet shall be issued in his name."

8-1-1946

Revered Master: "Nobody arrived at this softness (flexibility) nor anybody comprehended its meaning."

Revered Master:

"Dear M1, this subject (viz. liberation) has been turned very easy in our fold: simply the Guru will administer a push at the end, and the fleet shall find the shore! So the only thing needed is just to have a Guru! Then, (they think) it is to be the Gurus' self-

interest to get me (the disciple) liberated and not mine (of disciples) ! If your brotherhood grows large, and God forbid, this idea takes root, I think it is to come to pass like the unenlightened Muslim and Christian folds that Hazrat Mohamed Saheb or Lord Christ shall make the recommendation for pardon and liberation etc., and only reciting the Kalmaa or baptism was sufficient (on the believers' part) ! Dear brother, this thing is not that easy, why would people kick away kingdoms and roam about in the forests bidding goodbye to pleasures and luxuries. No doubt, however, that there is no harm if only the greatness and superiority of the Guru be intended to be established thereby. What I did not do during life-time, I am doing now: take it just my work that I have revealed the secrets threadbare; and shall do this further more. Nobody could understand. This is something novel: order is just like that. The minds of people in general have not remained capable of comprehending this. There is a vast difference between claiming and actually doing something. This is a condition that ripens very much later (at last) in the real way. Let me tell you what faith in the real sense happens to be : it consists in getting totally lost to oneself and get attached to the Ultimate Being (Zaat) in such a way as it may never get snapped. If this condition has got established in the real sense, liberation is essential and inevitable. Below this condition, there is less benefit to the extent of the short coming.”

10-1-1946

Revered Master:

"When God bestowed sensuality on man, why has he (man) to be held responsible (for his actions)? Intelligence too has been bestowed (to man); and just because of that he is said to be free (independent). What happens to be the subtle point? What is called pious intelligence? What a difficult topic! If I offer a solution, one may be misguided; and if one takes it up for practice, one may grow up to be a fool. Make observation and have the answer!"

11-1-1946

Revered Master posed a question:

"Alright, tell me why there is need for successor representative?"

Does Nature cease to exist?"

12-1-1946

Revered Master:

"I do not ask you to be away from the world, but only to live with God, in whatever job you have to remain. (Famous Persian couplet). If somebody has brought up such state in oneself, it means that he/she is (permanently residing) in the very state of prayer. The intent of remaining oriented all the time is that one has taken one's Master as Master and oneself as His personal (slave). Thus the relation of personnel ship (slavery) has got established. That person has comprehended God as God and arrived at the real maxim of personnel ship (slavery). Can this state be arrived at by everybody? Yes, but after a lot of habituations, one who has attained to this state, is in the sphere of prayer (Ibd). He/she has the right to submit anything humbly to his/her Master. Everybody has to come in this very form (garb/posture) at the time of prayer: only then prayer gets accepted (granted). This is the relationship of love which has been brought to the boundary of the Master, after having got rooted (firmly) within one's own bounds. This is the thread that after getting linked up once is not to be (easily) snapped through any effort to break (dislike) it. The destination is far off: this everybody knows; but remembrance (thought) is the thing to make it easy. Remembrance of the Beloved brings the lover closer to Him. The advancement in that direction remains proportional to the love brought up within the bounds of this relationship. We have brought this relationship with us. To develop just this remains our duty. You may say, this has to be developed to the extent that we always find ourselves nearer to Him (Beloved). This happens to be the state of prayer belonging to the devotees; and it gains strength only through love and devotion. This is the ladder reaching up to the Ultimate Being (Zaat). Just these ladders, who knows how many have to get linked up to be helpful in bringing us to that (Ultimate) limit! All destinations (stages of spiritual progress) are just within this alone! No particular time is fixed for prayer. Whenever there is inclination

(orientation) like that described above, prayer is to be started; and if inclination does not come up (automatically) it is to be brought up (created). Prayer is to be offered always to that Master, who is really the Master and worthy of being designated Master. Praying to one's Supreme Master with regard to worldly matters, except in some special circumstances, is foolishness and lack of mature knowledge. However, prayer to the Master for that which is or may be ordered (by Him) is legitimate (alright). This falls under extreme human civility and indicates that we are accepting Him as (our) Master from the (core of) heart and have surrendered ourselves at His support.

"Now the question arises as to what method of prayer should be adopted for the benefit of others. The answer is that those to be benefited be brought to that same state which has been created in oneself at the time of praying. How this is to be achieved ? It be impressed on them (i.e. the beneficiaries) that we are all humble personnel (slaves) and petty beggars, who are getting oriented in our own status of humility at the bar of Supreme Authority (Presence). He should surrender everything own before his Master and become subservient to the wave (of Master's will) or in other words submit all that is his own to Master, and adopt his essential form and get contracted from all sides to be oriented to that (Master's) side alone in such a way as to find the whole world dark and dilapidated, the remembrance of all be included in that one remembrance and on all counts (i.e. every hair root and every particle of his existence) only the remembrance alone remains. Just this is called Perfect Merging. (FANA-E-MUTLAQ); If a human being creates this state in him/her, I understand that person is to be taken as PRAYER from head to foot (top to toe); and every thought of such a person shall be exactly what is to be the wave of Master's will: "Whatever is to be shall happen through the wave (of Master's will), hence be dependent on that wave" (Hindi couplet).

"Such a person shall never get oriented to anything against the intent of Divine Authority. He will desire just what is to be Master's command. People are to be prepared for offering prayer like this. If someone has perfected this or got established in this state, then just tell me what may still remain (for him) to do except his remembrance (of the Lord). And what sort of remembrance?"

Just that remembrance which never is to occur. Bigger than the Big people went just pining for (hankering after) this, but could not get to the shore: only pining remained!"R2 asked for the elaboration of this State. Revered Master's dictation continued (addressing R2):"Do you, R2, consider this matter so commonplace that questions like the one (asked by you) are raised? If I tell you what is there (in the State of FANA-E- MUTLAQ), you will get bewitched with wonder. Alright, you yourself tell. There is limitless simplicity, wherein vibration, though formally existing, cannot be asserted as to be there. What to talk of (leave aside) sharpness (brilliance) and rise up (tiding up), you may say dim light (pre-dawn visibility). But will that be correct? Alright, give up (reference to) light, and call it darkness: will that be right, then? Not at all!

"Now what remains: the state which my dear one (R2) does not like; and dear Ramchandra is left stifled within himself (due to remaining unable to share it with you, R2)! What is that? Whereat everything ends; and THAT is arrived at, which is the source and essence of all (and everything)! Reality is just this that I have mentioned. Every stage comes to a close (end) here. What shall I say about still beyond (further). May God bring that time when it is revealed to all of you! Amen (Be it so)! (Pause) Now what does still remain? Ask them (R2 etc.) so that I may continue the dictation further! (Pause) To offer prayers to slaves (and servants), I do not consider it legitimate, I mean the powers which have been sent to be subordinate to human being, and (who) derive power just therefrom (i.e., from human being). The influences of times have weakened them (slavish power of gods) also!

"He (R2) has a question concerning philosophy of Karma (Action) as well. Many absurdities too have got included therein; and these are producing their own effect (separately) ! Hence there can be no answer to every absurdity issuing forth from human side. The reason thereof happens to be that you are in best thought today but tomorrow you may start entertaining the thought contrary to that (of today) and go on strengthening it to make it ripe. In such a circumstance, the responsibility for this shall lie on the same person who has entertained (and strengthened) that (contrary) thought; and that person will get the share accordingly (added to his/her lot/fortune). Cross (Rough) principles, no doubt,

can be told, which are based/ dependant on law of Nature alone. Just possible, I may have mentioned also (about this) somewhere: you may observe (and study); and then make inquiry from me about what may lie beyond understanding (comprehension).'

14-1-1946

Revered Master Dear brother (Ram Chandra),

what you are doing - all that is just Prarthana (Prayer) itself! Now in order to impart glow (polish) to it, you may adopt whatever way you like (choose). The chief concern is to have the purpose served. (Subtle) matters of deep significance can not be put forth in academic form unless these are narrated with the help of anecdotes (and parables), and illustrations are produced. That requires brain so that there is no deviation from the main purpose, and yet the subject gets fully revealed, which must be correct."

15-1-1946

Revered Master:

"I am telling you very special meditation.

One is to sit in any posture that does not cause boredom (disinclination). I mean that the posture should be easy one. Then the meditation: first of all, one is to have a firm conception (imagination) that the entire senses have got fully cleansed, and that all the sense organs of knowledge (Jnanendriyas) and action (Karmendriyas) have acquired their original (real) character. One should have the firm will that this has been done (achieved). This is work of one minute (to achieve the state). The purpose is that one should enter (the sphere of) the Ultimate Being (Zaat), having got fully cleaned. After this (in the second stage of the special meditation) one is to have the conception (thought) that all the five senses- vision, audition, olfaction, gustation and somaesthesia-have acquired merging in their real essence and that perfect character, which existed there and was the destination, has taken their place, and that one has developed (in oneself) that same form of character."

Further note to this meditation dictated by Revered Master:

"In case of somebody having something specially excessive (in comparison to people in general), that must be necessarily taken up along with (for cleaning). When meditation is over, one is to rise up with the same conception (thought) and supposition (imagination) viz. the needed state has been established beyond doubt. This meditation can be taken up by one who has attained approach to the cosmic (Kubra) region. One thing more has to be noted for future in view of past experience (what has happened often in these degraded times), I have to point out of necessity that every meditation as invented and being invented by people (everywhere) is not beneficial. Only that meditation will be correct which its founder inventor would tally; and that, is to be of the sort that has its communications from above (beyond)."

16-1-1946

Revered Master's dictation:

"Phenomenal Reality devoid of impurity (Nirmal Maya): Before the beginning of creation (world = universe), as Swami Vivekananda Ji Maharaj has stated, there was calmness, and nothing except calmness. That thing (original calmness) when descended downwards, brought its real character (brilliance, essence) with it. The state of that thing, which was accompanied by real essence, remains almost the same. Cover after cover went surrounding that (thing) one over the other on and on. You yourself had brought this about. The waves of the river had created an ocean. Many drops came together to form a river. What was real (essence)? That same point, essence or reality that arrived together (at the base). What was the foundation of the river? A few drops of water which fell away from the spring/waterfall and created the flow of a river. What does it mean? To that drop were added unnecessary drops so that the basic essential point got concealed and its shadowy form came to be taken up viz. that essence turned gross and solid."

"If someone observes something, always the concrete (solid = gross) aspect of that thing will come to the view of that person. If the observation continues unabated, there will be a time when the

concrete (gross) aspect of that thing will wither away and only its form will remain. If further effort is invested even this formal aspect will start vanishing. If the effort is still continued even this will wither away, i.e., whatever has gathered around to widen the original thing shall vanish altogether, having only that bare thing which exists there. How can this happen? Only when practice is put in to the extent that we are able to perform all jobs to the finish, keeping into view that essential element which has come to our lot. That view (point of vision) in which that essential thing has been held by you, is to be taken as the point of Prarthana (prayer). Just this is to be treated as the beginning; and the state (of the one becoming many) wherefrom you have emerged, may be said to be the first condition (state) of Prarthana (prayer), which will be found in everybody. When somebody starts this and if the point of the vision (of that person) gets fixated just there, its effect will start running over that gross object. By and by such person will come to the state that just that point (of vision) will remain in view and the seat of that person will get established just on that point. This is the initial destination. When someone is courageous enough to have arrived there, one should orient oneself through that current which lies ahead and has grown thick (gross) in the continuous process of flowing downwards. That point can be got expanded (more and more). Expanding does not mean making it swell like a balloon, but to increase that thing or power in it, which happens to be its essence. When progress therein has started and that gross (concrete solid) thing which is far lighter and subtler than the first (original) thing, starts looking dim and finally even gets withered off, then it shall mean that you have now secured your entry into that sphere, where the idea of growing dim still remains.

"Many shapes manifested from the current of the essential Reality. All these things have descended or come down from their source, spring or fountain. These things were not useless, but these were rather forces that started working in different forms (and ways). Those forces demonstrated their effect where needed accordingly. All these powers (forces), thus manifested (emerged) out of their original essence and demonstrated their respective effects. The condition of a child, as known to everybody, is that of total inability to move about at one time (to begin with). He/she

arrived and started rising, sitting, talking and running about: what was potentially there, so to say, started developing and full fledged human run was there at last." Dictation continued next day.

17-1-1946

Continued dictation from the previous day (16-1-1946):

"The things that were stuffed in the child at the very start, now developed to acquire separate forms. What was the essence? Just that single drop which fell to our lot, wherein were gradually included many things that I have mentioned as cover after cover. How did it happen? Well, through mother's habits and its effect; father's thoughts, ideas, conceptions and the way of training and education. Further still what was acquired as influence of others. All of these started their action by themselves, and soon established effects, and action went on occurring even in what was thus established. So, how much to narrate! Action upon action just proceeded on and on; and it came to pass to the extent that it was brought up to the state that there was total loss of the awareness as to how many processes were gone through. Now all these actions which occurred adopted a solid (gross) form. Now this (gross) thing (or state) refuses to budge by (any amount of) effort. It got arrested or entangled with itself to such extent that it lost even awareness of what had happened.

Things proceeded still further. He (the child or the original drop) witnessed the world. The way of living had its own effect. The style and way of functioning had its influence. Verbal exchanges produced effects. Events/happenings cast their own hues. Anxieties (worries) had their grip. So, now the shape of that (child or original drop or point) became something else. Now listen to (the story) yet ahead 'These things that had imbued it in the form of various colours started attracting particles synonymous with (like) their own. They acquired further polish! Just consider, what shape it originally had; and what it now has come to be! The point, drop or particle got suppressed to the extent that its original gleam is now nowhere to be seen. Not only this: the thing that has fully penetrated in you and to the extent you have imparted and go on imparting sharpness to it, action is taking place to that same extent of sharpness in it. The more sharpness is increasing, the

more effect you are attracting from the forces of Nature. Take for illustration the spring of water before the formation (creation) of the river: a few drops of water from the mountain behind it (spring) where these (drops) had collected, were trickling in it (spring). Now some help was derived from ice and snow and some assistance was provided by water, so that the number of trickling drops and quantity of water went on increasing, and the flow acquired the shape of fall. What happened (yet further) : it proceeded and onwards some water started seeping from this side and that and the current acquired bigger dimensions. Somewhere it filled a pit and somewhere else it emerged therefrom so much so that springs started oozing even out of it Further still the spring (lake) of water that had got collected from all sides was assimilated in it. What then, the flow went on increasing, and there (at the place of origin), since due to initial seepage the place and the plane acquiring water had widened, water started pouring forth in profuse abundance. The river increased to the extent that ocean alone may be the appropriate word for it now. Just mark its status! What the origin was and what the limit of development (at the end) has come to be! It has come to be what had been in the case of the child after growth and having been brought up.

"Waves of the river: The essence of the waves that are manifest in the river is nothing except the result of those actions which on mixing up and coming together on the way have adopted this shape. These waves are just those which people ultimately conceive as carnal wayward pleasure (ecstasy/bliss). This phenomenon occurs more during the period of youth in the human life, when most of polish and finishing has already got done. The state of ocean can be said to be there when the human being has arrived at that stage (come to adopt that shape) which is to be comprehended as the result of action upon action.

"A few important/critical questions/problems crop up. To begin with, why that thing (solid/concrete state) starts fading out, while fixed into view/vision leaving only the form there, which also finally withers away. This happens because matter has the power/ability/capability to see the material alone, and beyond that the capacity to observe exists only in the power lying ahead of that matter. Still beyond only the power existing at the very end finally

possesses the capacity to see and comprehend. This chain of the capacity to observe belonging to the power continues existing still beyond until the capability for observation totally disappears. There remains a lot beyond that even, which continues getting manifest in the form of ex/imperience. Then this also ceases to be, and beyond that even this also does not remain. What to say thereafter! Even remaining does not remain, and this too does not remain! What happens then? That which is negation and which is also the essence. Does anybody have the talent, capability, intelligence to comprehend this? The same one who has reached there! Even this is a mistake: we should say the one who is diving in Nothing and NOTHING. But, brother this NOTHING too is something after all. If it is not, why is it so described? Go on still ahead! Now there is no possibility to speak!

"Then the second question/problem crops up as to why does the current acquire grossness/solidity while descending downwards. This is quite subtle! However, now it has to be told! Alright, listen! Why does a human being suffer loss of vitality while jumping downwards, I mean from a very high mountain top and not just from a roof or wall? People will say that this happens on account of the gravitational attraction of earth. I shall say that the moment one intends to go downwards from the top, the heat of the thought of the person jumping down, gets used up downwards. In other words, this thing (heat of thought = vital force) receives a jolt and starts flowing down from that person intending to jump downwards. Just like this, when the current got oriented from above downwards, it is to be comprehended in that same way (as explained in the example of the human being intending to jump downwards). Solidity (thickness or denseness) means grossness (coarseness, inert dullness or insensitivity) which is said to reside in what is devoid of life.

"Now people may ask a third question (present a third problem) as to how can it be possible that the current of Nature be devoid of life! The answer to this is that all things have emerged from Nature. Vegetation, rock, mineral are all patterns (illustrations) of that same Nature; but are these designated as living objects? Not at all! Take just this to be the condition of that thing (current of Nature devoid of life or vitality). It is life in the

dormant (sleeping or dreaming) state. The human being through one's own actions gets connected to that inert, lifeless material state, and adopts identity to it"

23-1-1946

Revered Master's dictation:

"Elder Masters have given lots of explanation on Dharma (religion or duty or righteousness). I feel they have not left out anything. However, I am telling for understanding by way of elaboration. Just listen. A person is born to an agriculturist/cultivator, and adopts the way of life accordingly. He starts going to fields with plough and bullocks, and produces wheat and corn etc. laboriously. Just this way of life begins appearing as dear (interesting) to him, and he starts devoting time to the same. Apparently (by way of apparent ornamentation) he performed and kept on doing his duty until finally death overtook him and he went out of life and world. One duty he certainly performed, but the other duty remained unperformed. If together with this worldly duty, he had devoted also to that duty, which constitutes the purpose of life, would it not have added charm (beauty) to mundane affair of life, and both things, worldliness and other-worldliness, had run side by side! What was the shortcoming? He attended to what was apparent to his view. His vision did not go beyond that. How could it have gone ahead anyway, when he had found his mother and father engaged all the time in the same mundane affairs. He had no understanding to press the point so that the power from above would have started manifesting, whose deformed shape he had seen in his life. How could he have experienced that something was there even above and beyond, when he had seen that personal bringing up and necessities of life were fulfilled through the earning arising out of manual labour (of hands and feet) ! The answer to this can be only that he should have gone to that spiritual side even while keeping this material life into view, and that he ought to have developed rapport and association with some person who would have led him to that spiritual side. That way, he would have remained away from worldly dangers as well as made his life and world look better (beautiful)."

2-2-1946(Time: 9.00 P.M.)

Revered Master's advice (directed mainly to M2):

"In this age, the number of disciples looks like the number of Gurus (Masters) i.e., one can have as many disciples as one may like to have and the Gurus too are available quite cheap. This thing, however, indicates (is index of) a degraded period. Disciple in fact, is only the one who follows (in the footsteps of) the Guru : whatever the thought of the Guru shall be, that same would strike into the disciple's mind and whatever the will of the Master shall be, the disciple would feel inclined to that same. Inward compatibility with Master is the main thing. This is attainable through association and this alone brings one to that side i.e. proves helpful to arrive at destination. Getting oriented in a single-pointed way increases relationship (Nisbat) to the Master, I mean development of dense connectedness. Faith and conviction being there is the method to achieve it, to take the help of reverence is the way to it. How much to tell anyway! The sum and substance is that one should try. In whatever way it may be possible, the examples of elders for emulation should, be kept into view. The person who may be assigned just this job and the person who may be engaged just in this work, that person specially must have to keep oneself quite free from every unnecessary matter. That means one should treat those unnecessary matters like going to the toilet simply to ease oneself. The purpose remains to take care that while engaged in those unnecessary matters, there should be no jerk on one's heart. This is the hint. If habit to this effect is formed, that habit itself will manage to have its rights and privileges fulfilled, as needed wherever and whatever. What happens to be the outcome of all this dictation? That same dense and firm relationship (Nisbat) with one's elder (Guide or Master) be established, in whatever way possible; and all these (other) matters be made subservient to that same end, even though stated so briefly in the summary way. M2 as such should keep all these matters into consideration."

Revered Master:

"How to make the state, indicated by Swami Ji, revealed and manifested ! (Pause) S2 stands also relieved of my discipleship."

3-2-1946

Revered Master:

'The method used this time was unique. I like this method be given (taught) to all trainers/preceptors, who belong to me.

Method:

Transmission be continued directed to the plexus (sublimity), intended to be taken up; and it should be opened (awakened) according to capacity; this everybody knows alright. What remains needed is that such motion be created therein by one's will as to set up that material in it (plexus or sublimity) which would make it attempt blossoming (opening) by itself and progress in the same direction. That is to say that such power be created in the particular plexus or sublimity as may enable it to go on opening (blossoming) through its own courage and effort in the desired way (direction). This thing can be felt/grasped better through the experience. This method can be applied to every plexus, when that one alone be intended to be taken up; and it can be made to serve very many great purposes. This method will be very beneficial for someone who may have little time to come, personally to the guide."

4-2-1946

Revered Master:

"I have decided to relieve those persons of my discipleship, who fail to have faith on you as my successor- representative within the time limit fixed by Swami Vivekananda Ji, i.e., April 1st, 1946. I have already relieved some people (C1, 51, S2) of my discipleship. Those, from whom there is no hope any more, will be notified in due course".

6-2-1946

Revered Master:

"G1 acted upon the instructions issued to him. As such, I have set his connection to me right today; and joined it to Sahaj Marg".

Birthday unction of Revered Master (Lalaji Saheb) was celebrated today on Basant Panchami day (at Shahjahanpur).

9-2-1946

Revered Master:

"Yesterday night dear Ram Chandra put forth such reasonable arguments that I could not resist his plan. He made me return to Higher World at last, putting forward such (convincing) reason as to make me live there after having left it for work here sometime back."

Revered Master Together with spirituality, mind receives its air as well. You may comprehend it as if perfume be applied to something made of clay. If you break it open, only clay will be there! What I mean to say is that grossness of spirituality, which Lord Buddha has designated as dirt and impurity, be attempted to be removed continuously, to have the purity that belongs to soul or spirit. Everybody has suffered from this very deception of mistaking the dirt or grossness or perfume or air of spirituality as spirituality itself."

13-2-1946

Revered Master:

This state may be designated 'action lessness'."

19-2-1946

Revered Master:

"In the real sense, nobody among them achieved merging. I somehow pulled and pushed people to the stage of permission to impart training. People, no doubt, started deriving benefit; and the science/knowledge came to be propagated all around. To tell the truth, I had to lay down the foundation of this science/knowledge. Nobody could be found, to whom permission to impart training would have been given from that state, which happens to be the Essential (Real = Basic) Element. Things were done in haste. This is the answer to the query made by dear Ram Chandra. He confronted me with the point of fact as to why the people who were granted permission to impart training during my life-time happen

to retain defects so as to give glimpses of the faults of pride and stiff neck! Dear Ram Chandra quoted a couplet in Urdu: "Whoever happened to find a knot-piece of turmeric started considering himself as a shop-keeper!" I liked this couplet. This permission to impart training has deceived people. To some extent those happened to be better somewhat, who considered themselves lacking due for the desire for receiving permission. This pride of permission happened to be falling away from the real destination. What sort of love it is, which retains importance of one's own self! Dear brother, importance is not the name of grossness alone! That may better be designated as pride!"

26-2-1946

Revered Master:

"What superb things (training/knowledge/material) you (Ram Chandra) are getting! This point of view brought forth by Lord Buddha is very fine. The word 'vacant', that dropped in dear Ram Chandra's mind, is the translation of That State."

3-3-1946

(At Lakhimpur-Kheri) Revered Master (addressing new generation of Sahaj Marg practitioners):

"All of my hopes and expectations are now connected to you people. Be and develop into good and excellent practicers. The people belonging to my time, with a few exceptions, have almost all got trampled over. Woe is in store for them. They cannot get spared. Now there are expectations from the new plantation! Spirituality is not a joke; nor play (sport) for children! Steps are to be planned forward with extreme caution and care! Tendencies of mind (Vrittis) have to be controlled: putting them to bad use has to be restrained! The reins are always to remain in hand: more than what may be needed should not be allowed. Mind must be kept under command! There are numerous precepts (maxims) so to say, that keep being revealed automatically step by step! These have (their respective) remedies as well. That needs self-restraint: zeal and enthusiasm does not help. People may not take the words 'zeal and enthusiasm' amiss, (I apprehend). What I mean is that keeping the normal (simple) state intact, they get totally attached

(glued) to the Ultimate Supreme Being in all respects, in such manner as to have no awareness of it even to themselves. This means that the spices which are provided by the senses be left to their side alone, having no attachment to them. These things are to be taken as the swelling up of the river. One should have nothing to do with the flood; and remain unconcerned to the rise and fall of the tide, bringing these (things) to an end at last. One should proceed on bringing these things to end from the very start. One thing I am telling very fine and precious, to ward off everything (unwanted)."

Revered Master's dictation continued:

" In order to remove whatever be required that way (to get removed), the appropriate remedy be drawn out from the power-house (indication to Ram Chandra, successor-representative). The thought is to be firmly taken up that this power (drawn from the power- house) is running over that thing (needing removal), which has grown impertinent; and that it is now losing its effect by itself. For essential cleaning the thought is to be taken that the current sufficient for the purpose is coming from the power-house and that the undesirable effect is getting warded off and has got (totally) removed. Cleaning is nevertheless essential so that the real thing may not impart power even to the (undesirable) dirt and filth. (Pause) Dear Ram Chandra has discovered many points and who knows how many more still remain (to be discovered)! For that purpose, lot of time is needed. Very special characteristics concerning the points will be revealed; and these (instructions) will have to be acted upon.

There are some characteristics (things) to discover which, he (Ram Chandra) will require going in seclusion, because in case he got disturbed while expanding that (point under discovery), all of his labour will go waste. For example, he starts setting up the basic structure for weaving (the plan of discovery) and has progressed a lot (in his work) when someone comes to report arrival of somebody (to call on him), the thing being worked upon remains just there (incomplete), over and above the shock that sets in (as additional factor). As such, in order to ward off such things (happenings) he will have to go out (somewhere). These matters are not easy ! These are to be taken as scientific experiment, wherein a wrong

connection of wire means the whole thing getting burst up. Here every single nerve contains such forces as are capable of destroying the world. All these (materials) are present just within ourselves : turn them outwards and material inventions will start; while spiritual discoveries (inventions) will be coming forth if (these) stay put inside (inwards) ! The sages (in ancient India) did not maintain connection to materiality, or else they would have left those things also at high standards (levels). They worked on it only to the extent of the need; and then had to give up that also. These things are brought to your knowledge so that spiritual progress at high level be possible or effected by you; and everything may be used to advantage to that same end. One has to oneself take care in this matter; weigh and compare; and then adopt what is good and leave aside what is bad; or else get so much concentrated to that side (inward spirituality) that all these things (external affairs needing care, weighing and comparing etc.) automatically bid goodbye.

"What an easy principle that eludes comprehension; and this carelessness that avoids even attempting to ward off (remove) what is detestable and bad! The complaint (defect) is quite common that people run after the desires of their hearts, and like to continue just the same. My state may be enquired of course by those who may have observed me! There happens to be no delay in acquiring what people seek after! Delay occurs in removing (warding off) those defects and those causes that have degraded humanity to the lowest levels! For illustration, someone lame, cripple and decrepit be seated on royal throne. Will he get rid of his defects due to being seated on the throne and having acquired royal status? Take the case (under reference) just like this example. Beauty consists in everything simply attaining to that very real condition which is free from all diversities, and come to an equilibrium. Listen with full awareness and attention; and act upon (what is told). What if ruby lies hidden buried under thorns! Only thorns will be visible to eyes of the common people. The concealed thing (object) should be brought out (in the open). Everything should come up to be one and the same! Comprehend by yourself: I have told a lot!"

Revered Master's further dictation (11.40 am at Lakhimpur-Kheri):

"Just now I communicated to and received a reply from Reverend Lord Krishna. He takes you to be His progeny : as such you will now be able to converse with Him in that same status. He is very happy at your work. He is pleased that you have brought those, who lost their way, to Reality. The restriction that you were not calling Reverend Lord Krishna out of respect has now got removed. I order you to invite Him respectfully by way of prayer, whenever you need. You have my permission that you receive orders directly from Him or by approaching Him yourself."

Revered Master: This thing can even now be possible. Most ferocious beings (animals) can be brought under control."

(The reference here is to an anecdote in the life of Lord Buddha. A very cruel robber had developed the obsessive habit of killing people and wearing a wreath of his victims' fingers around his neck. Lord Buddha went to the dreaded haunt of the robber in spite of being dissuaded by associates and others; and converted him as a monk of the fold of Buddhist organization.)

4-3-1946

(At Lakhimpur-Kheri). Revered Master:

"M1 should take note of the special method applied to him just now; and make use of it. Dear M1, have I committed a mistake in structuring dear Ram Chandra as my successor-representative ? What do you think about it ? I feel that I have not at all been mistaken. He was deserving; and as such was structured like-wise. I challenge that anybody may just create (structure) such sharp (subtle and fine) divine wisdom (intelligence) somewhere (in somebody) that may be in possession of it. That was an order, which was complied with."

Revered Master:

"Devices have now got invented quite a lot; but every moment something or other quite novel is still coming forth ! This science/knowledge (of spirituality) is so vast that there happens to be no limit to it."

Revered Master:

"Snap off the connection of Pi just now (1.00 P.M.)." The order is complied with.

5-3-1946

Revered Master:

"Lord Buddha has given these broad hints, that have an effect. The external (expression) accounts for inward cleaning (purification).

It is just this benefit that ensures (issues) from rituals. Liberation does not follow (in the trail of rituals). For a whole life, people remain doing just that (ritualistic performance) ; and that too is right, because those in search of this (liberation) are very few. In fact this (adherence to ritualistic performance to achieve goodness in life and society) should be adopted in a general (simple) way. That is duty as well because this constitutes the (fictitious) way to arrive at Reality; or you may say, it is the staircase or step (to the destination). I have seen people absorbed in rituals (concerning good conduct) and consider God as residing just therein. The heat generated by the ritualistic performances assures them that everything is alright. If harm is dealt to somebody through ritual, then one takes it as mark of one's perfection! This is the extreme! The worship that fails to bring about softness (and humility) is useless. If all these things are performed by way of prayer, good results are to follow. It was just prayer that constituted the great foundation (edifice) of Hinduism."

7-3-1946

9-3-1946

Revered Master:

"The condition of M1 is now good. He is proceeding forth in the direction of the State of non-enjoyment.

The point taken up at this time was unique (virgin = unused = untouched) I am of the opinion that he will do well to take up just this (point) in old age."

10-3-1946

Revered Master:

"Tazkia-e-Nafsa' is to be defined as dealing defeat (Zak) to sensuous lust (Nafsa)."

Revered Master:

"Hereafter, my order is to be that you snap connections of those who are got connected through someone else as well. I will not leave anyone now who may claim to be included in the chain. People may remain claiming and proclaiming that way, however, but what does all that mean, after all!"

13-3-1946

Revered Master:

"Generally only two or three meditations should be retained (for being prescribed under a system of spiritual training). If some meditation (practice) be prescribed, under special circumstances, to somebody, that is not for all and sundry. These three meditations (practices) noted down by dear Ramchandra yesterday should be told to everybody. It has very often been observed that people give up practices, while engaged in them (getting bored after some time); or follow for four days or six; and then turn away (get disoriented). This has happened very often during my life-time ?"

18-3-1946

Revered Master:

"Revered Swami Ji has explained about this festival very well. The system (of customary revelry with coloured water on Holi festival day following full moon night in the month of March or 1st day of the month Chaitra of HINDU calendar) contained secrets of spiritual value."

19-3-1946

Revered Master:

"Dear Ramchandra, you need not work too hard : such work will go on automatically." Swami Vivekananda Ji : "Your thought makes a dent in the Ultimate Being (Zaat); and we abide by that!"

25-3-1946

Revered Master:

"Swami Ji means to say that whatever you have to ward off (remove), meditate (by way of having firm thought) that it has got removed (warded off). Just this is the treatment (remedy) for every illness (defect or disease)."

30-3-1946

Revered Master (addressing M1):

"How nice is the principle of Nature: when cleaning up is required (by Nature), some personality is brought up, whose extension comes to spread everywhere."

2-4-1946

Revered Master (dictation addressed to M1):

"I have already got my freedom: today he (Ram Chandra) has set my Revered Master also free! Just possible, orders concerning other revered elders in this regard may also be descending! Now, what happens to be the work for you (people)? Whatever four, six, eight or nine people are still remaining (together with you) should try to reach the high pinnacle of spirituality. People be encouraged to acquire (real) faith; structure and develop themselves; engage in preaching and spreading (real sort of) the science of the Ultimate (Brahma-Vidya) all around (everywhere). Notes of highest ideals from elders of highest calibre are continually arriving: attempt should be made to develop these very states (of high ideals) in everybody (first of all starting with oneself). Thousands of (past) lives have gone by: no more should now be allowed to slip away. Liberation is not at all something difficult: it requires just (the right) attachment of thought! Ask dear Ram Chandra, how easily he has got his purpose achieved (served) ! The methods that he has adopted are (really) unique (untouched = unused); and are just his own inventions, that he has been introducing step by step (all the time)! All these methods should be noted down and told to people (for being practised/adopted). These are (all) quite easy. Even when away from presence, he was never away from thought (of me); and even when together, he was never oblivious of remembrance. He

lost even the idea as to who was doing (all this practice)! Bliss, he felt in a way that it had nothing to do with comprehension! What was the essential method: all things had got drawn together into one (thing) alone!

"Dear M1, this thing (singleness of orientation) will often be there in an elder of real standard/calibre.

Just now, the easy methods used by him (Ram Chandra) struck my thought; and I jumped up (out of joy) I Such techniques will be rare to find (anywhere). Now, for one thing who knows whether these have remained there in his memory I Whatever may be the case, anyway, these are to be noted down for the benefit of others! I shall order him, that he would return to wherefrom he made start of his progress, and move on progressing through the same methods (techniques), noting down whatever courses of events (happenings) he would pass through during the course of his progress thus far I I think this will be a very great sacrifice for the sake of (benefit to) God's creation; and just possible, my work would remain at stand still for some days in the meantime! This is my blessing that there will be no deterioration in the effect that' has established in him i.e. in the air (atmosphere of spiritual refinement) that is existing in him, so long as some special order (from Ultimate Being) is not received! That State (of special order being issued) may be with a view to taking him (Ram Chandra) upto the most extreme stage, in which eventuality, of course, he will remain deprived of his present state (of established effects and existing air of spiritual refinement) for some days, anyway!"

6-4-1946

Revered Master: (Time: 8.10 A.M):

"When dear Ram Chandra was transmitting to the sage of Ceylon from the point (region) of Avyaktagati or Qudsa (point of unexceptionable Reality or Divine piousness), he was busy with Divine work and could not be aware of the transmission. When he was informed, he got oriented and sat down for meditation. His state enamoured him to the extent that he prayed for awakening (blossoming) of the point to which that condition (state) belonged. Since there was no order for that yet from Nature, it could not be done. The heart of the sage of Ceylon was so much captivated by

this state, that he started a fast till the point got awakened (opened). He is continuing that fast. Nature's order is awaited. The sage got oriented to his own Master (guide). There was order and also permission intimating that there is only one entity in the world (i.e. of dear Ram Chandra) capable of awakening that point and the needful can be had only on being oriented to him (Ram Chandra)".

Revered Master (Lalaji Saheb):

"I feel shy that such a great seer would speak like this. I order, as such, that you pull up the sage of Sri Lanka to the top (of the head). This, however, is not to be done all at once. Take him under your training. Communicate to him that you have received orders from your Master and, hence, there is no need of fasting (on the part of the sage of Ceylon any more). Patience, he certainly needs. (The words that my Master has permitted/ordered me were communicated to him directly; and he broke his fast in accordance with the command).

Revered Master's dictation continued:

"I am excusing the Master of the sage of Sri Lanka with regard to the fact that he has structured a capable disciple who is working to fulfil the needs of the world. Otherwise, I would have ordered you just to snatch off his spiritual state, and pull him down. The thing (point) is that there are standing orders from Nature that dear Ram Chandra is no more to undergo any tests. Why did he. put him (Ram Chandra) to severe test. It was my making that you came successful out of the test. His test consisted in asking dear Ram Chandra to transmit to him (Master of the sage of Ceylon). His idea behind this test was to see whether transmission was administered to him with the courtesy (and culture) that is due to the liberated souls! He was awe-stricken to find that dear Ram Chandra not only maintained (perfect) decorum, but transmitted to him exactly as the souls of Revered Elders in their pure form use to do, where no consideration of small and big is retained at all. Transmitting in this way is not known to anybody (else). When such was the case, why then was he (Ram Chandra) put to test, knowing fully well that there are standing orders from Nature that he will no more be subjected to any tests!".

7-4-1946

Revered Master:

"People have taken spirituality to be a joke: they consider it to be part of just the Guide's duty. For themselves they prefer to remain yoked to worldly affairs: at a fixed time they would doze in meditation and go away. Lives after lives have gone by : they have persisted with their fixed notions (pre structured ways). Nobody took care (enough) to give preference to spirituality; and treat just this to be the main thing (of prime value), gathering all currents (of thought) together to be directed just this way (to this side)! This happens to be the condition belonging to the people in general. They ought to have attached their hearts to this alone, enquiring after devices, unravelling knots and working onwards. The affairs concerning worldliness appear to be easy due to large part of time being devoted to them. Spirituality may also come to seem easy if the same part (of time and attachment) gets yoked to this as well ! Why after all there is lack of pleasure as derived out of real spirituality? That is simply due to lack of love (attachment)! There can be meditation for achieving anything, and in order to give up every defect. That (love or attachment) is the only thing to bring one right upto the destination. The easy meditation consists in not being oblivious of His remembrance for even a single movement; and this alone happens to be the easiest prescription. Techniques, helpful to it may, however, be also adopted alongside. Else, if genuine love is there these things will start coming up by themselves (automatically). Most of the time is to be engaged in this alone viz. thought or remembrance. This is that well tried out prescription that can never fall short of success. In case of worldliness mostly love is yoked to sensuous (carnal) pleasure; and this appears easy because hearts (of people generally) are inclined to this (carnal pleasure). If this thing only gets moulded to that side (spirituality), everything can be achieved. If herein love is yoked to that inexhaustible happiness (intoxication) which is not available to all and sundry, the same (effect) is to be brought about: only the yoking (utilization = application) happens (to be) altered! There, it is under the effect of those currents, whose sprouting remains coming out of the sense organs; and here, penetration into that power takes place, wherein force has been generated due to its bad

yoking. Only one thing has to be attempted on the whole! There is madness (craziness) in one, and human culture (civility = gentleness) in the other: this is within (the sphere of) duty, and that outside (duty) in the circle of impertinence! If this (spirituality) be set right, other things also come / fall within control. In conclusion, love alone happens to be the secret of success (everywhere). It (love) takes the aspirant right up to the very Ultimate stage (Dhura pad), and then itself disappears or gets lost (losing its own trail).

What is Love? Just the shadow of the Ultimate Being (Zaat) and the real essence of man (humanity). How close (at hand)! On coming in the light, the shadow fades off! To understand (comprehend) Love, just fix (establish) three stages: The first is what is generally available (everywhere) needing no illustration. One remains involved unnecessarily in every worldly matter (affair) without any benefit or even concern to oneself. One gets so much entangled (in worldly matters) that little, simple affairs cause sadness and even deep-rooted grief (and shock). On coming to (slight) relief, there occurs change (alteration) of state to the other (opposite) extent. The second stage lies above this - quite far above, it may be said - when care (worry and anxiety) does exist no doubt, active participation in work is also there, and one feels trouble and pain, as well, but the difference (from the first stage) consists in there being no sadness (weeping) or deep-rooted grief/shock. Moving still further and on climbing up to the third stage there is only the thought just of going on with work continually. Labouring hard and yet if the desired result is not coming (achieved), it is taken simply as ordained that way by God! on arriving at this stage, divine thoughts start and that attachment begins, which is to serve as the instrument of work ahead. Just proceed giving (administering) turn (that way) to it; and (simultaneously) moving (turning) away from that side (worldliness). Removal of this in the final way and according to need is the starting point of the purity of Love. The expression 'giving (administering) turn' is meaningful. There is a proverb (in Hindi) viz. a horse acquires glamour and becomes useful to the same extent that it is given (administered) turns (training). I have dictated this briefly. Just this thing developing slowly and gradually takes one upto the farthest end."

8-4-1946

Revered Master: "I shall ask you only to get oriented now and then to the Higher world." Dear J1: "Do include me also."

Revered Master's dictation (Time: 7.45 P.M.):

"I was silent. Now the decision has been taken. Merging of Lord Krishna in you is destined to happen! He has already hinted (30-1-1946). It will, however, happen slowly (by and by) just as I had obtained mergence in you. That process (of Lord Krishna's mergence in you) has already got started."

9-4-1946

Revered Master:

"The meaning of Swami Ji's hint is that Lord Krishna wants to bring you up to His own level."

11-4-1946

Revered Master:

"Reverend Lord Buddha means by this dictation to say that for the one who has developed the state wherein all happen to be one and the same (equal), there remains no question (consideration) of differentiation."

14-4-1946

Revered Master:

"Revered Swami Ji has given out the secret I"

Revered Master:

" I am completing this sentence: Swami Ji had to attend to some urgent work in the midst of the dictation. The person who has attained to the state indicated (referred to) by Swami Ji, becomes freed (liberated) even while remaining in (the physical) body. This is essential. No doubt that I bestowed liberation on people very often; but this is something that is not done frequently and everywhere."

30-4-1946

Revered Master (addressing M1):

"This too is my invention, how even after having given everything, one is to be taken still ahead!"

4-5-1946

Revered Master (addressing M1):

"So far as my telling about merits and techniques of dear Ram Chandra concerns, I have told everything; his personal capability, methods invented and used by him and the practices adopted by him have all been brought to light. Still, one very strong point remains to be told: he had got oriented to me totally and had attempted to merge in me entirely together with all the bushes and brambles (untoward circumstances of life and unwholesome characteristics of personality), which like thorns (painful obstructions and impediments to progress) get all reduced to ashes when the fire (of spiritual orientation and Divine Grace) is lit up. He tried to bring all these things to the State wherein everything gets mingled into Reality to be one with It. This was a Godly gift: no instructions were issued to him in this regard. People may copy this, if they like. This thing was confidential and not revealed earlier. I myself was the person to take care of (manage) it; now, I am revealing it. The veil of ego-emphasis (self-importance) was already in a torn state at birth itself: that proved further more helpful to him."

28-5-1946

Revered Master:

The spiritual status of the invisible sage incharge of the maintenance of the divine order of Nature (Abdal) of B.. was snatched away because during communal riots, he had helped members of one community against orders of Nature. B.. and S.. happened to be under his charge. Both have been taken out of his control."

29-5-1946

Revered Master:

"Put S.. and B.. under the charge of the Abdal of M., who has rendered good service to you. The circle of work for the fixed pole star (Dhruva=Qutub) of Madras may be increased, if he promises (to shoulder the burden of increased work). His circle (in that case) will be coastwise upto Orissa.

The circle of the Qutub of Bihar shall extend upto Bengal and Assam. Nobody is available at present in Bombay and Malabar. Gujarat and Rajputana shall remain in the circle of one person (only). Punjab, Kashmir and Sindh will constitute one division. The work of K2 will be covering United provinces. R2 will be responsible for taking stock of all these. There is an Abdal at B... Snatch off his status and authority."

24-6-1946

Revered Master:

"Illuminate Naimisharanya. Some corpses are lying there: only skeletons have remained. These bones belong to those pilgrims who had been to Naimisharanya for pilgrimage. I shall indicate to you. They were persons of good thoughts (and intentions). They have not attained satiation; and their souls are still hovering around their murderers. Reverend Lord Krishna is of the view that these (murderers) be totally destroyed : even a child (in their families) should not be spared. One more spot is there : I will indicate it then and there. The souls (of the victims) are to be liberated fully (unconditionally). Morality has suffered degradation, just due to these (so-called) perpetrators of religion ! One should never stay with the host- priests (of various descriptions) ! Some are no doubt good ones also, but it happens to be difficult to locate them."

27-6-1946 (Time 11.10 A.M.) at Naimisharanya.

29-6-1946

Revered Master:

"Your work at Naimisharanya has been (quite) good. Vakil Sahib (P4) was much desirous of taking you to Lakhimpur, but was not (feeling) able to ask you (to go there), As such, I sent you there. More work is now in store and there is no leisure (to stay more at Lakhimpur). The court is going to open (start working after summer vacation); and hence there is helplessness. (Pause) The condition at Gaya remains better not to be told! Snatch out an opportunity (to go there)! You have to go; and you should take care of Puri (Jagannath) also that same way (on that same tour). First Gaya, thereafter Puri and Nadia (pilgrimage: the place where Chaitanya Mahaprabhu entered the ocean at the end of his physical existence and his place of birth and work respectively). To Orissa you are being sent by Lord Chaitanya Mahaprabhu!"

Revered Master:

"Start the (work of) destruction at Gaya."

10-8-1946

Revered Master: "You imperienced this morning (8.35 A.M.) that a sage, at he has been selected for work (of Nature). Just at the time that his condition started, you got the imperience."

10-9-1946

Revered Master:

"By way of administration (management), I appoint N3 for training and satsang (spiritual assembly of aspirants) at K.. He should devote to his spiritual progress (sincerely) and bring benefit to others. I have made him capable of transmitting (to others)."

Revered Master:

"When he introduces new people to satsang (spiritual assembly), and wants to know something special for their training etc., he can enquire (and take help) from here."

21-9-1946

Revered Master:

"The Nature has now initiated movement to have no provision any more for caste- difference (division). This (destruction of caste system) will need strictness (to be achieved/introduced). There was no command of Nature to introduce caste-system. It was (only) a domestic arrangement (for convenience), which resulted in the establishment of separate classes (and groups/gangs). The Brahmins took away the major - share. At that time, they were deserving also for that; but germination (of evil) started just therefrom. Differences started (taking roots). Sects (sections) got set up and who knows how many creases came about. Separateness set in and self- supremacy came to be the chief point of view. The same developed with regard to other castes as well. Several sections got developed in each case, and the thought (consideration) of high and low crept in. Your amendment has been accepted only to the extent that the thought (and will) for total destruction of the supporters of caste-system be not introduced (taken up) with (absolute) firmness. The order was (most) strict: You yourself could have come into the orbit of its application. Everyone has not come down with (noble and compassionate) thought like yours; and bloodshed is necessary in the course of setting things right: there have never been achievements without this (bloodshed). Early and late (to have the order of Nature complied) is in your hands: we (liberated souls) have absolutely nothing to do with that. Have firm will (and thought) that caste-system is withering off; and to those supporters of caste-system whose dogmatism does not get withered off in any way, transmission for destruction must necessarily be made: no relenting in this regard; that is the order! These four (or more) castes were by way of administrative arrangement: take it to be (something) like battle-arrangement. After the war (battle) those arrangements and principles, which were introduced on the front, cannot remain operative later (in peace time/post-war period). First of all, you come into the arena ! Put a stop to principles (of caste system)! Introduce what may be applicable to you! This work has stayed to be assigned to you for quite some time. I am telling you (in confidence) that destruction

in case of those, taken up as targets, has started; and many homes have become devoid of (genealogical) light. This is not sufficient, however! It is a very big work; and (you have to) work hard ! Constructive programme which is to accompany it, must have to go side by side with it! Both are necessary and unavoidable !

2-10-1946 (At Lakhimpur-Kheri)

Revered Master:

"I kept nothing with me. There is waiting always as to when you are bestowed with something (more): weak body and limitless power! The (rare) example of devotion to Master (Guru - Bhakti) is here: they are lunatics whose comprehension does not work this way! Has it ever happened that the entire force of the Ultimate Being (Zaat) would boil up all at once? We have all been busy checking (controlling) Its flow so that It may not rush on to your chest all at once and cause you to start your journey to the world of eternal existence, hereafter!"

24-10-1946

Revered Master:

"The work of Ceylon is still incomplete: it is much delayed! (Pause) Surrender and perfect dependence on His will (and pleasure) is held to be the final state: No doubt, however, that its beginning and end happen to be just nothing (nowhere): it may come up just anywhere (and whenever)! It has been observed that elders very often started just here from (with this state of surrender and perfect dependence on His will and pleased); and this too has occurred that this thing came up (to pass) during the course of (spiritual) journey. Very often this fell to one's fortune after traversing some spiritual stages (of evolution): it all remains subject to one's courage and moreover His will (and pleasure) to bestow this (superb) state on to a devotee! (Pause) The sign (indication) of the quality of perfect poverty (Improvisation) happen to be humility, softness, inclination (orientation) etc."

9-11-1946 (Time: 6.30 P.M.)

Revered Master:

"Your father (Babu Badri Prasad) has said quite a lot, but has committed a little mistake in his statement under the present state of affairs! If this frame (of individual organism = Ram Chandra) now existing, had not been procreated by him, in whom would I have got merged? May God bestow such progeny on everybody! One more person is coming in your progeny. When ? Time (alone) will tell!

27-11-1946

Revered Master:

"Today at 8 P.M. Kundalini power (coiled serpent power) of R2 has come to awakening ; and some dynamic movement has occurred also at the spot of anal plexus. It is incumbent on him to take care; and not indulge in boyishness. Administering this sort of transmission remains generally prohibited."

28-11-1946

Revered Master:

"The Guru of the sage of Sri Lanka (Ceylon) is here now to tell you something." Reverend Master of the sage of Ceylon : "I am very happy that at 6.45 p.m. today the spot (point) of Qudsa (Piety) in (the case of) my disciple (sage of Ceylon) has been brought to awakening by the limitless (shoreless) compassion of your Revered Master. It was his eleventh day of fasting without taking any food or water. Ask (order) him now to give up fasting."

Revered Master:

"Look, one has led to two! (Demands are growing!) The Guru of the sage of Ceylon has requested me to make him traverse the same points (spots and regions) that I have made over to you (Ram Chandra) viz. those spots or states which you were and are being made to traverse in the course of the swimming in the (sphere of) Ultimate Being (Zaat)! I gave a fine reply that all this now lies in the hands of dear Ram Chandra, whom I have granted autonomy in all matters or so to say have annihilated myself into him. Only

a little control has been (kept) retained. As such, I surrender (submit) this work to you. You may call him whenever you so desire.

Revered Master:

"You shattered in one wink of eye the state which causes obstruction; and put him (Guru of the sage of Ceylon) in the shoreless ocean. I did not want such hurry. Alright, take care in future! He will remember; and it was the (right) time as he had desired (requested) it from me."

Revered Master (addressing those present):

"Dear brethren, when will you people derive benefit out of this state? The time is slipping!"

5-12-1946

Revered Master:

"It requires face for my successor- representativeship. Is there a soul, possessing such power as would enable revelation of every work of Nature onto him! People have taken it to be a joke! Whoever felt startled (woke up suddenly) manifested himself alone as successor-representative, taking himself as the perfect one. They considered the domestic culture to be remaining as simply domesticated with them (confined to the family alone), as recipients of all rights and as custodians of the entire wealth (of all description)! This thing does not come to the lot of weavers and stitchers: it requires a heart such as that into which I would have got accommodated (penetrated) entirely. Is such an example available anywhere? Sure, but only in one! Is anybody endowed with such ingenuity of mind? Is there any other example of sacrifice (like this)? Has any personality manifested as yet, in whom many coverings had got removed even before manifestation? Did anybody (else) bring such state with him, wherein Reality alone in its pure form be pervading through and through? Search about such items: only then you may discover as to who can be really my successor-representative! I know it for certain that this example will not be found anywhere except (in) you! Can anybody (else) except myself be proud that elders of highest standard have accepted my creation as their own? This share really fell to and

remains my fortune alone! The invention, made just now (by dear Ram Chandra), if brought to your knowledge (notice) in its real hue (form), and you are able to visualize it as such, there will be no illustration (example) of this available at all anywhere else! This invention refers to the vast circle which is designated Region of Heart, extending upto that beyond which only Zaat (and Zaat) in its pure form would remain, wherein alone, high and still higher liberated souls continue (their) swimming even after physical dissolution. It occurred to the thought of dear Ram Chandra, my successor-representative that this Region (beyond Heart Region) be taken up at the very start (first transmission) so as to begin its cleaning from the start itself and the power that is to be contained (imbued) therein, be introduced in it at the very first transmission. He put this very invention to practice (just now) : the benefit (beneficial effect) of this will be visible after some time!"

7-12-1946 (In the train on way to Lakhimpur-Kheri)

Revered Master:

Bravo, on such comprehension (understanding). May the secrets of Nature be revealed through you, and God's creation derive benefits (therefrom)! Thus far, whoever has undertaken (spiritual) practices, acquired success therein with great deal of effort and labour. They undertook austerities, t roamed about through dust, went (begging) from door to door, to get a glimpse thereafter somehow after lots of difficulties; and many (of them) remained devoid of such a supreme delicacy. This was because they desired to obtain (achieve) something easy through difficult methods (means) and contributed more complications to it (spirituality). What an easy affair, that lies so close, has escaped peoples' attention due to lack of (proper) comprehension! Methods have been invented quite in abundance for practice, but the heat alone has come to their part; and people considered it as being quite a lot! They mistook sharpness (fastness) and boiling up (excitement) on the track as spirituality; and just this curtain (cover) remained (persisting in between). They could not get oriented to the Reality; and stayed confused and exasperating just in their misconceptions. They had no awareness concerning Reality! Now times have taken a turn; and it is my good fortune that a personality such as yours has manifested! The facility with

which you have learnt (this subject), for others the method has been developed many times easier than that even! What a wonderful thought has just struck your mind (heart); and you have got the knot unravelled after all (at last)! That (marvellous thought) was that on coming to wake up suddenly out of one's busyness with worldly or mundane jobs, one should imagine (suppose) oneself to have remained continuously attached (glued) to the very same (spiritual) objective (all through) i.e. whenever one comes to awareness (of ones' inattentiveness to the spiritual objective of life), he/she should put emphasis just on that same side. Then one may observe the wonder (miracle) of this simple practice! Through this, all stages will be practically traversed! In the end there will remain as residuum just that, whereat we have all to arrive (finally). Then just rush into the same (ultimate objective of human life) and see the wonder (of it)! More next! This is just to enable the one who may arrive at this stage, to put (further) question to me! Just possible, such one may have the luck (fortune) of a direct vision by oneself! The philosophy (theoretical explanation) of it all, in case of need, you should yourself narrate (describe = elaborate) to people (who may need)!

22-12-1946

Revered Master:

"If during your absence, some associate comes here and sits in front of my couch (allotted/dedicated by you for me in your room) seeking my Grace, I shall be immediately present there. He/she may remain sitting there as long as he/she feels inclined. In case of excess (of the flow of transmission/Grace automatically), I shall myself go away from there."

30-12-1946

2-1-1947

Revered Master:

"Today at 9.00 P.M. H3 has been given full command over organic region (sughra): he is now in the sphere of closeness to God (valayata)! He will be assigned duty: R2 will keep watch over him! The Shahjahanpur-circle, hitherto looked after by the invisible saint incharge (Abdal) of Mathura, is allotted to him (H3). He

should keep his faith intact, and hold charge of his work: his first duty thereafter, will be indicated (in due course of time). Intimate the invisible saint in charge of Mathura, just now, that (henceforth) he is to look after Mathura only." (At 9.20 P.M. the Abdal of Mathura was informed and Shahjahanpur was taken out of his sphere of work. All this was done in the presence of R2;,and notes were jotted down in his handwriting).

13-1-1947

Revered Master:

Today at 7.45 P.M. a person belonging to the sphere of moon, who had been waiting for quite long, is initiated on my hand just now by dear Ram Chandra under orders (from above). When need will be there, and I will consider it right, others who may be deserving, will also be got initiated. This person will remain present and attend the group meditations. His method of training will remain what was adopted at the time of his oath of initiation."

14-1-1947 (Time: 9.40 A.M.)

Revered Master:

"Before some news (concerning coming events) comes to the brink of being revealed, round about movements (vibrations) start emerging/occurring therein (in the sphere concerning the news). These round about vibrations happen to be just what people consider to be troubles (untoward happenings or occurrences). I was in the Brighter world for the whole night, and am still there. The world is coming to the state of a peculiar pass : tangled knots have started manifesting. Some secret (esoteric) knot seems close to unravelling. The Western civilization appears to be ready to depart from its home.

Revered Master:

"This dictation at this moment has been to give you advance knowledge of many things. To tell the truth you have no leisure now. Work will be arriving (continually) : you can impart duties (to others) in accordance with your discretion. These are (only) hints, given to you!"

Revered Master: "I assign this job to both M1 and R2 together, to see that there is no tremor in the earth, while the destructive weapon (Boomerang) of Ram Chandra will remain at work."

Revered Master:

"You will be receiving instructions concerning work according to need from time to time. Both M1 and R2 should engage themselves with their work just from today. Their duty will continually be just this (what has already been indicated): there is no need of inquiry again (and again in this regard). Dear M1, you have dealt inattentiveness (in the work) : this sort of attitude should no more be repeated ! You are not responsible for the consequences: You just go on working (according to assignment)!"

26-1 1947 (Time: 2.05 P.M.)

Revered Master:

"Tell R2 that his wife has been established at 2.05 P.M. as prefect in the chain of Sahaj Marg System. I have accorded her provisional (conditional) permission to impart training. She will work among ladies from today onwards: she should start (working). It will be better that when she comes here tomorrow on January 27,1947, she should remain transmitting, just from wherever she may be sitting, to all the ladies who may be present (here) at that time. This day (Basant Panchami) is very auspicious day; and the Mission accords very great importance to it: I have, as such, fixed this day also for her to start training (others). She should start the work with perfect courage (and confidence): it cannot happen that her training may go without effect."

27-1-1947 (Basant Panchami: Monday: 11.00 P.M.)

Revered Master:

"I am of the opinion that together with this, you take up other trips also that are to be undertaken. You have to go to Benares and Gaya as well. The work at Gaya is of prime import (very important). To Puri, I shall send, if I feel the need. A big work, that you have not yet started, is that which I have mentioned in my notes (previously). Alright, by way of reminder I am making a mention (again) : that is the work concerning correction of the (ancient)

books (scriptures). That will consume a lot of time; and after you, there seems nobody who may do this work (adequately). You had made a start with Manusmriti: you got held up just after a few couplets (shlokas). Complete that work; and then take up second book and thereafter a third."

31-1-1947

Revered Master:

The Causal (factor) having been structured; the shape of manifestation accordingly got created. When body was adopted, whatever actions took place therein, these left impressions in the causal (factor) thereof. The body was left behind, when the time (for that) was there. Now what was structured by the body became the causal (factor) for the manifestation of the next existence (entity). Now whatever actions came to be performed through that entity (existence), these maintained the causal factor, so long as those actions existed and imprinted impressions in their own turn. This chain continues unbroken. We have formed (structured), who knows, how many causal (factors=bodies). One factor is the basic (material) cause as well, wherefrom the chain of these comes to exist. This can also be said to be the cause of bringing about the beginning (of the whole chain of causal factors)."

1-2-1947

Revered master:

"So long as some personality is specially structured, this thing does not develop viz. one may do whatever one may desire, and bring it back to the same stage (shape), in accordance with one's sweet will (as may be required)."

4-2-1947

Revered Master:

"Why is R2 afraid, when it has been given out (told) that even in case of a patient of pthisis, whose bones even may have suffered total decadence, spiritual stages can be got crossed over (by that patient) in such a way that he remains unaware (of spiritual progress) and feels no strain (and stress) ? No doubt, strain (and stress) will be there if one would like to test (and examine), because

(in that case) the condition will need to be brought up to the surface. Are these things that easy and so quickly bestowed ?

This is his (R2) fortune! To have it mostly depends on his sweet will; if he likes, he may get ready (to receive it). Ask M1 to enquire of him (R2) properly: there is necessity (forcing) and it is dependent on his sweet will! I am not A1 to say (promise) something, and hesitate later (to do accordingly)!"

6-2-1947

Revered Master;

"who says that one crosses some plexus without acquiring control over it? This science is wholly apart from grossness; and concerns rather that state which prevailed before creation came into being. This was the Real thought, which constituted the causes of the creation of the Universe, and manifestation of grossness (materiality). It is that Power, which can not fail to produce its effect. All elements, which formed the material of different bodies (organic categories), were present in it. If these elements be divided into five classes (earth, fire, air, water and ether) then each (class) partakes one power each that constitutes the cause of the creation of the Universe. What was there to begin with? Every part (class) was possessed of its special power (character); and inspite of possessing its own speciality, each part (class) had all the five powers concealed (congealed) in itself. In each part (class=element) all the five powers work together: only the power that is special to it, or/and the speciality that belongs to it, stays predominant in it. Thus, every part (class=element) has five sub-parts each; and all of these taken together come to be twenty five in the total number. This mixed up together constitutes the essence of the organic (or material) aspect of existence, whose residence is located mainly in the Pinda or Sughra (organic) sphere of the (human) yogic system of an individual. This is the state of Pinda (Sughra); and its subtle essence goes upto the Brahmanda (Kubra = Cosmic) sphere. Further still the yet finer (subtler) essence of what remains in Brahmanda (Kubra), goes upto the next higher (subtler) sphere viz. Paracosmic (Ulia = Para Brahmanda Mandal); and so on and on. So, this thing growing subtler (finer = purer) and yet subtler finally coming to be perfectly subtle or fine,

gets lost into the Real (Ultimate). Now the question concerning powers arises. The power that resides at one plexus will be found at the second, third, fourth and fifth plexuses as well! Then wherein shall the difference be there? There will be more fineness or subtleness at higher or latter part or plexus as compared to the lower or the former one. To the higher yogic part, only those persons arrive who have completed the earlier part lying prior to it; or you may say, whoever happens to be in need of it (coming up to the higher yogic part or sphere or plexus or whatever).

"On rubbing purity against purity, only Purity (Khuloos) will be coming up. The essence of that part (plexus = region) alone will increase, to which the purity (to be rubbed) would belong. As such, if the powers, that lie congealed therein, be put to work, be assured that the result cannot fail to be there! When Nature put them to work, the desired effect was there: before that there happened to be nothing except that. The subtle or fine thing has greater expansion. The point through expansion creates the shape of increase (in space). Take it just this way: you come up to this point; and then see whether the same forms (categories = shapes of things) flow or not, out of your individuality, that had flowed from the whole out of the wholeness. In reality one has to include oneself just in these currents! Can this not be termed as power? The sum and substance of all this remains only that one birth ought to secure one's release from the cycle of coming (life) and going (death)!"

13-2-1947

Revered Master:

"He (Lord Hanuman) had arrived in proud sharpness; and that was quite becoming his merging of a life- time in just that state (of unprecedented valour in surrender to the Lord). Just this thing had gone with him (at the end of physical existence). I have just now got his that capacity evaporated; and he has lost that proud sharpness and courage that was ' there in him. He has gone now with soft (and flexible) state! Sensuous lust was on the increase (waxing) in him. People were deriving undue advantage from him: at the time of committing murder, people used to seek help of that power (of proud sharpness and valour)!"

Further revelations from Lord Hanuman Ji: "I had no tail; and hence, nothing was wrapped on it. My will- power was very strong: I could demolish biggest buildings with one stroke. I had burnt Lanka with that gas from the ocean, against which Ravana had no antidote. This (gas) is available in abundance all around Lanka (Ceylon). I had extracted it through my will power, and oriented it to Lanka. Nobody at that time was a match to me in strength, except the Master (Lord Rama). If I liked, I could have upturned Lanka in one stroke; but that would have caused harm to mother Sita. Moreover, many other things, that were necessary, would have remained unaccomplished. So, I did not adopt that course (of upturning Lanka). How foolish to speak of Lanka as made of gold ! That is entirely absurd. It only means that buildings (structures) better than there were not really to be found anywhere else. Just imagine the size of Lanka (as a whole): if the gold available in the whole world be collected, it cannot be equal to that required (to build all structures in Lanka, of solid gold)! May be, a few domes could be structured that way! The palaces of kings contain jewellery ornamentation, and gold is also used in the buildings for decorative purposes. That was no doubt there; and in this respect gold was present (in the structures of the buildings in Lanka) in abundant quantity."

19-2-1947

Revered Master:

"The matter, oh brother, is quite clear: it is not possible that one gets close to fire and does not feel warmth. This thing will be beyond comprehension for anybody generally speaking. As such, it is useless to give more explanation. Moreover, nobody has any connection to it."

10-3-1947

Revered Master (addressing R2):

The will of Nature necessarily has its way."

To my query, Revered Master explained: "A chain or system having been snapped or shattered does not mean here that it has got finished. It means that you will give a fresh start to them in the capacity of successor-representative. The connection thus far of

those people who believe it to be established with Kabir Saheb, will no more remain now through the mediumship of anybody, but you will lay down its foundation, and it will be occurring through you. Connections will also be possible through you only. I consider it proper that R2 be permitted to impart training in this system through you. Call him tomorrow morning. Kabir Saheb has established dear Ram Chandra as his successor-representative. Now this branch together with other branches will proceed on precisely through you. In transmission there will be the same conditions wherein such forces/powers will be included. I want that Kabir Saheb be also included in my system. Whatever initiations will be effected in the future, their connection with Kabir Sahib too will be confirmed. Now, listen, Lord Buddha, Chaitanya Mahaprabhu, Kabir Sahib, Swami Vivekananda Ji, I myself and our J1 are all in one and the same chain. Connect all of our disciples, whoever they may be, to just this system. This as a whole will be designated as 'Sahaj Marg'. This will be dear Ram Chandra's duty. Take everybody one by one. I consider it better that the chain of those, who are not present here and are somewhere outside, be mended this way, after making all of it clear to them on their return here, so that they also become aware of it."

On 11-3-1947 connections of R2 were mended according to the orders. On 19-3-1947 connections of H3 were mended according to the orders.

19-3-1947

Revered Master:

"People will be committing a blunder if they raise objections about compliance with what has been noted above.1

31-3-1947

Revered Master:

The plan flashing before your mind's eyes for the last few days constitutes the foundations of that training, which you have designated as Centre and Central Region. Today is just the first day of starting this kind of training. You will come to know through experience what special feature is there in it, and how difficult it is to bring everything up to proper form. The first circle is reserved

for common people, i.e., this should be the starting point of spiritual training. Thereafter light will be available automatically for guidance and progress. Many stages are crossed over in this very first circle. Persons of approach up to the second circle happen to be quite rare. What to say about still ahead. This knotty problem has now come to unravel solution. One capable of imparting such training was simply never born, nor was anybody hit by this thought earlier. Sensuousness (carnality) is got over in the first circle, for which austerities are undertaken years after years. The organic region (Pinda) constitutes a grain of this circle."

2-4-1947

Revered Master:

"People are not practising with proper attention, that method which has been told about point B of earlier discovery. Else, they would have reaped great benefit. Those who have taken up the practice, would have derived benefit."

Revered Master:

"Dear Ram Chandra, I can tell you that such matters never came down into anybody's mind up to

There is no need of keeping secrets in the breast, because whatever you take away with you, is just lost to the world."

8-4-1947

Revered Master:

"Transmission for particular points and regions has very often been imparted and it has brought benefit. Transmission has been filled methodically and the benefit is also in the right way. Purposes were also achieved, and what was intended got performed. Elders continually achieved success and arrived at the desired goal. There have been continuous researches and discoveries concerning this, I mean spiritual education. However, when we come across a very superior system why should we not adopt just that superior method as our instrument for spiritual training and save time of so many years!

We start from the point of heart. The training of heart has specially been revealed to dear Ram Chandra. People should take from him clarifications for understanding about this subject. There will be many more revelations forthcoming in this regard, that will come to light at proper time. I leave this issue just here and come to the subsidiary parenthetical topic, which dear Ram Chandra has just now discovered. People will have to practise it as instructed. I am mentioning it briefly. There is no place lying vacant of the working of Nature's mind. Who is where, he/she has to work in that same sphere. If that is reformed, the whole of its field gets cleaned. Hence it will be better that attention be paid just to that mind by way of permeating it with that power which constitutes our Ultimate Purpose or destination. It is first to be cleaned in the best way together with the cleaning of its field as well that has already got spoilt. This method I consider to be most appropriate. At every plexus this very condition will prevail and just this method of training will apply everywhere. Either one may continue transmitting to the heart alone, whereby all points will remain deriving light, though there will undoubtedly be the problem of slow growth in this case; or else, after bringing the heart to some adequate state, other points, etc., which constitute real essence, be taken up successively."

20-4-1947

Revered Master:

"The work is increasing. Prepare workers. Pull the ears of H3 a little: such a big duty and this looseness! I shall call this to be your weakness. You complain that people do not develop the capability of direct catching. This is sure to develop if work is taken up seriously. This is a shortcoming. If people, while working, remain attentive to the heart as well, directions will start arriving in due course of practice."

27-4-1947

Revered Master:

"Just now, transmission is administered at the Anal (Basic) plexus of dear R2 for awakening it. This is the last point, which in our system is awakened very late. It will take three days to come

to awakened state. By way of precaution, light diet is to be taken for three days and he should remain coming to you continuously for these days. His coiled serpent power (Kundalini Shakti) has come to awakened state, and now is the turn for this anal plexus."

30-4-1947 (Time: 9.15 P.M.)

Revered Master:

"Happy tidings. The Ganesh (Anal or Basic) plexus of dear R2 has come to perfectly awakened state. I have taken up the Swadhishtan plexus also today: by tomorrow, this too will come up to its real state."

1-5-1947 (Time: 9.00 P.M.)

Revered Master:

"It is a matter of much happiness that the Swadhishtan plexus (prostrate region) of dear R2 has also come to awakened state. There is nothing lacking now as regards power. The anal plexus has come to full bloom, but a few transmissions will need to be administered to it. In fact, that remains to be set right so as to get yoked to divine commands that may be coming to it. Now, he (R2) is to engage in betterment of his Mission and in reforming his brethren: that alone is his job now, and his progress in future, will come only through that. I do not consider puja (formal practice of meditation, etc.) incumbent on him: he may engage in it or not in accordance with his sweet will. In reality compliance with orders from above alone is now puja (formal worship or yogic practice) for him. If in the fold of my spiritual progeny, a few more persons like this be developed and remain together, then just tell, whether Mission would have seemed dragging on at such slow speed! The power of the discs of spinal cord remains dormant, needing full blooming to some extent, which will be brought to awakening slowly by dear Ram Chandra in due course. These are the powers that are not bestowed on all and sundry. The method of this sort of training is known to him, Ram Chandra, only; and I have perfected him in his Ultimate condition through training of this stage. Otherwise, brother, there is no limit to spirituality, and moreover, it has nothing to do with power of spinal cord. No doubt, however, it has some part in it. All points of his brain have

blossomed: now, Qudsa or Avyakta Gati (Region of Piety or Undifferentiable State) is close by, but beyond that there are countless points, which have no limit or end. These end on reaching close to the Centre. His (Ram Chandra) method of training is really unique, which has descended unto his consciousness through experience. My dear one (R2), on that count, approaches the condition of the second circle. Beyond that there remain several more after crossing or traversing which, entry into Central Region in the real sense can be possible. To take by way of reflection (Aksi) is another matter: here I am referring to perfect real approach. Just see, what function your physically frail brother's association is performing! Functions and powers have given way. Courage for work is still there, and that is exercising its own effect on those powers and functions."

26-5-1947

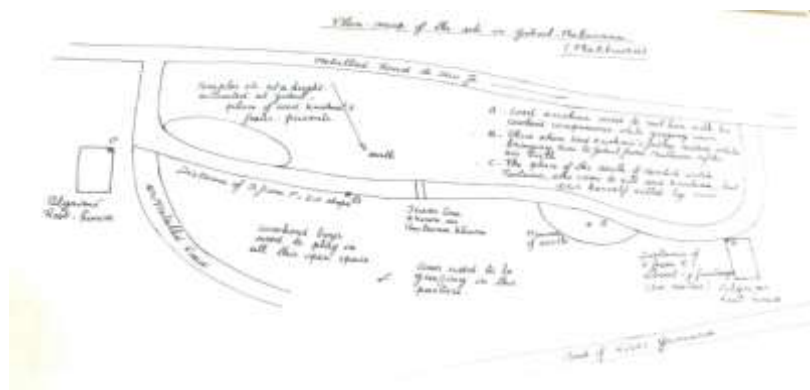
Revered Master:

"You were exercised and worked up anxious and worried about discovering some device through which one could obtain quick control over sensuality. This thought of yours was reverberating since yesterday. As such, God helped just now, and transmission was administered to 12 exactly as it was meant to serve that same purpose. This kind of transmission should be administered after a lot of cleaning. First a lot of cleaning of the person concerned is to be carried on from time to time. When cleaning through different methods is performed sufficiently well, transmission should then be administered to the effect that the whole state that permeates beyond soul has acquired perfect purity. Transmission should be administered with sufficient stability to this purified state beyond soul. When your spiritual guide's will ensures that pure transmission has cleaned the field, then the spiritual force of the person concerned be stirred up and filled up in the spaces of those cleaned up states. This practice should be applied off and on because human nature is just remaining engaged in something or other, and if the result of this has not become totally attached to God, some defect or other will remain being created by human nature."

23-6-1947 (At Mathura)

Revered Master:

"At Mathura, there are many places that have not yet been discovered. The line, wherewith Reverend Lord Krishna went away, starts just where He happened to be born. Towards west of the prison, there was a secret entrance through which He was brought to Gokul. The place can be discovered but it passes now through such locality, that has suffered a lot of change. As such, that line cannot now be brought to view for common people: it may only be indicated and even an outline of dimensions may be drawn up. Its correct measurement can be possible when assistance from the Government will be forthcoming. For you, this matter is quite difficult. Your Ancient Hindu history too has been wrongly drawn up. With reference to the so-called holy places at Mathura, someone discovered some place through dream and somebody else put forth his speculation as authentic, simply on account of his mental satisfaction. The places are numerous: if the State help is there for the purpose, every nook and comer of the land can be revealed. Even those places which have been blessed with the impression of holy feet, can be indicated. The map of Gokul, then existing, can all be given complete with dimensions and boundaries of that time.



That same can be done as regards Mathura of that time with perfectly exact measurements. Is there, however, anybody brave enough to publish these details after having got all of these discovered? Is there anybody prepared to pay the wages for this labour? If every proper place and every necessary information is to be discovered and made available, it will not take less than one year's time nor less than six hours work every day. Tomorrow, I

will indicate a place to you at Gokul, which has been wrongly discovered."

25-6-1947

Revered Master:

"My spiritual state at birth, whatever it was, has been described. I had brought my share mostly with me, so to say. The light (effulgence) concerning Divine (Godly) subject was existing in me quite naturally, which oriented me to the knowledge of Reality. I remained absorbed with that light which had been innate. The foundation of meditational practice started just there-from. Stages started being crossed. I remained receiving light from elder Masters of Yore. Whatever I performed, I did it at my own post and remained imparting fillip to that same delicacy which existed as something God-gifted in me. The glory of India always continued embossed on my heart and I remained convinced that this happens to be the place where very great persons, with highly advanced soul have taken birth. I remained also exploring these high personages through my thought. The highest personality that came to my view was that of Lord Krishna, who bestowed quite a lot of light in this direction. I effected many inventions too therein and changed the trend. However, I did not transcend where the great souls of India had advanced to. That means I maintained regard for those methods, adopted by great Indian Masters of Yore. Divine revelations used to descend on me. This was preferred because nobody with such capability happened to be born (after Reverend Prophet) in Arabia."

30-6-1947

Revered Master:

"I would like that everybody be assigned one job each and they be held responsible for that; and their hearts too will hold them responsible for their respective jobs. What I mean is that everybody feels responsibility by own heart. The new generation alone can work with enthusiasm. Older people be assigned important kind of work and Godly duties be assigned to those who are capable for that. To such people that work is to be assigned with special preference, but they may be engaged in other

important work also. Alas, you people are left in such a small number, but even then, indifference has not been overcome. God forbid, such a thing never comes up in our future progeny. My circle of disciples has already got spoiled: the mistakes I committed have all come to light! My courtesies to my associates and disciples have got amply well repaid! Although you people are few in number, I still assure you that in case all remain united together, there is no job that you may be unable to perform and complete. Moreover, there is Divine assistance with you. Only firm determination is needed so that movement (mobility = dynamic vibration) therein be created and this Divine Assistance starts functioning. A lot of retrenchment has taken place: God forbid, still more retrenchment even from this remaining lot may not be forthcoming! In case of the person burdened with a responsibility, the principle is that the person assigning responsibility also has to see to it and do something so that the first person is able to fulfil the responsibility. If a king would snatch away the privileges granted to some officer, that clearly has to indicate degradation of the officer and even the king's authority and the whole system and arrangement. As such, it can never happen that Nature would fail to equip that person perfectly with Its assistance, whom It has endowed with responsibility. Under every circumstance, I consider it better that work be performed in cooperation with all concerned, and help be sought from such person as may have attained approach up to the Ultimate State (Permanent Base = Dhur). I am leaving a note for the future generation in my line of discipleship, which is to be taken down in bold letters and marked prominently: **NOBODY IS TO BE BROUGHT TO HIGHER STATES WITHOUT BEING MADE DESERVING. IN CASE ONE IS INTENDED TO BE BROUGHT UP TO HIGHER STATES, LABOUR ON THE PART OF BOTH GUIDE AND DISCIPLE REMAINS INCUMBENT.**

"There can be only two effective methods: either one surrenders oneself to the Spiritual Guide like a dead body in the hands of the person who administers a bath to it (dresser), or else one may labour oneself, comply to commands and go on making oneself deserving to benefit from Master's transmission. People of second category can be available: those adopting the first method may also be found but quite a few in number. To tell the truth,

there remains nothing to do in case of the person who is able to adopt the first method in the proper way. He too, anyway is not exempt from compliance to commands; that remains incumbent under all circumstances. Dictatorship remains always effective, specially in matters of spirituality. Thereby I mean to say that the person on whom Divine commands descend has no say in the matter of compliance to such commands."

27-7-1947

Revered Master's dictation (for the benefit of h and others):

The bitter experiences of the world have oriented me to rely for my work only on those people who are to be builders of the life of the Mission in future and may be interested chiefly in it. My whole (spiritual) progeny has come up (proved to be) worthless with the exception of one or two persons. You (Ram Chandra) can also be included in that lot under certain circumstances, because I possessed limitless courtesy, and you went one step ahead of that even! Without taking the (characteristics of) ages and times of the world, you did many things, whose consequences have to be suffered now. One or two that had remained with you have also started saying good bye. If not two, just one may be alright! Was it your duty to stop me putting many things to effect? If you had not stopped me, the base itself would have got turned up. Has, anyway, your restraint been able to stop it from happening (coming up)?

"What is to happen must have to happen. You put such courtesy to effect as was improper. That brought ill fame to you, and first of all to me! We have finally to do just what is ordained! However, much delay one may affect, there will be the same destined (ordained) result in the end! To tell the truth, you interfered with Nature's work, which was not proper in any way. However, if one having gone astray in the morning returns home in the evening, he is not to be given up as lost, after all. My blood happens to be that, out of one single drop of which hundreds of seers and sages can be got prepared (culled out). This drop is endless! Was there power (courage) in anyone, to use the words for you, which, if used for that person, would be felt intolerable by him? As a matter of fact, your simplicity tortured me, to begin with;

and I had to be responsible (or your safety. Your forbearance left marks (impressions) on me through those never-told (unexpressed) affairs! What happened, just sealed his fate! Have you seen the result (of your deeds)! If you continue with forbearance, somebody may just have his whole existence come to ruin! It has already happened, but still your good supposition (thought) persists on! This thing should not be there, but will must be exercised - success always comes this way! How can this be possible? This just cannot be (like that). Nobody appears to be coming forth, containing mergence of so many elder Masters in him! What am I to do, however, when you, dear Ram Chandra, have finished everything even before arriving at the present state! Physical weakness became even more helpful to achieve this thing. Warmth and heat are essential to youth: this I have designated as the warmth of the sun. Even this, you got converted to coolness! How the health can progress then (under such circumstances)? Otherwise, somebody with such calibre would have upturned the earth (itself)! Alright, now forget what has gone by, and take care of what is to come forth ! Now, what needs be done, happens to be that all those who are fond of this (spirituality) should consider this work (of Mission) as their prime duty at least during your life-time and get firmly attached (glued) to it. It takes time to build up. When the wheel, anyway, starts to roll, the chariot moves on automatically. No doubt, the wheels have to be oiled necessarily; and for that some or other personality will surely be available.

[Here all reference is to deteriorating condition of M1]

6-8-1947

Revered Master revealed:

"It is a matter of thankfulness that dear R2 has received perfection of the second circle, about which some hint has been already indicated earlier. It is further a matter of gratitude that R8 has stepped in the sphere of mergence at 7.05 P.M. May God grant him firmness and may he move on step by step further! Amen!"

Note: India became liberated of British rule on 15-8-1947.

21-10-1947

Revered Master:

"I authorize you to control administrative matters concerning the Mission viz. whatever rewards and punishments, you desire and propose, shall be acceptable to me. Spiritual stages (to everybody) have been granted by me: I can revoke these as well, on your small (slight) Indication. The fate of all persons lies in your hands! If somebody falls away from you and yet desires to reap benefits - that simply is not possible: I have surrendered myself into your hands!"

25-10-1947

Revered Master:

"A respected elder of this dimension is difficult to find an example of. He had got his body renewed. He had transformed (changed) all particles of his existence through the force of his thought."

22-11-1947

Revered Master:

"Narad (mythical rover saint-musician of the community of gods, who is reputed to be the founder of the yogic way of devotion-Bhakti-Marg) was a seer who had become personification of love through singing and practising (devotional way to the Ultimate). This was connected also to the inner voice, into which he had acquired mergence; and had widened his sphere therein. Desires had bid farewell: he had taken quite some time. His approach and expansion too therein were upto the state of just that point which may be said to be a little higher than the lowest stage (point) of the Heart Region. So, you are correct to say that 'he was far below the rungs of this ladder'. If the word 'far' be dropped off (from this sentence) the explanation will be quite alright. His leap happened to reach upto a little above the lowest end of the ladder, or you may say, it was between the first and second rung."

Revered Master:

"Your book (Efficacy of Raja Yoga) has been verified by Reverend Lord Krishna: there is no need of correction. Get the language corrected (according to the requirements.)

22-12-1947

Revered Master: "I had warned earlier already about all matters. Alright let it be now."

24-12-1947

Revered Master:

People think that I am excessively kind-hearted. This is correct; but kindness is nowhere close to me when justice would be the need of the moment (required to be dealt) ! During your illness, just I happened to be the physician. It was punishment as well, anyway. Punishment was there as matter of justice, while treatment as physician was an indication of kindness. That does not. However, mean that I have in any way suffered loss of kindness in my nature. Punishment was meant to remove as a matter of necessity what dirt you had accumulated through your will.! need just one (supreme person) and also that all others remain subservient to his commands (orders). If that one (supreme person = Ram Chandra) stands waiting for others (reference to M1) to rule over him, then my very purpose (intention) would suffer defeat (withering off). This habit has, no doubt, brought good to you. You treated everybody as simply superior to yourself, even though he stood poles below you in spirituality. This, anyway, was necessary at that time, but not now. Revered Swami ji (Swami Vivekananda Ji) issued warnings to you continually; but you happened to be helpless in such way as to remain unable to follow these (warnings). I have already pointed out in my previous dictations somewhere that my spiritual progeny has all come up to be worthless, with just one or two exceptions. Just look at the faith of people: they would like to rule over one, whom I happen to accept as my own! I have given some demonstrations in this regard. Can it be possible that I like to give benefit to somebody and you do not feel inclined to it? Be sure, my inclination of mind will get shaped just the same way: and that person cannot derive

the intended benefit! This is a method and principle of Nature, with reference to which all happen to be helpless. I am telling the truth: if love and attachment to the particular person (M1) had not been there in your heart, then this rebuke (dealt by him to you) would have been very distasteful (intolerable) to me also. Not a single command (order) from me in this regard has come to be complied (by you); and these mistakes have all been noted down in the record of your actions (conduct)! What value can love (affection) hold for a sage: whatever happens to be the order, that alone is right (for a sage)! You have committed tremendous mistakes (blunders): that for which orders from Nature have been issued, you delayed its execution by twenty-four hours! Was this thing proper? Not at all! And the person (M1) for whom this treatment has been undertaken, just note his attitude: he always tries to have an upper hand for himself! That gentleman (M1) has the thought (in his mind) that since Ram Chandra has got secured successor-representativeship, he (Ram Chandra) has become his (M1) obedient subject (person to be ruled over)! It was never mentioned (by M1) that he received such state through the mediumship (help) of that source (Ram Chandra) !!s it not egoism? He has always been master in the matter of posing superiority. The person holding responsibility (alone) is taken to be at fault! Nature has no attachment with anybody and It (Nature) makes (develops) any person as its instrument. This principle has continuously been there. It was necessary for me to deal punishment to you for all these things. I have already stated (mentioned) that your mistake can not meet an easy pardon. Having heard this even, if that person (M1) had surrendered to you at least with senses (intact), he could observe his condition (state) then! He had no consideration (at all) for the haste that you undertook in his case. Is this the way of a gentleman? The punishment due to this has been dealt to him. He has lost liberation; and it can never come to his lot (now)! Here are so many things: some of these have been mentioned briefly. The person who has attachment to and love with you, take it that he/she is loving me to that same extent. You mean I. (pause) Tomorrow I will give dictation on the very subject that you and R2 were discussing yesterday in the presence of R6. Now you get your life regulated. I have already stated, and I repeat again that I have no consideration for right and wrong: you take it, as

you possess body and experience, that I will do just what you desire (say). Whatever loss I may suffer, I cannot shirk away from my promise! I do not have love so much for the Brighter world since you and not I reside there. No doubt, I like to see the garden (of Sahaj Marg system and Shri Ram Chandra Mission, Shahjahanpur) as refreshing and flourishing. During your illness when dear R2 had mentioned something about his wife, you had the thought in your mind to bestow the power (capability) on your brother (R2) to liberate at will whomever he desired (to be so). I have granted this; and this thing is now present in him. However, this prescription is not for use everywhere. Anyway, it will depend on his (R2) sweet will. I will tell the method (to him).

25-12-1947

Revered Master:

"Nature starts taking care of one who has surrendered oneself totally to It: the eye of that great Power (Nature) starts getting fixed on that person. The example of switch comes into effect: no sooner does the chain receive a jerk than the voice (sound) from the above (divine) descends! Persons of this (level of) love are scarce; and this thing is difficult too! So, we seek our Master's support; and moving backwards (proceeding on return journey) this same state comes up at long last. Some persons do not at all give up the reliance on the Master: they certainly retain this defect| At the end i.e. on physical dissolution (leaving the body), both (those who surrender totally to Nature and those who retain reliance on the Master upto the end) arrive at one and the same state. I had, anyway, adopted this very aspect (reliance. On Master) upto the end; and had advised you too to do likewise. When the force of will fills up the abode of dreamless deep sleep (sushupti) the current of Nature starts flowing."

Question:

"Sometimes applying the force of will does not work; and. on other times a simple nod proves effective: what and where is that point (of effectiveness)?

Answer from Revered Master:

This point has been discovered: it lies midway between the points A and

B. Quite close to it lies the abode of dreamless deep sleep (sushupti). Therefrom one line goes to the upper half of the heart, as shown to have two parts in the plan map.

In this whirl, a thousand boats got shattered (lost = ruined) so that even a Single plank failed to appear (come up) at the bank ! (Persian couplet). The Hindu sages have very often designated this point as 'Bhanwar Gupha' (whirl cave). The flight of their thought has gone to the part of the brain, and that has been supposed to be the Whirl Cave (Bhanwar Gupha). In fact this is the reflection of that. Dear R2, I understand, this matter has not yet been solved. If one point is said to be A and the other is supposed to be B, and since there happens to be no limit to this (expansion) without beginning and end, then just tell which one is to be designated as the reflection of the other!"

29-12-1947

Revered Master:

"Yesternight, you were exercised over the problem as to why people are not developing the state of burning and melting inside themselves! This is due to your defect: in fact, persons of real merit are rare supply in these times; and need to be prepared (to come up to the required level). The aspirant's capability to some extent, and the guide's own will- force have to be used to get the desired result. Your capability, in reality, is to remain limited (confined) just to you (Ram Chandra). Do you expect to find someone in your life- time capable of grasping (spiritual) training to that same extent (as you have been able to do)? My estimate is that even in the person who comes up to be your successor-representative, there will be need for stuffing (spiritual power) forcefully. Your state, whatever, you take it to have been developed by Nature for (the fulfilment of) Its purpose. The load of work on you, in fact, leaves no leisure for even small talk (conversation). Whatever has been stuffed in you, will be useful after (your) life-time. Your transmission happens to be extremely refined; but who is there to buy (value) it ! (Inward) burning and melting (intense craving and restlessness) are considered to be the indications of (spiritual)

progress. Your transmission flows from your state i.e. the condition of Ultimate Being (Zaat). You have developed such deep relationship (with Zaat) that you do not like to be away from it (even for a moment). This happens to be the result of habituation. If I had given a little longer rope (less strict control), you would have become incapable of imparting spiritual training, because this refinement would not have been experienced by anybody except those who happen to be at the highest pinnacle of spiritual progress. No doubt, there can never ensue benefit better than that out of this (transmission); and in reality, this alone shall bring about the fulfilment (of final purpose). But, dear brother, who will have faith in you; and who has the capacity to understand it! If I force you to transmit (generally) from lower points (centres), then the trouble that is caused to you (in transmitting from the points lower than your real condition) becomes intolerable to me. Further, there is one more trouble. As I have already stated, I have stuffed the entire state of the Ultimate Being (Zaat) at all points and in every pore (of your body) : that was my duty as well. When I was in the physical frame, there were limitations in me. There is a world of difference (like that between earth and sky) of the state at that time (during my life-time) and that which now exists. I have transmitted a lot to my dear one (Ram Chandra) day and night in this present shape (beyond limitations of physical existence); and the same condition is still persisting. As such, the same current (wave) is essentially to be there : I am in you and you are in me! There is no difference! Why then, such transmission would fail to flow from you, as happens to be present in my case? Inward burning and melting (restless craving and pining flexibility) are superior means of (spiritual) progress. If I hold you guilty (of anything), how can that be possible ? Alright, if possible, generally transmit from the point of heart! Truly speaking, whatever states are undergone by people at this point, during your transmissions, are real ones and effective! But what to do : there are no people to comprehend value and worth (of your transmissions)! If somebody takes only one transmission (sitting) from you with full faith, he/she would come to get acquainted with such states, as have been pined after by greater than great sages! Moreover, everybody cannot be deserving of the transmissions of the point, that my dear one (Ram Chandra) administers ! It is only your (spiritual) status

that makes it tolerable (for them)! You have grown cool to such an extent!"

2-1-1948

Revered Master:

"The ethics developed (worked out) by you, if observed through heart and soul, is capable of solving every problem. Some minor ordinary things may still remain, which will contain many items that you may not yourself be able to tell due to these being concerned with you and brethren belonging to your spiritual society. Culture, anyway, is needed everywhere: for that you may yourself fix some points and entrust to somebody who would be telling (these) to people from time to time. These will be based entirely on respect due to the Master. Everybody ought to fix one posture to be adopted without changing it, while he/she would sit in front of one's Master or respected (revered) elder, specially at the time of (group) meditation. Everybody should be attentively waiting for what order may be there. The other thing that remains essential is that one should consider fellow disciples exactly as brethren and treat them as such.

There should be sincere attempt to join fellow brethren in their distress. Service to fellow brethren should be rendered like what is considered proper to render to the Master. One should not be morose (melancholy) so far as possible. If an occasion for sadness still is there, it is to be taken that God's (Master's) current of (free) will is just like that, to be borne with patience and gratitude: this will provide solace. To listen to profane talk is sacrilege. If in some assemblage such talks be going on (taking place) as may not be really proper to listen to them, one should be away from that assemblage. For the respected (spiritual) guide (Master) it is essential to have a uniform eye on (attitude to) everybody: rain of good will (and benediction) should continue without making differentiation of one from the other. He should take suffering on to himself and render service to everybody both in the spiritual and physical way. In this regard, whatever duty the brethren of (spiritual) organization have with respect to one another, that same (duty) is applicable to the guide (Master) as well. That is to say that the guide (Master) is not to consider oneself

as superior to brethren of the organization, in any respect. One who is guide (Master), in the real sense, remains in this special state. If someone comes across something fine and good (principle or material) it should be immediately brought to the notice of the guide (Master). Love alone brings up everything to perfection. This happens to be just the thing that comes up to get automatically organized (by itself). All can be roped in through this alone."

Revered Master continued after a pause:

"I want that the meditation which I mentioned in my dictation on 18-9-1944 and which was referred to at the annual function (Bhandara) of Fatehgarh as well in 1945, should be introduced with modification as follows for compulsory daily practice. The meditation is to be on the thought that 'Divine Love is developing and faith is increasing through Master's mediumship in the hearts of all brethren of (spiritual) Mission and myself.' The meditation should end with the firm thought that this has actually been done (achieved). This meditation should be taken up exactly at 9.00 P.M. by everybody, just wherever one may happen to be at that time."

Note: This modification was introduced at the instance of I2. In reality Revered Master's intention was also the same, viz. that the process be carried on keeping the successor- representative as the centre (of the whole process).

Revered Master instructed further:

"I consider this as very important. Tell 12 to intimate this to everybody and write to R10 also. This is check-valve of the tap- (pipe): there are innumerable benefits, both spiritual and moral (concerning character). People need just to take it up for practice. There is one defect: everybody is indulging in laziness. Love is there, no doubt; but laziness does not allow (people) to do anything: what a big disease!"

13-1-1948 (At Lakhimpur -Kheri).

Revered Master:

"Brother mine, what to say of Gandhi Ji ! 'Irreligious' may be an appropriate expression! Have business- people ever done well

as rulers? If the same policy that Gandhi Ji proposes had been acceptable to Nature, why should the incarnation of Lord Krishna ever have been there? He (Gandhi Ji) has no awareness of Nature's will; nor does he possess the power (capability) to restrain (obstruct) fulfilment of the Divine Intention (Will)! His eyes have not yet got opened even after seeing so much tyranny Even though it may be Nature's intention (will), but on seeing (viewing) such acts of cruelty and tyranny, every (human) heart must well up. This I am not saying with any special purpose (reason)! Just see, anyway, and pay attention to social principles (of reciprocal courtesy) : that will make you aware as to how far he (Gandhi Ji) is right ! I do not mean (to suggest the attitude of) enmity : that should not be there for anybody ; but it was his duty to put off this excessive tyranny. He should have demonstrated strength to silence the other side: that would have caused increase of Nature's will (intention) as well! Alright, let him do what he may like: you should comply exactly to whatever orders may be there! Gandhi Ji has no power (capability) to control (improve) Hindu Society; and neither his ways (methods) are directed to that end! In this regard only that omnipotent Nature is to be effective, without whose will nothing can happen (be achieved), however much one may exert one's limbs!"

5-2-1948

Revered Master:

"Gandhi Ji's soul is roaming. It intends to go up, but cannot do that. Has it secured liberation? Not at all! He had attachment, to whomsoever it may be: members of family or people in general are both at one and the same level in this regard. There have been so many reformers: have all of them secured liberation? Not at all. This thing (to be a reformer) is quite easy. Read books; study sufficiently well; grasp the points; and then start working along a (certain) line. If the capacity for effective oratory is there, people will start getting convinced (and have faith in you). Just have practical experience with regard to something evil: you will find adherents (faithful followers) of that even. What happened in Gandhi Ji's case? No doubt, he spread aroma (fragrance) of freedom (independence) in India everywhere. People came to follow him; and the result was there, through (the force of) time or through (Divine) command. Anyway, the credit went to him. Did

he possess the power to do what you did at Delhi (about three years back). Alright, freedom (political independence) has been achieved; but who knows what is yet to happen (come). Nobody has any inkling of what still remains. That will be something to bestow freedom there on. Streams will flow. I do not mean man-slaughter. Some elements will disappear. The government will have to change direction. You people will again be assigned duties. Pakistan will raise its hood. Just see, what will be coming (to happen). The earth is yet thirsting for blood. Preparations are on, day and night in Pakistan, to strengthen its power and take the reigns of sultanate entirely in their hands. That would have happened if Arabia, Persia and other like states had been powerful enough."

Mahatma Gandhi: "What do you ask me: there is no satiation even after death. I remained devoted to the principle of truth, but could not arrive at the real home. Attachment was there: I remained just therein. True, there is hunger for liberty (liberation) now! There is thought of Pakistan somewhere and of home i.e., India elsewhere. At another time the concern about Nehru JawaharLal Nehru, first prime minister of independent India) is haunting. These are the things that I have brought with me. I implore to be rid of it all!

I was so involved that I ignored your letter as something casual. Nehru cannot rid me of my predicament (travail). I tried to rope in everybody together, which is against the law of Nature. I came to this pass! Really, the reigns (of such affairs) should be put in the hands of one who is spiritually enlightened, or else the one who may happen to be capable of serving the purpose through force of arms. Why does your eye of kindness not turn to me? If I had come to know of even a decimal part (fraction) of your status, I would really have snatched myself away from the work (job). This kingdom cannot last, if you do not retain it"

8-2-1948

Revered Master:

"Revered Swami Vivekananda Ji has revealed many secrets about you. My reference is not to your praise. About events (happenings), anybody has a right to comprehend anything. People have a notion of state of Avatar (incarnation) fixed in their hearts that by sitting (being) close to and receiving transmission from

him, one gets rid of (the effect of) sins and thus attains to liberation. Certainly, this thing was there in case of the incarnation of Lord Rama and Lord Krishna: whoever reached close to them, no doubt crossed the ocean of suffering. This anyway continues to be like that; and this thing remains attached to every incarnation. It is not, however, a joke to grant liberation; that is a different affair (matter)! Can anybody feel proud that this thing happens to be just in his hands? To tell the truth, making someone cross (the ocean of suffering) in fact - what shall I say due to paucity of suitable word - is the job for a school-boy! Real man is the one who would liberate somebody in the real sense! What if one is sent just after winding up, in which case return has to be there when rewinding (recoiling) process is completed. The real thing, so to say, is liberation! Shall I say - is there a man of the field who is able to do (perform) this (job)! Is there one? Yes, there is the one in whose hands Nature has put this (instrument): only that one can be like that! I must have to say one thing more, anyway: it is also against Nature's law to liberate somebody without making him/her suffer (or enjoy) the fruition of impressions (samskaras = accumulated tendencies or impressions of actions)! There have been persons in whom this capacity (power) could have been there; but they lacked expertness concerning eradication of impressions. As such they just kept quiet! Nature has really filled you up to the brim in this regard: it has bestowed both kinds of expertness on to you. However, my advice to you is that you use this instrument very rarely. Who will know and understand? Who has such capacity (for comprehension)? Oh, Alas! Alright, alas, because nobody will be there to comprehend this state! You will go away carrying this thing in (upon) your breast (chest). May someone (at least one) come forth to take this secret from you to the extent of possibility. I did structure; but only one could be possible (for me to structure)! The whole purpose (aspiration) of my life was just this! God just demonstrated that I could create one such a "Nothing" person! Brother, for such person, only this word (Nothing = Insignificant) happens to be appropriate: no other word fitting enough seems available. All should try to be just like that! May my (spiritual) progeny come up to be like that, Amen!

"People can mostly get startled at this word "Nothing" (insignificant), that such a word has been used for a "Mahatma", which means "Great Soul"! In my vocabulary, no word better than this is available for "Mahatma" (Most Reverend Great Soul). Just this happens to be his characteristic (qualification) ! These notes are getting (growing) so confidential that anybody can subject these to ridicule (make a fun or joke of these); and take it all as praise dictated by himself (Ram Chandra) ! I like these things to be limited (confined) to such circle, wherein people may learn lessons (out of it).

Revered Master:

"Dear brother, these things can come up in a person, who would be devoid of desire (longing) except for one thing; and whose every effort would get directed (oriented) just that way! (pause) The reply to the question (concerning way of functioning) is like this (here): even if you perform that way i.e., eradication of impressions (of somebody), you cannot be held guilty (suffering from defect) for anything. That (eradication of impressions) is just within your capacity (power). However, my advice is just what I have dictated above viz. not using it even if the capacity (power) is there. If there is order, never shirk! May some (at least one) man of the field come to you, who would take these things from you to every possible extent"

20-3-1948 (Time: 9.40 P.M.)

Revered Master:

The states (conditions = circumstances) of the world are deteriorating. I have such amount of work pending as I had never perhaps faced before now! Absence now encountered may be unprecedented. Indications of destructions have started manifesting even though slowly. Russia (USSR) has got its capacities and preparations concerning power amply sharpened. America (U.S.A.) is intoxicated with its pride of prosperity (wealth). There is depressive state for smaller nations (states); and scheming (to that effect) is also in progress. There is disturbance (around). Britain is regretful (for losses)".

31-3-1948

Revered Master:

"I am happy to find 12 in good spiritual state; but Delhi (destination) is still far off. Some blockade, say slackness or laxity, is there. That, he (Ram Chandra) will remove at will. Nobody could find out my secret for my whole life-time, except that he (I) happened to be a gentle good man (fellow). The aspirants (Abhyasis), even though they had love for me, could not get any exact idea of my status. Here too (in your case) I find the same thing (condition). It is truly said: the world does not see the essence: they do not have eyes! My blessings are always there with you. The organisation will prosper: better it would be if you see the fulfilment during your life-time itself. Slackness in people is developing in peculiar ways. People forget the work (duty) assigned to them, ongoing from here (out of sight, out of mind). Who knows how much I want to dictate (for being noted and acted upon); but I find no encouragement from them (people in your fold). Are the letters dictated by you, something ordinary (commonplace)? You are under terrible burden: mine as well as of your own house-hold! Is it not possible to spare 12 for this purpose viz-publication of books and arrangements (management) concerning that? H3 also should help (assist). Holidays are approaching close: I have the thought (concern) about the English book (Efficacy of Raja Yoga). What if things get published when these grow stale! Such laziness I have witnessed nowhere!"

2-4-1948 (Time: 8.00 P.M.)

Revered Master:

"What a nice question concerning devotion (love) and knowledge (enlightenment)! Suppose somebody dives in the ocean to find pearls and encounters the situation that whichever mother of pearl he looks for, just turns out to be spiral-shell, even though that itself would yield pearls: what will be the state (condition of mind) of such a person! How disappointed he is to be; and just possible, he would give up the effort (practice of diving), thus being deprived of collecting pearls forever! Knowledge (Enlightenment) is Purity (Khuloos)! The filled up (soiled) thing (mind) is inclined to filled up (soiled) thing (object); and purity (Khuloos) happens to have inclination to purity (Khuloos)! When vacuity (Khalaa) is

there, air finds the space for expansion. Suppose somebody is brought to where vacuity and vacuity alone would prevail even though there certainly would exist that, out of which pearl is structured: how far can that person be expected to have inclination (interest = Raghbat) for that place! Knowledge (Enlightenment) happens to be that, out of whose expansion and contraction, pearl is structured; or you may say that by bringing the pearl to its pristine (real) state, that thing is developed (structured) which happens to be its (pearl's) reality! Love (devotion) that comes of itself (automatically) without any effort, when brought to its real state, becomes knowledge (enlightenment)! Shall I say something more, brother! By bringing knowledge (enlightenment) to real state, there remains that which is sought after (the object of all search)! What I mean is, that on real observation and comparison, knowledge (enlightenment) and devotion (love) cannot be the real (object of seeking). That (destination) happens to be beyond these even; but proceeding through devotion (love) we arrive at knowledge (enlightenment), and that (knowledge = enlightenment) having come to real state, we find that which is real and just real! If we take up knowledge (enlightenment) first, we get away from devotion (love): when we take up devotion (love), we do not get away from knowledge (enlightenment)! Both Items are necessary to the worshipper (person in search after the Real), but In the following way: the worshipper (man of God) takes up (practice of) devotion (love), and knowledge (enlightenment) is bestowed unto (upon) him finally. This is to say that taking up devotion (love) happens to be the sign of worship (being one in search after Him, God or Ultimate). We have taken up (practice of) one thing, and the other thing is got bestowed of itself (automatically). When we have entered this thing (knowledge = enlightenment), we have arrived closer to that of which it happens to be the extract. Proceeding further, the Real and Real alone remains. I am of the opinion that devotion (love) should be taken up (adopted). There is no harm In taking up (practice of) knowledge (enlightenment) as well; but brother, that way happens to become lop-sided!"

4-4-1948

Revered Master:

"I like (want) to impart the best (highest) kind of (spiritual) training to everybody; but people do not get rid of worldly entanglements. No doubt, I am the deliverer from that; but the attention (orientation) of the practicant (abhyasi = aspirant) would need first be turned to that side (God). Even if one is not able to give it up entirely, one should at least have an inclination of mind to turn away from it. One need do something at least. How easy this matter is: one should turn one's eye away from worldly troubles and connect one's string (of heart) to that side (God). No system easier than this can be found. Here, responsibility is wholly dependent on the Guide (Guru = Master); and the disciple remains free! Only he/she (disciple) should not suffer from lack of faith, and should remain attached to Him (God). He(God) should be considered as included in every affair; and one should take oneself to be in obedience to Him (God= Master). When people need money, they try to befriend a wealthy person.

I very effort to please him/her (wealthy person) is adopted for practice; and when that wealthy person becomes pleased, people remain prepared to offer extreme service to that person so that rapport (relationship) would come up to such level as to fulfil every essential need. Just note what amount of sincere effort is expended for that purpose! If somebody proceeds just like this with respect to God as well, and is able to please Him (God), can it be not possible that such benediction shall rush down as may not be available with any wealthy person!"

7-4-1948 (Time: 8.15 P.M.)

Revered Master:

"I promise that if somebody is able to propound and extend this discipline (system) in South India, I shall liberate that person. Egypt will have to be taken up. That is a very ancient place; and it should come up. Your (tender) health is a matter of very great helplessness!"

13-4-1948 (At Lakhimpur-Kheri)

The method of (spiritual) practice for women:

Every female practicant, whether married or virgin or widowed should have the firm supposition (thought) at the point of heart that she is meditating on that which is pervading all (and everything).

Revered Master:

"I never came across any method better than this. This is really very useful for women."

29-5-1948

Revered Master:

"No human being is immune against trouble (misery): it is more or less for everyone. This is (human) characteristic: no worshipper of God is immune of it. The heart of selected elders (sages) anyway, remains calm (at rest) : just this happens to be the" distinguishing feature between human beings in general and those specially endowed. Bear troubles. One drawback is certainly there : pain (trouble) of the heart of a mendicant (sage = man of poor disposition on way to God) never goes ineffective. People have very often taken the way to jungles in order to find freedom from (worldly) troubles (and vicissitudes). In our fold, just these are penances (and austerities): just be in the household and bear with (its troubles and vicissitudes)! There happened to be really no customer of your heart in your home (family). Whoever looked at you, just treated you as an alien: that is the state of (your) household. All are growing without reins (unbridled). The pity is that the lap (of mother), in which you have been brought up, could not as yet comprehend your worth. Such a progeny (as you happen to be) comes as a matter of great fortune (luck), that has the world as well as thereafter in its (progeny's) hand (control = possession). This trouble (sorry state of affairs) has been there with everybody: no elder sage (Master) has stood immune of (free from) it!"

8-6-1948

15-6-1948

Revered Master :

"My heart has got baked up (ulcerated to the point of bursting up) on account of criticism. A learned person without practising nowhere earns respect. I am replying (now) to the criticisms, levelled by M1.

He may come down to the lowest limit of his (spiritual) condition. This is the point, where that thing exists (which he refers to in his criticism viz. having no self-pride at all). To explain this is difficult. This is the thing (extreme power of powerless submission) that does not fall (come) to the lot of all the sundry: only the special personality happens to be perfect in this regard. I did not find (see) anybody completely filled (stuffed) up in this respect : Some or other short-coming (defect) happened to be noticed in every case. If this (complete negation of self-pride) is achieved, nothing more remains to do; and such one becomes worthy (vessel) of those powers (forces), which constitute the necessary equipment for liberation. Well, these are distant drums; and it just depends on God alone to bestow this gift on a person of His choice. Our action should certainly be to try to reach the state: to whatever extent we may succeed will be well and good. For this, there are many prescriptions, but most effective (unfailing) is just what you had indicated to him (M1) viz. submission or yielding attitude to each other. People should adopt a habit for this thing; and make a beginning from their household itself! Zeal imbued with devotion should be there in the heart; and every duty be attended to: just see then, how love can fail to come up! Everybody should be imbued with just this faith! This feeling (in dear Ram Chandra's heart) is correct, viz. Nature, inspite of her masterly status, is standing submissive (surrendered herself to God or Ultimate Being or whatever).

If Nature had force (to apply), people would have no power to pass through that (force) to arrive at the destination!"

28-6-1948

Revered Master:

'The characteristics of a sage as enunciated by you (Ram Chandra) are correct; but nobody has the capability to comprehend these. I have liked this thing very much. If this characteristic mark is applied in the real sense, the scene of Lord Moses will come to view. This mark I have described as having the subtle body (of somebody) within sight, and then estimating the (spiritual) state of that person. This characteristic mark can be put to use by everybody.

"The above-mentioned dictation, I have given with regard to only your state. Tell C2 to study the subtle body of K7 (daughter of C2) now and then. Just possible that force may penetrate well in his mind. However, brother, he (C2) just does nothing. On getting oriented to the subtle body of someone, the transmission of whichever stage (point) gets on way (started) just that would happen to be the stage of that person (someone). For the rest I have already mentioned many matters (things = points). There seems to be no need for more. If you are able to comprehend, you may ask me (anything); and otherwise, you may seek clarification concerning techniques already used by you. I leave the choice just to you."

Revered Master

Continued dictation in reply to a question by C2, as to what was the way to get rid of the trouble he was suffering from, viz. his mind being haunted by supposed or imaginary or wish fulfilling intercommunication with the soul of medieval saint poet Tulsidas (author of popular Ramayana in Hindi) : 'The malady happens to be self-purchased (self-bought), and is the result of spoiling the habit of mind i.e. developing the habit of mind to be oriented that way. The methods (techniques) to ward off the malady can be just what you have already indicated (to him). You do not think that dear Ram Chandra is cooking up these methods (techniques) out of his own mind : these techniques are mine. Love has a good effect on mind; and that also can be (used as) a technique. Another method may be to consider one's entity to be that of dear Ram Chandra and just this be emphasized. Yet another technique may

be to suppose one's mind to be the mind of dear Ram Chandra. These are easy principles, that have been indicated; and these can be practised in the present age (times). Otherwise there are a number of more meditations and methods to remove (ward off) this malady; but those are difficult ones."

16-9-1948

Revered Master:

"Brahma Randhra (at the top of head where communication with liberated souls, elder sages of yore etc. is established) is a point; and this is brought to awakened state, opened up in the case of prophets (Nabi). When the need for entering into higher worlds arises, it is effected just through this spot (point). This state is not penetrated in every Tom and Dick; and this also does not mean that this is the whole thing: a lot lies ahead from there. Only one Personality at a time (in the world) possesses the capability to enter into other (higher) worlds. I have designated this point as Brahma Randhra, because one gentleman indicated this point to me just by this name.

"Nobody happened to pay attention, as yet, to the philosophy (theory) of Kapaal Kriya (the ritualistic custom among Hindus of breaking skull and pierce with a long stick the cerebral top of the head of a dead body after cremation on the pyre). That is the limit of thoughts. Whatever (subtle) still remains therein (brain) is to be better separated (released) from the (physical = material) frame (body). There is a force of attraction in the subtle essence so that on the roof (top of head) getting shattered that (whatever subtle still remained therein) becomes glued (attached) to the subtle essence; and one carries all in all, so to say, with oneself. This (whatever subtle still remained) goes along with those whose Brahmanda (cosmic aspect) is shattered at their separation from the physical (material) body (frame)."

31-10-1948;

Revered Master's dictation:

"Revered Master has disclaimed M1 and declared him as disobedient progeny (shorn of all privileges of patrimony). (Pause) You should not feel any remorse (compunction) on this account.

He (M1) dealt a double harm : to himself and to his grandson (K4). To you he could not deal any harm, after all, except a little increase in the weakness of heart! There is no recompense to this. Let him search benefit (of transmission) where he may locate its flow; and he may search for his connection. My progeny still remains: now through you, alright! In the family of Lord Krishna, only one viz. his grandson Aniruddha (son of Pradyumna born to Rukmini, principal spouse of Lord Krishna) was spared, who bore the geneology forth which is still there. You all (few disciples of Ram Chandra, present there) are my progeny; and this organization will shine in such splendour that people will take note of it. No destructive autumn wind can shake it off (Plan came to view)."

Revered Master:

"Just try to understand, brother! People will stand aghast with wonder (astonishment) if they happen to be aware and bring faith!"

6-11-1948

Dictation from Revered Master in response to the question as to how Laws of Nature came to be framed or formulated:

"What a fine idea has occurred to mind! It is something so easy but the sight of people never turned that way! The whole world knows that the world had a beginning. Thereby everything found a starting point. Now, suppose that process of beginning got perfected: what came to happen, then? Vibration: that is its characteristic, and cannot be designated as the law ! So, vibration started, alright! The worlds got structured to exist. For whom? Just for the residents therein! Now, you have arrived, there, and others as well! Suppose, you happened just to be first one to arrive, and all others followed thereafter! You will agree, brother, that a new-comer certainly (necessarily) feels surprized: a rustic does feel wonder-struck at the sight of an aeroplane! Can't we designate this surprize (wonder or astonishment) as vibration or the silent state of movement! Or, to put it differently, this surprize (wonder) came to be the mother of vibration. So, the first-comer wondered as to where he had arrived! In other words, so to say, he/she felt happiness in astonishment; and started thinking. Thought accompanies astonishment (wonder = surprise) as long as wonder

does not come to its final state. In that final state, revelation starts to the extent that worshipful service permits (makes allowance). Now, this has come to happen! The fellow lying in the state of astonishment (wonder or surprise) grew anxious for his livelihood and necessities, and his link got connected to that territory: the message of his condition, so to say, started reaching the farthest end! You had brought force already with you; and moreover, you had, as well, arrived in your pure (unalloyed) form: there was no attachment as yet, to the extent that it appears now to view. This thing with you was simply pure (unalloyed); and just on account of this, brother, much time was not consumed in this job. As such, whatever of your thoughts reached that territory, that very link in you provided for the germination and bringing up of the same. Thus those auspicious shapes and forms (categories) came into being, which were necessary for that job (livelihood and necessities for wordly existence). Now, if it is asserted that these shapes and forms (categories) were already there since much earlier, then that is to be wrong in so far as the shapes of the Real thing did emerge from the (pure) Reality and these started so perform their functions and (thereby) the result was manifest. Now, what is said to come after Purity (Khuloos), that just you will create because after Purity (Khuloos), there is just your entity (existence = manifestation). If some body insists that these shapes and forms (categories) too have been brought about by Purity (Khuloos) through Itself, then, brother, will it be wrong to say in reply that when no second thing was included Therein (Purity = Khuloos), where and how does this third thing emerge (therefrom)! There will be Purity alone out of Purity; and the state (condition) coming after That, whatever it may be, shall emerge only out of that same state (condition) which comes after That. Alright, Sir, the purpose of necessities has now become clear: you have created these in the sphere of wonder (surprise = astonishment), whose knowledge came to those forces that henceforth these have to function on that medium. In other words, you structured a base, so to say, on which the forces of Nature shall function henceforth. You put such provision in Nature for your needs, as oriented the energy of Nature onto that base or provision. This is to say that you made a current flow on, so that its presence came to be inevitable. In the broad sense, this thing became world-wide (all pervading); and just through this, many

such functions came up as to make the energy and forces (of Nature) start working from time to time to supply those things. That way, so to say, a surface came to be established, and everything began glimmering through it, and work (functions) started being performed. What was there now ! You made arrangement for every being with a soul, whereby energy in all cases too may go on increasing. You have, in a way, established a boundary beyond which these forces (of Nature) can not go (transgress); and just these became centre for their functioning (work). In other sense, this thing took such a root in these forces (forces of Nature) as to keep them ready for doing that work (performing that function) from time to time. This is to say in yet another sense that those (forces of Nature) became helpless to function in that matter or got engaged in performing those functions, and cannot go without doing that work. For them it now came to be a matter of principle to remain engaged in that work until you do not yourself disband your self- despatched material (object). Now, this thing has got provided for you; and a fraternity is established. Indulgence in mirth and play started; and your actions, now, began to be variously structured. You started playing every part, using every mask and adopting every hue unto yourself. Now everything different is taking root in you; every colour (hue) is functioning variously in you; every action is setting up its separate course; and every path is manifesting itself. Therein plants too started germinating, and grass also began growing; autumn as well as spring found an advent to it. Various categories started being formed; but the power (responsible for all this development) was subordinate to that single force, that was set in by you at the very start. Now, brother, all these affairs did start occurring, while you remained aware of the bare fact, anyway, that someone just from amongst us has made the arrangement to provide for (essential) need. Now, these affairs occurring under various heads must need be held in the grip of some Instrument. Now the worry for (the provision of) gripping instrument set in. In whom? Just to someone from amongst you, who happened to be too many at the time! Now, the thought came up that if these things went on continually, then another shape of this mirth and play can be that of weeping as well! So, brother, when this occurred, contradictory forms (categories) started coming up: mirth together with weeping - these

both started occurring! As a result of the mixture of (two) colours in each case, a third colour now started being produced; and all these mingled together adopted the shape of a mound : only God knows how many such mounds came to be formed ! The observer felt astonished as to, who knows, many inch mounds will come to existence in this world! Just possible, this whole world(Universe) be filled up just with these (mounds)! When the grass grew long enough gradually, some of it manifested in the shape (form) of grass and some else in another form! Some (variety of it) developed a sharp edge, to the extent that somebody's skirt started being chopped off by it; and someone else sustained an injury on one's finger through that (grass). The gardener became worried (anxious) that in case these conditions (situations) prevailed, and there was no (adequate) pruning, these must cause inconvenience to every visitor! As such, the gardener started using the scraper and the sickle. The sources of trouble started being removed so much so that the jungle or fence, that had grown in that garden (grove) or forest, got cleaned off. It however, came up again. So the thought arose that it must now be all dug out right up to its roots. He (gardener) started removing it with the scraper; and dug it out quite a lot, even cleaning off upto the root! However, he comes to notice that rains fell from the clouds (sky); and who knows what scrap particle was left where, so that the grass and all else again came up to be just as it had been (there earlier) in the garden! It came to be comprehended, then, that its seed in some form or other, has got sown in that soil! So the poor fellow (gardener) remained toiling as a result of which everything gets cleaned off and the grounds levelled for some time; and on the crop (of grass etc.) coming up again, the same process is repeated. Thus, now the hues (colours) and materials and mirth and play etc. built up by you and the mounds that have come up, have all taken roots in the seed form, so that, brother, it cannot cease growing up. The roots of these have got penetrated by yourself into the vacuum to which your Supreme Progenitor had provided the sky of wonder (surprise or astonishment)! To their penetration you started seeking your own penetration: there also you cooked your own mixture of cereals! You introduced amalgamated atoms (elements) into the pure object, (thing or j material); and those began approaching closer to the pure (clean) material (thing or object).

Mow, just tell, if the Founder (Master = Prime Builder) does not effect pruning (by Himself), will this growth not deal such injuries to everybody as may besmear them all over with blood! The observer's sight,] thus, reached upto this limit (extent). He (Prime Builder), hence, got oriented in accordance with the same principle that Purity can beget Purity alone, j and a wolf can procreate only a wolf-pup and not a lion-cub; and started pruning (the growth) just as the gardener, who happened to be only ai servant of the Master, had started doing (earlier) in the garden. Now the | Master's sickle starts operating, as a result of which the very roots (of undesirable grass etc.) received shaking jolts, i.e. the sickle came to operate on that mound whose root reaches upto you. When Master's energy worked on the sprout of the tree through the sickle of His (Prime Builder's) thought (or whatever one prefers to call it), then its vibration (movement) effected at the (other)end to separate (remove) it-a kind of disturbance which you can consider in the shape of an illness, so to say, brought up (created) to eliminate its physical (bodily) influence. Now, you Sir, built that path also which will ensure the pruning as well, of the dyers and mirth-makers, so that they suffer punishment too in case of excesses beyond limits. Now His (Prime Builder) energy is at work: it has made provision for you quite well; and it has come to such finish as to provide for no escape from the functioning. For every undesirable job, now, the sickle is there so that it effects pruning of others with sharpened edge. At this level, you have carved the impression too, to manage that everything does not develop so sharp and cutting that all remain just subject to annihilation (destruction) and people remain sustaining wounds thereby. Brother, now we have also noticed that the sickle falls from above for the pruning of unwanted growth of thorny sharp-edged grass: fear is generated! Fright is effected, after structuring which arrangement, people tried to practise restraint. Some fellow, anyway, adopted shamelessness as well, and refused to desist from indulgence in pagan (mundane) merriments: and such ones carried this thing just on their bosom. However, brother, falling of sickle and continuation of your work never ceased. They did not stop their pagan merriments; and did not eliminate the sharp edge of the sickle! They, thus, went away carrying mischief on their breasts; and when rehash took place, they created sharper embers

in themselves! Who knows how many such fellows will be there who have structured, not to speak of thousands but hundreds of thousands of shapes after their own models!"

21-11-1948 (Time: 7.15 P.M.)

Revered Master's instruction (addressed to H3) :

"You would have seen dear Ram Chandra's letters. Do you think their meaning to be something easy? Every sentence needs elaborate commentary! Alright, take easy expression; and then pay attention to it! The easiest thing I am taking (as illustration) ! In the letter to C2 sent on November 18 recently, he (Ram Chandra) has written: 'My state, whatever is before you, happens to be the miracle wrought by the state of that Revered Elder, who has loved me!' Does it not emit the fragrance of beloved ship ? How much refined character is concealed behind this taking the other one to be the lover! Further, it will require pages after pages to comment on the expression: This happens to be the miracle wrought by the state of that Revered Elder!' This sentence has been set so finely that it indicates in what way the omnipotent (perfect) Nature is waving up in the servant (slave = devotee)! When a wizard (magician) structures a (magical) trick, in reality, he alone works through it. The trick fabricated by him contains just his expansion: flow of just his intelligence, current of just his thoughts, everything conceived just by him! Now tell, what has remained there that does not provide evidence for just his expansion! Now, miracle can be in the form of some magical feat etc.; but here he has noted down something else: miracle of the state! The state can be just that which came to me after sufficient development! Now, - the miracle of the state can be only that the same thing pervades in refined (subtle = sublime) condition! If this has happened, then servanthood (devotee ship) too remains established, and the present (reward) also is achieved! Reality as well is there in as far as the thing whose reflection came (fell) on him, had developed adequately! Yes, however, remember this etiquette; and never bid goodbye to it, even if man (aspirant) would reach the final extreme (Dhura) Itself! This etiquette alone structures the status of servanthood (worshipful devotion) ahead. Still ahead this affair of etiquette is retained. This whole letter is full of refined character

One phrase 'what has Majnoon (classical Arabian lover of Laila) to do with God' is evidence of his (Ram Chandra's) bold vision!"

13-1-1949

15-3-1949 (Time: 8.30 P.M.)

3-4-1949

5-4-1949 (At Gaya - Time: 8.30 A.M.)

Revered Master:

"There is a lot of work at Gaya. Take rest today. The work will start in the morning tomorrow. There is sufficient time at your disposal!"

6-4-1949

Revered Master:

This is not ordinary work: it is a job requiring much labour! These kinds of ritualistic practices, that have come to be prevalent among Hindus, are responsible for defamation of the religion. You have to eliminate all of it: if you want, you may create the circumstance so that useless, absurd and unwanted elements get finished or destroyed. When God has submitted this work to your hands, you have to leave this town only after finishing (completing) this job! There is no need of purifying Gaya: the system prevailing here, should stand entirely wiped off!"

Revered Master:

"Do exactly what Reverend Lord Buddha has instructed you; but I do not permit this -'do not leave anything lacking'. If this little piece (of instruction) is implemented exactly (literally), the nerve-centres, in the brains of those who go there, will start bursting (getting shattered)!"

Revered Master:

"Your work today has been good. Proceed on with the work of Nadia also little by little!"

7-4-1949

Revered Master:

"Dear Ram Chandra, great sages are vacating their respective offices!"

Revered Master :

"Take down one thing more. This benediction is of Lord Chaitanya Mahaprabhu; and probably never came to be bestowed unto anybody with a soul! It is written (in scriptures) that remembering God at the time of death is beneficial. Is it not possible that you be remembered at that time (death) to derive the same benefit? It is different matter whether it happens or not! I am telling that utmost benefit will be there!

8-4-1949

Revered Master:

'You're going to Egypt is necessary, brother ! No personality is coming after you such as may be able to complete this work."

9-4-1949 (Time: 7.15 A.M.)

10-4-1949

Revered Master:

"Many big (huge = tremendous) jobs have been assigned to dear Ram Chandra. None happened to be such as he may have found beyond him to complete! Now there is the affair of Moscow. This job cannot be completed without your working. God is supreme; and He can do everything. Such difficult jobs were assigned to you; and you completed all of these."

13-4-1949

Revered Master:

"On 12-4-1949, while you were on your way (from Gaya to Benares), I had assigned the work (to you): you are busy with that same work, now! Illumine every corner of this place: the bed of the river Ganga (Ganges) is included therein! This getting illumined, there will be great benefit to the (general) public. There is no need of taking up the temples in any special way. There is no need to

hurry up the work! See, how much Benares has been spoiled! You have not yet seen those corners which have the stink of corruption!"

14-4-1949

Revered Master:

"You have enlivened my name, brother!"

Revered Master:

"This Benares is the place, which very fine and superior sages have graced with their presence! Now, its state (condition) is this, viz. nothing but filth (dirt=gabrage) remains! What a turn of the times! Anyway, now this condition will no more prevail here as (that) your holy feet have touched this soil! (Pause) Having lost everything, I have found you alone, and two or three more through you! May God bring them to the desired goal (destination): your elder brother (M1) is, however, lost (beyond repair/reformation)!"

15-4-1949

Revered Master:

"Now there is no more need of transmission to Benares, or people will grow uneasy (become restless). This effect cannot get effaced from here!

Today, at 8.20 A.M. Kabir Chaura was made bereft of beneficence under orders from Reverend Saint Kabir Saheb. The beneficence emanating here from had already grown (dim) dull: now it is not any more there at all.

Revered Master:

"Reverend Kabir Saheb has put an end to his organization. This order came into effect as the glimmer of stars is not need in the presence of the sun."

11-9-1949

29-9-1949

Dictation from Revered Master:

"This utmost aspect that has been kept (reserve for you, I do not want (like) that you make it available to her (your wife) through your power: let her now do the swimming herself through her own power (force=capacity), to whatever level of progress she attains on her own. If you impart the power (capacity) for swimming to her with the thought (idea) that she could reach that (particular) corner, she will reach just there, after all ! Your mental inclination is forcing you; but I am prohibiting it! Liberation, as this girl has come up to, requires face (to have it); and to you, brother, she (always) gave only troubles, pure and simple ! Anyway, you crossed many stages, on her account as well.! Her love did not come up much on account of just such factors ! However, praise be to your dutifulness : it is just this example that needs be followed ! In fact, brother, all this praise happens to be (essentially) mine ! Is there any soldier of the field who may be able to bring (someone) to such a state in such a short time? It is just my power that is active in you; and in fact, it is neither mine nor yours, but simply one (and the same)! One may say I or you're according to one's sweet will! R2 also did quite a lot of work; but you will have to train him for such occasions! Look 12, it is really miraculous!"

Revered Master:

"I am totally in agreement with this opinion."

30-9- 1949

3-10-1949

Revered Master:

"You do not know, brother, how precious your life happens to be! I am not displeased with you: give up this idea (thought). How can it be possible that I become displeased with my own self: that is like committing suicide by my own hands! How can such a thing ever happen!"

10-3-1950

18-6-1950

Revered Master: Through God's limitless Grace (benignance), I have come to witness this day when dear R2 has pitched his tent

(abode or habitation) at the point (stage) of Piety (Piousness = Qudsa or Avyaktagati), and effected/started stroll at that spot."

25-6-1950

Revered Master:

"Dear R2 has crossed three circles and stepped into the fourth of the eleven circles (of egoism or Mind region) after five circles (of Maya or Heart region)."

26-6-1950

Revered Master:

"C2 is granted conditional permission this morning (9.30 A.M.). He can tell the method and transmit to others, but he can not perform initiation. He had been very fond of (desirous for) this (permission). Before according permission, his real fondness (enthusiasm, fervour) for becoming a Guru (Guide) was very much extirpated (eradicated). Even then, he should take care that its complexion be not allowed to enter (overpower) him. This (training job) should be taken as God's work, and everything should be connected as issuing forth from His (God) side alone, because He is the Supreme Power and Guru of all. This permission is with respect to the system of Sahaj Marg. He can tell the method and transmit to others but cannot perform initiation. All permissions shall remain subject to the orders of the President of the Mission. He should remain trying for spiritual benefit to God's creation and treat everybody as a brother (or sister)" Signatures of Revered President (of the Mission) in handwriting of I2.

29-6-1950

Revered Master:

The region of the stroll of 12 is the world of Piety i.e. Qudsa or Avyaktagati."

8-11-1950

18-11-1950

Revered Master:

"You have brought my name (sufficiently) forward. As such, every elder sage (Master) looks at me when need arises, that I order you to fulfil that (particular) need. So, now brother, destroy Nepal!"

Revered Master:

"I had said something about the (present Indian) Government. It has come out to be worthless (inactive) beyond all limits. As somebody remarked, the British Government was in several degrees better than such a national government They (British rulers) had consideration for the rights (and privileges) of others! Pull it down, but foreign rule should not replace it!"

Revered Master:

"I do not understand why K7 is (still) after puja (worship, meditation, etc). She has perhaps some fixed concepts concerning puja. However, Master's order (being complied) is better than all kinds of worship (puja). Tell her that now the time for puja is over. She will go on progressing so long as she holds on to right thought just like this. Just now I need work : the sooner it is completed (finished), the better (it is to be)!"

25-5-1951

Revered Master:

"The solution, brother, is really such as to have no answer to it; and it is correct as well, without doubt. But (however) how to demonstrate this thing to the people of the world, when nobody except you had such an idea (developed in the heart) ! People will certainly agree (accept) that there is no artificiality in the space (Akasha) : there is neither any room for particles (ions) in it, nor for any glamour and brilliance. That is something perfectly pure; and there can be no expression of the solution better than what Revered Swami Ji has put forth. The sound coming to you was so dim that nothing much except the vibration of the main thing could be caught by you, since (because) he (Swami Vivekananda Ji) was speaking just in that state (condition). Anyway, who will have faith in this solution: who has an approach (to that extent) !

May it not be taken to be treated as the easy-chair philosophy of western people!"

Revered Master:

"One thing is Akasha (Sky or Void) and the other Avakasha (Time-gap = Intermission = Duration). Avakasha is the thickened (gross) state of Akasha. All this (universe) is the expanse of Avakasha; and only God happens to be the expansion of Akasha."

8-6-1951

Revered Master:

"God's worship is necessary, so to say, even though this thing is a matter of speculation (thought). On arriving at that (state) only an apprehension or mere notion (impression) of God remains viz. the Identity never comes to merge. If you take up me in the form of idea, my Identity is remaining, and I am myself subservient (under subjection) to my Identity to a very large extent. I never gave up company of (dependence on = subjection to) God; even though with respect to you, my love for my Master was never any less (than yours): I did have comprehension of this (subtle) point! Moreover, the Master (Guide) also, beyond some state (condition), brings about direct relationship. This means that now (you) serve your purpose (out of Him) remaining within limits of subjection (to Him).

"About Space, whatever may be asserted (by somebody), the shape of contraction and expansion (decrease and increase) is certainly present therein, even though it is dim beyond the limits of comprehension and sensitivity. It contains permanence: and it shall ever remain there! Now whatever develops out of this, it becomes the form (shape) of the same in another way."

Revered Master:

"Where 'is'(being) happens to be, there the apprehension (notion) of 'is not' (non-being) also exists. This means that there certainly remains some action or other between the two, otherwise the apprehension (notion = doubt) about non- being (is not) would not be there. Now whose action this is to be ? Of that which happens to be there between 'is' (being) and 'is not' (non-being) !

The 'void (vacuum = space) is' would mean that it should also be not there at a certain (point of) time I This is, thus, mere apprehension (supposition = notion = hypothesis) only ! Suppose it was not there at a certain point of time ; and when it came into being it would mean that it came to 'is' out of (from) 'is not'. If it is asserted that vacuum is not (existing), then again it comes off that it was (there) sometimes and is now (got) annihilated (obliterated). When was it there, and when was it not ? The only answer to this can be that it was when it was, it happened when it was not. This proves that whatever is, will come to be not (there) and that which is not (existing) will be possible to become (to come to being). To come out of the negative into the positive would mean that some action is (remains) certainly concealed in between. Everything has two states: positive and negative necessarily. One implies the other and vice versa. (Pause) Let me tell one thing more: if the negative state of vacuum be conceived, that happens to remain as God alone."

27-12-1953

Revered Master:

"One should not lose hope at any step."

20-6-1955 (Time: 10.55 P.M.)

Revered Master:

"I have totally snatched off (spiritual condition and capacity of) L3: you snatch off the rest of (whatever remaining in any of) those who are under his training. (The order was complied with). I never came across this sort of impertinent face of brass, such unabashed remarks against the organization out of which benefit is being derived! I have no need for such people: snap off your connection from them!

30-6-1955

Revered Master:

"It is quite correct that there should be two blocks (of the organization) : one should consist of educated persons and in the other uneducated people be admitted. Those belonging to the other (second) block will not be admitted to the sessions of group

meditation: they will be given the method of practice only. Thereafter it will be the trainer's job to observe continually whether thirst for Brahma Vidya (science/discipline concerning the Ultimate) increases in them or not, and what the condition of grossness (solidity) remains there. If thirst gets increased to the adequate state, Brahma Vidya i.e., the real thing (essence) will need be entered (introduced) into the person concerned. So long, however, as there is lack (of thirst), this method (of spiritual training) through transmission should not be put to effect. It can also be possible that for some time just like other (practicants belonging to the block of educated persons) they may stay at your place and continue the practice given (told) to them : there is no harm in that. However, they need not be allowed to participate in group meditation. This second block (for the uneducated people) is established so that they too do not remain devoid of the benefit. Workers should all be educated persons, because there will be few persons so sensitive and experienced that they come to have everything even without studying (getting educated). If some person like that becomes available, work can be allotted to that person also. There is no need, however (anyway) of such people as remain adamantly fixed up where they happen to be (at their post). It is no doubt certain that in case labour is devoted, those persons also can be set right; but what is the need for that, after all ! There is no need for every Tom and Dick herein: it is something so superb that it comes to be comprehended only after having (making) a lot of experience. There are persons, surely, who do not require study (education) and yet learn the entire (whole) thing; such vessels (deserving persons) however are rarefy to be found. Musk is available only in grains (of weight or quantity) ; this you have to remember. By the word 'educated' I mean 'cultured brain'. The mind (and heart) should be cultured; otherwise, uneducated people will be found in the (fold of the) educated class as well."
